

Charles M. Lizza
William C. Baton
Sarah A. Sullivan
SAUL EWING LLP
One Riverfront Plaza, Suite 1520
Newark, NJ 07102-5426
(973) 286-6700
clizza@saul.com

Attorneys for Plaintiff
Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited

**UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
DISTRICT OF NEW JERSEY**

**JAZZ PHARMACEUTICALS IRELAND
LIMITED,**

Plaintiff,

v.

ALKEM LABORATORIES LTD.,

Defendant.

Civil Action No. _____

**COMPLAINT FOR PATENT
INFRINGEMENT**

(Filed Electronically)

Plaintiff Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited (“Jazz Pharmaceuticals” or “Plaintiff”), by its undersigned attorneys, for its Complaint against Defendant Alkem Laboratories Ltd. (“Alkem”), alleges as follows:

Nature of the Action

1. This complaint is an action for patent infringement under the patent laws of the United States, 35 U.S.C. § 100, *et seq.*, arising from Alkem’s submission of Abbreviated New Drug Application (“ANDA”) No. 218315 (“Alkem’s ANDA”) to the United States Food and Drug Administration (“FDA”) seeking approval to manufacture, use, import, distribute, offer to sell, and/or sell a generic version of Xyrem® (sodium oxybate oral solution) drug product prior to the expiration of United States Patent Nos. 8,772,306 (“the ’306 patent”); 9,050,302 (“the ’302

patent"); 9,486,426 ("the '426 patent"); 10,213,400 ("the '400 patent"); 10,864,181 ("the '181 patent"); and 11,253,494 ("the '494 patent") (collectively, "the patents-in-suit"), which are all owned by Jazz Pharmaceuticals.

The Parties

2. Plaintiff Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited is a corporation organized and existing under the laws of Ireland, having a principal place of business at Waterloo Exchange, Waterloo Road, Dublin, Ireland 4.

3. On information and belief, Defendant Alkem is a corporation organized and existing under the laws of India, having a principal place of business at Alkem House, Senapati Bapat Road, Lower Parel, Mumbai, 400 013, Maharashtra, India.

The Patents-in-Suit

3. On July 8, 2014, the United States Patent and Trademark Office ("USPTO") duly and lawfully issued the '306 patent, entitled, "Method of administration of gamma hydroxybutyrate with monocarboxylate transporters." A copy of the '306 patent is attached hereto as Exhibit A.

4. On June 9, 2015, the USPTO duly and lawfully issued the '302 patent, entitled, "Method of administration of gamma hydroxybutyrate with monocarboxylate transporters." A copy of the '302 patent is attached hereto as Exhibit B.

5. On November 8, 2016, the USPTO duly and lawfully issued the '426 patent, entitled, "Method of administration of gamma hydroxybutyrate with monocarboxylate transporters." A copy of the '426 patent is attached hereto as Exhibit C.

6. On February 26, 2019, the USPTO duly and lawfully issued the '400 patent, entitled, "Method of administration of gamma hydroxybutyrate with monocarboxylate transporters." A copy of the '400 patent is attached hereto as Exhibit D.

7. On December 15, 2020, the USPTO duly and lawfully issued the '181 patent, entitled, "Method of administration of gamma hydroxybutyrate with monocarboxylate transporters." A copy of the '181 patent is attached hereto as Exhibit E.

8. On February 22, 2022, the USPTO duly and lawfully issued the '494 patent, entitled, "Method of administration of gamma hydroxybutyrate with monocarboxylate transporters." A copy of the '494 patent is attached hereto as Exhibit F.

The Xyrem® Drug Product

9. The claims of the patents-in-suit cover, *inter alia*, methods of use and administration of pharmaceutical compositions comprising oxybate. Jazz Pharmaceuticals owns the patents-in-suit.

10. Pursuant to 21 U.S.C. § 355(b)(1) and attendant FDA regulations, the patents-in-suit are listed in the FDA publication, "Approved Drug Products with Therapeutic Equivalence Evaluations" (the "Orange Book"), with respect to Xyrem®.

11. The labeling for Xyrem® instructs and encourages physicians, pharmacists, other healthcare workers, and patients to administer Xyrem® for the treatment of, *inter alia*, cataplexy or excessive daytime sleepiness in patients with narcolepsy.

12. The labeling for Xyrem® instructs and encourages physicians, pharmacists, other healthcare workers, and patients to modify the dose of Xyrem® for patients receiving sodium oxybate when divalproex sodium (valproate) is concomitantly administered.

13. The labeling for Xyrem® instructs and encourages physicians, pharmacists, other healthcare workers, and patients to administer Xyrem® according to one or more of the methods claimed in the patents-in-suit.

Jurisdiction and Venue

14. This Court has jurisdiction over the subject matter of Counts I through VI against Alkem pursuant to 28 U.S.C. §§ 1331, 1338(a), 2201, and 2202.

15. This Court has personal jurisdiction over Alkem by virtue of, *inter alia*, its systematic and continuous contacts with the State of New Jersey.

16. On information and belief, Alkem purposefully has conducted and continues to conduct business in this Judicial District.

17. On information and belief, Alkem is in the business of, among other things, manufacturing, marketing, importing, offering for sale, and selling pharmaceutical products, including generic drug products, throughout the United States, including in this Judicial District.

18. On information and belief, this Judicial District is a likely destination for the generic drug product described in Alkem's ANDA.

19. Alkem has consented to personal jurisdiction in this Court in numerous recent actions arising out of its ANDA filings and has filed counterclaims in such cases. *See, e.g., Azurity Pharm., Inc. v. Alkem Labs. Ltd.*, No. 22-cv-0143 (D.N.J.); *Celgene Corp. v. Alkem Labs. Ltd.*, No. 18-cv-11265 (D.N.J.); *Valeant Pharm. N. Am. LLC v. Alkem Labs. Ltd.*, No. 18-cv-13905 (D.N.J.); *Sumitomo Dainippon Pharma Co. v. Alkem Labs. Ltd.*, No. 18-cv-14787 (D.N.J.); *GW Research Limited v. Teva Pharmaceuticals, Inc., et al.*, No. 23-cv-18 (D.N.J.). Alkem has purposefully availed itself of the rights, benefits, and privileges of New Jersey by asserting counterclaims in this Court.

20. In the alternative, this Court has personal jurisdiction over Alkem because the requirements of Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 4(k)(2) are met as (a) Jazz Pharmaceuticals' claims arise under federal law; (b) Alkem is a foreign defendant not subject to general personal jurisdiction in the courts of any state; and (c) Alkem has sufficient contacts with the United

States as a whole, including, but not limited to, preparing and submitting ANDAs to the FDA and/or manufacturing, importing, offering to sell, or selling pharmaceutical products that are distributed throughout the United States, such that this Court’s exercise of jurisdiction over Alkem satisfies due process.

21. At least because, on information and belief, Alkem is a foreign company, venue is proper in this Judicial District pursuant to 28 U.S.C. § 1391(c)(3) and 28 U.S.C. § 1400(b).

Acts Giving Rise to This Suit

22. Pursuant to Section 505 of the Federal Food Drug and Cosmetic Act (“FFDCA”), Alkem submitted Alkem’s ANDA seeking approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, sale, or offer for sale in, or importation into, the United States of sodium oxybate oral solution (“Alkem’s Proposed Product”) before the expiration of the patents-in-suit.

23. On information and belief, following FDA approval of Alkem’s ANDA, Alkem will make, use, sell, or offer to sell Alkem’s Proposed Product throughout the United States, or import such generic product into the United States.

24. On information and belief, in connection with the submission of Alkem’s ANDA as described above, Alkem provided written certifications to the FDA pursuant to Section 505 of the FFDCA, 21 U.S.C. § 355(j)(2)(A)(vii)(IV) (“Alkem’s Paragraph IV Certifications”), alleging that the claims of the patents-in-suit are invalid and/or will not be infringed by the activities described in Alkem’s ANDA.

25. No earlier than April 26, 2023, Alkem sent a written notice of its Paragraph IV Certification to Jazz Pharmaceuticals (“Alkem’s April 26th Notice Letter”). Alkem’s April 26th Notice Letter alleged that the claims of the ’306, ’302, ’426, ’400, ’181, and ’494 patents are invalid and/or will not be infringed by the activities described in Alkem’s ANDA. Alkem’s

April 26th Notice Letter also informed Jazz Pharmaceuticals that Alkem seeks approval to market Alkem's Proposed Product before the expiration of the patents-in-suit.

Count I: Infringement of the '306 Patent

26. Jazz Pharmaceuticals repeats and realleges the allegations of the preceding paragraphs as if fully set forth herein.

27. Alkem's submission of its ANDA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, sale, or offer for sale in, or importation into, the United States of Alkem's Proposed Product, prior to the expiration of the '306 patent, constitutes infringement of one or more of the claims of that patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(A).

28. There is a justiciable controversy between the parties hereto as to the infringement of the '306 patent.

29. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will infringe one or more claims of the '306 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(a) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States.

30. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will induce infringement of one or more claims of the '306 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(b) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States. On information and belief, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will intentionally encourage acts of direct infringement with knowledge of the '306 patent and knowledge that its acts are encouraging infringement.

31. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will contributorily infringe one or more claims of the '306 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(c) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the

United States. On information and belief, Alkem has had and continues to have knowledge that Alkem's Proposed Product is especially adapted for a use that infringes one or more claims of the '306 patent and that there is no substantial non-infringing use for Alkem's Proposed Product.

32. Jazz Pharmaceuticals will be substantially and irreparably damaged and harmed if Alkem's infringement of the '306 patent is not enjoined.

33. Jazz Pharmaceuticals does not have an adequate remedy at law.

34. This case is an exceptional one, and Jazz Pharmaceuticals is entitled to an award of its reasonable attorneys' fees under 35 U.S.C. § 285.

Count II: Infringement of the '302 Patent

35. Jazz Pharmaceuticals repeats and realleges the allegations of the preceding paragraphs as if fully set forth herein.

36. Alkem's submission of its ANDA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, sale, or offer for sale in, or importation into, the United States of Alkem's Proposed Product, prior to the expiration of the '302 patent, constitutes infringement of one or more of the claims of that patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(A).

37. There is a justiciable controversy between the parties hereto as to the infringement of the '302 patent.

38. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will infringe one or more claims of the '302 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(a) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States.

39. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will induce infringement of one or more claims of the '302 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(b) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the

United States. On information and belief, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will intentionally encourage acts of direct infringement with knowledge of the '302 patent and knowledge that its acts are encouraging infringement.

40. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will contributorily infringe one or more claims of the '302 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(c) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States. On information and belief, Alkem has had and continues to have knowledge that Alkem's Proposed Product is especially adapted for a use that infringes one or more claims of the '302 patent and that there is no substantial non-infringing use for Alkem's Proposed Product.

41. Jazz Pharmaceuticals will be substantially and irreparably damaged and harmed if Alkem's infringement of the '302 patent is not enjoined.

42. Jazz Pharmaceuticals does not have an adequate remedy at law.

43. This case is an exceptional one, and Jazz Pharmaceuticals is entitled to an award of its reasonable attorneys' fees under 35 U.S.C. § 285.

Count III: Infringement of the '426 Patent

44. Jazz Pharmaceuticals repeats and realleges the allegations of the preceding paragraphs as if fully set forth herein.

45. Alkem's submission of its ANDA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, sale, or offer for sale in, or importation into, the United States of Alkem's Proposed Product, prior to the expiration of the '426 patent, constitutes infringement of one or more of the claims of that patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(A).

46. There is a justiciable controversy between the parties hereto as to the infringement of the '426 patent.

47. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will infringe one or more claims of the '426 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(a) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States.

48. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will induce infringement of one or more claims of the '426 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(b) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States. On information and belief, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will intentionally encourage acts of direct infringement with knowledge of the '426 patent and knowledge that its acts are encouraging infringement.

49. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will contributorily infringe one or more claims of the '426 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(c) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States. On information and belief, Alkem has had and continues to have knowledge that Alkem's Proposed Product is especially adapted for a use that infringes one or more claims of the '426 patent and that there is no substantial non-infringing use for Alkem's Proposed Product.

50. Jazz Pharmaceuticals will be substantially and irreparably damaged and harmed if Alkem's infringement of the '426 patent is not enjoined.

51. Jazz Pharmaceuticals does not have an adequate remedy at law.

52. This case is an exceptional one, and Jazz Pharmaceuticals is entitled to an award of its reasonable attorneys' fees under 35 U.S.C. § 285.

Count IV: Infringement of the '400 Patent

53. Jazz Pharmaceuticals repeats and realleges the allegations of the preceding paragraphs as if fully set forth herein.

54. Alkem's submission of its ANDA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, sale, or offer for sale in, or importation into, the United States of Alkem's Proposed Product, prior to the expiration of the '400 patent, constitutes infringement of one or more of the claims of that patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(A).

55. There is a justiciable controversy between the parties hereto as to the infringement of the '400 patent.

56. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will infringe one or more claims of the '400 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(a) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States.

57. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will induce infringement of one or more claims of the '400 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(b) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States. On information and belief, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will intentionally encourage acts of direct infringement with knowledge of the '400 patent and knowledge that its acts are encouraging infringement.

58. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will contributorily infringe one or more claims of the '400 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(c) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States. On information and belief, Alkem has had and continues to have knowledge that Alkem's Proposed Product is especially adapted for a use that infringes one or more claims of the '400 patent and that there is no substantial non-infringing use for Alkem's Proposed Product.

59. Jazz Pharmaceuticals will be substantially and irreparably damaged and harmed if Alkem's infringement of the '400 patent is not enjoined.

60. Jazz Pharmaceuticals does not have an adequate remedy at law.

61. This case is an exceptional one, and Jazz Pharmaceuticals is entitled to an award of its reasonable attorneys' fees under 35 U.S.C. § 285.

Count V: Infringement of the '181 Patent

62. Jazz Pharmaceuticals repeats and realleges the allegations of the preceding paragraphs as if fully set forth herein.

63. Alkem's submission of its ANDA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, sale, or offer for sale in, or importation into, the United States of Alkem's Proposed Product, prior to the expiration of the '181 patent, constitutes infringement of one or more of the claims of that patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(A).

64. There is a justiciable controversy between the parties hereto as to the infringement of the '181 patent.

65. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will infringe one or more claims of the '181 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(a) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States.

66. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will induce infringement of one or more claims of the '181 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(b) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States. On information and belief, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will intentionally encourage acts of direct infringement with knowledge of the '181 patent and knowledge that its acts are encouraging infringement.

67. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will contributorily infringe one or more claims of the '181 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(c) by

making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States. On information and belief, Alkem has had and continues to have knowledge that Alkem's Proposed Product is especially adapted for a use that infringes one or more claims of the '181 patent and that there is no substantial non-infringing use for Alkem's Proposed Product.

68. Jazz Pharmaceuticals will be substantially and irreparably damaged and harmed if Alkem's infringement of the '181 patent is not enjoined.

69. Jazz Pharmaceuticals does not have an adequate remedy at law.

70. This case is an exceptional one, and Jazz Pharmaceuticals is entitled to an award of its reasonable attorneys' fees under 35 U.S.C. § 285.

Count VI: Infringement of the '494 Patent

71. Jazz Pharmaceuticals repeats and realleges the allegations of the preceding paragraphs as if fully set forth herein.

72. Alkem's submission of its ANDA to obtain approval to engage in the commercial manufacture, use, sale, or offer for sale in, or importation into, the United States of Alkem's Proposed Product, prior to the expiration of the '494 patent, constitutes infringement of one or more of the claims of that patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(2)(A).

73. There is a justiciable controversy between the parties hereto as to the infringement of the '494 patent.

74. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will infringe one or more claims of the '494 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(a) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States.

75. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will induce infringement of one or more claims of the '494 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(b) by

making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States. On information and belief, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will intentionally encourage acts of direct infringement with knowledge of the '494 patent and knowledge that its acts are encouraging infringement.

76. Unless enjoined by this Court, upon FDA approval of Alkem's ANDA, Alkem will contributorily infringe one or more claims of the '494 patent under 35 U.S.C. § 271(c) by making, using, offering to sell, selling, and/or importing Alkem's Proposed Product in or for the United States. On information and belief, Alkem has had and continues to have knowledge that Alkem's Proposed Product is especially adapted for a use that infringes one or more claims of the '494 patent and that there is no substantial non-infringing use for Alkem's Proposed Product.

77. Jazz Pharmaceuticals will be substantially and irreparably damaged and harmed if Alkem's infringement of the '494 patent is not enjoined.

78. Jazz Pharmaceuticals does not have an adequate remedy at law.

79. This case is an exceptional one, and Jazz Pharmaceuticals is entitled to an award of its reasonable attorneys' fees under 35 U.S.C. § 285.

PRAYER FOR RELIEF

WHEREFORE, Plaintiff respectfully requests the following relief:

- (A) A Judgment that Alkem has infringed the patents-in-suit by submitting ANDA No. 218315;
- (B) A Judgment that Alkem has infringed, and that Alkem's making, using, selling, offering to sell, or importing Alkem's Proposed Product will infringe one or more claims of the patents-in-suit;

(C) An Order that the effective date of FDA approval of ANDA No. 218315 be a date which is not earlier than the later of the expiration of the patents-in-suit, or any later expiration of exclusivity to which Jazz Pharmaceuticals is or becomes entitled;

(D) Preliminary and permanent injunctions enjoining Alkem and its officers, agents, attorneys, and employees, and those acting in privity and/or concert with it, from making, using, offering to sell, selling, or importing Alkem's Proposed Product until after the expiration of the patents-in-suit, or any later expiration of exclusivity to which Jazz Pharmaceuticals is or becomes entitled;

(E) A permanent injunction, pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(4)(B), restraining and enjoining Alkem, its officers, agents, attorneys, and employees, and those acting in privity and/or concert with it, from practicing any methods claimed in the patents-in-suit, or from actively inducing or contributing to the infringement of any claim of the patents-in-suit, until after the expiration of the patents-in-suit, or any later expiration of exclusivity to which Jazz Pharmaceuticals is or becomes entitled;

(F) A Judgment that the commercial manufacture, use, offer for sale, or sale in, and/or importation into, the United States of Alkem's Proposed Product will directly infringe, induce and/or contribute to infringement of the patents-in-suit;

(G) To the extent that Alkem, its officers, agents, attorneys, and/or employees, or those acting in privity and/or concert with it, have committed any acts with respect to the methods claimed in the patents-in-suit, other than those acts expressly exempted by 35 U.S.C. § 271(e)(1), a Judgment awarding Jazz Pharmaceuticals damages for such acts;

(H) If Alkem, its officers, agents, attorneys, and/or employees, or those acting in privity and/or concert with it, engages in the commercial manufacture, use, offer for sale, or sale

in, and/or importation into, the United States of Alkem's Proposed Product prior to the expiration of the patents-in-suit, a Judgment awarding damages to Jazz Pharmaceuticals resulting from such infringement, together with interest;

- (I) A Judgment declaring that the patents-in-suit remain valid and enforceable;
- (J) A Judgment that this is an exceptional case pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 285 and awarding Jazz Pharmaceuticals its attorneys' fees incurred in this action;
- (K) A Judgment awarding Jazz Pharmaceuticals its costs and expenses incurred in this action; and
- (L) Such further and other relief as this Court may deem just and proper.

Dated: June 9, 2023

By: s/ Charles M. Lizza

Charles M. Lizza
William C. Baton
Sarah A. Sullivan
SAUL EWING LLP
One Riverfront Plaza, Suite 1520
Newark, New Jersey 07102-5426
(973) 286-6700
clizza@saul.com

Of Counsel:

F. Dominic Cerrito
Eric C. Stops
Gabriel P. Brier
Abigail DeMasi
QUINN EMANUEL URQUHART
& SULLIVAN, LLP
51 Madison Avenue, 22nd Floor
New York, New York 10010
(212) 849-7000

Attorneys for Plaintiff
Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited

CERTIFICATION PURSUANT TO L. CIV. R. 11.2 & 40.1

Pursuant to Local Civil Rules 11.2 and 40.1, I hereby certify that the matter captioned *Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. v. Roxane Labs., Inc.*, No. 10-6108 (ES) (D.N.J.) (complaint filed on November 22, 2010, civil case terminated on April 11, 2017) is related to the matter in controversy because it involved some of the same patents, and because Alkem is seeking FDA approval to market a generic version of the same pharmaceutical drug product.

Pursuant to Local Civil Rules 11.2 and 40.1, I further certify that the matter captioned *Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., et al. v. Amneal Pharmaceuticals, LLC, et al.*, No. 13-391 (ES) (D.N.J.) (complaint filed on January 18, 2013, civil case terminated on October 15, 2018) is related to the matter in controversy because it involved one of the same plaintiffs and some of the same patents, and because Alkem is seeking FDA approval to market a generic version of the same pharmaceutical drug product.

Pursuant to Local Civil Rules 11.2 and 40.1, I further certify that the matters captioned *Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited v. Lupin Inc., et al.*, No. 21-14271 (SRC)(JSA) (D.N.J.) (consolidated) and *Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited v. Teva Pharmaceuticals, Inc.*, No. 23-01617 (SRC)(JSA) (D.N.J.) are related to the matter in controversy because the matter in controversy involves the same plaintiff and the same patents.

I further certify that, to the best of my knowledge, the matter in controversy is not the subject of any other action pending in any court, or of any pending arbitration or administrative proceeding.

Dated: June 9, 2023

By: s/ Charles M. Lizza

Charles M. Lizza

William C. Baton

Sarah A. Sullivan

SAUL EWING LLP

One Riverfront Plaza, Suite 1520

Newark, New Jersey 07102-5426

(973) 286-6700

clizza@saul.com

Of Counsel:

F. Dominic Cerrito

Eric C. Stops

Gabriel P. Brier

Abigail DeMasi

QUINN EMANUEL URQUHART

& SULLIVAN, LLP

51 Madison Avenue, 22nd Floor

New York, New York 10010

(212) 849-7000

Attorneys for Plaintiff

Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited

EXHIBIT A



US008772306B1

(12) **United States Patent**
Eller

(10) **Patent No.:** US 8,772,306 B1
(b4) **Date of Patent:** *Jul. 8, 2014

(54)	METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS	6,780,889 B2	8/2004	Cook et al.
		7,015,200 B2	3/2006	Mamelak et al.
		7,072,840 B1	7/2006	Mayaud
		7,262,219 B2	8/2007	Cook et al.
		7,572,605 B2	8/2009	Mamelak et al.
		7,668,730 B2	2/2010	Reardan et al.
		7,765,106 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.
		7,765,107 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.
		7,797,171 B2	9/2010	Reardan et al.
		7,851,506 B2	12/2010	Cook et al.
		7,895,059 B2	2/2011	Reardan et al.
		8,263,650 B2	9/2012	Cook et al.
		8,324,275 B2	12/2012	Cook et al.
		2003/0171270 A1 *	9/2003	Civelli et al. 514/12
		2006/0018933 A1	1/2006	Vaya et al.
		2008/0293698 A1 *	11/2008	Johnson 514/220
		2009/0137565 A1	5/2009	Frucht
		2010/0112056 A1	5/2010	Rourke et al.
		2010/0160299 A1	6/2010	Baker, Jr. et al.
		2011/0237664 A1 *	9/2011	Dalton et al. 514/522
		2012/0076865 A1	3/2012	Allphin et al.

(21) Appl. No.: 13/872,997

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

(22) Filed: Apr. 29, 2013

DE	237 309	5/1985
GB	922 029	3/1963
GB	980 279	1/1965
GB	1 522 450	8/1978
WO	WO 2006/053186	5/2006
WO	WO 2010/053691	5/2010
WO	WO 2011/119839	9/2011
WO	WO 2011/139271	11/2011
WO	WO 2012/037457	3/2012

Related U.S. Application Data

- (63) Continuation of application No. 13/837,714, filed on Mar. 15, 2013.
(60) Provisional application No. 61/771,557, filed on Mar. 1, 2013, provisional application No. 61/777,873, filed on Mar. 12, 2013.

(51) **Int. Cl.**

A61K 31/505 (2006.01)
A61K 31/33 (2006.01)
A61K 31/55 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.**

USPC 514/275; 514/183; 514/214.03

(58) **Field of Classification Search**

USPC 514/275, 183, 214.03

See application file for complete search history.

(56)

References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,325,361 A	6/1967	Meunier
3,385,886 A	5/1968	Nicholson et al.
4,155,929 A	5/1979	Chignac et al.
4,393,236 A	7/1983	Klosa
5,380,937 A	1/1995	Koehler et al.
5,758,095 A	5/1998	Albaum et al.
5,833,599 A	11/1998	Schrier et al.
5,845,255 A	12/1998	Mayaud
6,014,631 A	1/2000	Teagarden et al.
6,067,524 A	5/2000	Byerly et al.
6,112,182 A	8/2000	Akers et al.
6,204,245 B1	3/2001	Siegel et al.
6,317,719 B1	11/2001	Schrier et al.
6,356,873 B1	3/2002	Teagarden et al.
6,482,431 B2	11/2002	Smith

Arena et al., "Absorption of Sodium γ -Hydroxybutyrate and Its Prodrug γ -Butyrolactone: Relationship between In Vitro Transport and In Vivo Absorption," *J. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 69(3): 356-358, 1980.

Auler et al., "Diclofenac Plasma Protein Binding: PK-PD Modelling in Cardiac Patients Submitted to Cardiopulmonary Bypass," *Braz. J. Med. Bio. Res.*, 30: 369-374, 1997.

(Continued)

Primary Examiner — Shirley V Gembeh

(74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm — Jones Day

(57)

ABSTRACT

One embodiment of the present invention is to improve the safety and efficacy of the administration of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient. It has been discovered that the concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor, such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, will affect GHB administration. For example, it has been discovered that diclofenac lowers the effect of GHB in the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition. Furthermore, it has been discovered that valproate increases the effect of GHB on the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition.

34 Claims, 10 Drawing Sheets

US 8,772,306 B1

Page 2

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Banerjee et al., "Presynaptic Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB) and Gamma-Aminobutyric Acid_B (GABA_B) Receptor-Mediated Release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in Rat Thalamic Ventrobasal Nucleus (VB): A Possible Mechanism for the Generation of Absence-Like Seizures Induced by GHB," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 273 (3): 1534-1543, 1995.
- U.S. Appl. No. 13/739,886, filed Jan. 11, 2013, Allphin et al.
- U.S. Appl. No. 61/317,212, filed Mar. 24, 2010, Allphin et al.
- Bédard et al., "Nocturnal γ-Hydroxybutyrate. Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients," *Clin. Neuropharmacol.*, 12(1): 29-36, 1989.
- Broughton et al., "The Treatment of Narcolepsy-Cataplexy with Nocturnal Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate," *Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques*, 6(1): 1-6, 1979.
- Cash et al., "γ-Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Function Studied by the Modulation of Nitric Oxide Synthase Activity in Rat Frontal Cortex Punches," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 58 (11): 1815-1819, 1999.
- Dimitrijevic et al., "Drosophila GABA_B Receptors are Involved in Behavioral Effects of γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB)," *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 519 (3): 246-252, 2005.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Alcohol Withdrawal Syndrome," *The Lancet*, Sep. 30: 787-789, 1989.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence: A Double-Blind Study," *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, 16(4): 673-676, 1992.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal Syndrome," *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 9(1): 77-81, 1993.
- Gallimberti et al., "Clinical Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal," *Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci*, 244: 113-114, 1994.
- Gerra et al., "Flumazenil Effects on Growth Hormone Response to Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid," *Internat. Clin. Psychopharm.*, 9: 211-215, 1994.
- Gessa et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence," *Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement*, 15 (Suppl. 1, Pt. A): 303A-304A, 1992.
- Gonzalez et al., "Drug Metabolism," in *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* (11th ed.), Brunton et al. (eds.), New York: McGraw-Hill, pp. 71-91, 2006.
- Halestrap et al., "The SLC16 Gene Family—From Monocarboxylate Transporters (MCTs) to Aromatic Amino Acid Transporters and Beyond," *Pflugers Arch.*, 447 (5): 619-628, 2004.
- Hasan et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Diclofenac Sodium in Normal Man," *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 18(1): 18-24, 2005.
- Hasenbos et al., "Anaesthesia for bullectomy," *Anaesthesia*, 40: 977-980, 1985.
- Hechler et al., "Extracellular Events Induced by γ-Hydroxybutyrate in Striatum: A Microdialysis Study," *J. Neurochem.*, 56 (3): 938-944, 1991.
- Henry, Thomas R., "The History of Divalproex in Clinical Neuroscience," *Psychopharmacology Bulletin*, 37 (Suppl 2): 5-16, 2003.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," XYREM® SmPC European Package Insert available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR__Product_Information/human/000593/WC500057103.pdf (downloaded May 3, 2013).
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "XYREM® (sodium oxybate) oral solution Prescribing Information," XYREM® US Package Insert available at <http://www.xyrem.com/xyrem-pi.pdf> (downloaded May 3, 2013).
- Kuriyama et al., "Blood—Brain Barrier to H³-γ-Aminobutyric Acid in Normal and Amino Oxyacetic Acid-Treated Animals," *Neuropharmacology*, 10: 103-108, 1971.
- Laborit, H., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semialdehyde and Sleep," *Laboratoire d'Eutonologie, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France*, pp. 257-274, 1973.
- Ladinsky et al., "Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System," *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacol.*, 322: 42-48, 1983.
- Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and Narcolepsy: A Double-Blind Placebo-Controlled Study," *Sleep*, 16(3): 216-220, 1993.
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate: A Double-Blind Study of Normal Subjects," *Sleep Research*, 17: 99, 1988 (abstract).
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep—Triggering Mechanisms," *Sleep*, 13(1): 24-30, 1990.
- Lee, C.R., "Evidence for the β-Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans," *Biochem. Med.*, 17, 284-291: 1977.
- Lettieri et al., "Improved Pharmacological Activity via Pro-Drug Modification: Comparative Pharmacokinetics of Sodium γ-Hydroxybutyrate and γ-Butyrolactone," *Research Communications in Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology*, 22(1): 107-118, 1978.
- Maitre et al., "A Specific γ-Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Ligand Possesses both Antagonistic and Anticonvulsant Properties," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 255 (2): 657-663, 1990.
- Maitre et al., "Mécanismes d'action d'un médicament détourné: le γ-hydroxybutyrate" ('A mechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse') (in French), *Med Sci (Paris)*, 21 (3): 284-9, 2005.
- Mamelak et al., "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," *The Lancet*, 302 (7824): 328-329, 1973.
- Mamelak et al., "The Effects of γ-Hydroxybutyrate on Sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 12(2): 273-288, 1977.
- Mamelak et al., "Narcolepsy: A Family Study," *Biological Psychiatry*, 14: 821-834, 1979.
- Mamelak et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy and Sleep Apnea with Gammahydroxybutyrate: A Clinical and Polysomnographic Case Study," *Sleep*, 4(1): 105-111, 1981.
- Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," *Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews*, 13: 187-198, 1989.
- Modi et al., "Dapoxetine has no Pharmacokinetic or Cognitive Interactions with Ethanol in Healthy Male Volunteers," *J. Clin. Pharmac.*, 47(3): 315-322, 2007.
- Nema et al., "Excipients and Their Use in Injectable Products," *PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol.*, 51(4): 166-171, 1997.
- Palatini et al., "Dose-Dependent Absorption and Elimination of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Healthy Volunteers," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 45: 353-356, 1993.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on Digoxin Pharmacokinetics and Electrocardiographic Findings," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 16-19, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Carbamazepine," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 20-23, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Phenytoin," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 24-28, 1996.
- Rosenberg, G., "The Mechanisms of Action of Valproate in Neuropsychiatric Disorders: Can We See the Forest for the Trees?" *Cel. Mol. Life Sci.*, 64 (16): 2090-2103, 2007.
- Roth et al., "γ-Butyrolactone and γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid—I Distribution and Metabolism," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 15: 1333-1348, 1966.
- Roth et al., "γ-Butyrolactone and γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid—II The Pharmacologically Active Form," *Int. J. Neropharmacol.*, 5: 421-428, 1966.
- Scharf et al., "The Effects and Effectiveness of γ-Hydroxybutyrate in Patients with Narcolepsy," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 46(6): 222-225, 1985.
- Scrima et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate Effects on Cataplexy and Sleep Attacks in Narcoleptics," *Sleep Res.*, 16: 134, 1987, Abstract.

US 8,772,306 B1

Page 3

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Scrima et al., "Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate versus Placebo in Treating Narcolepsy—Cataplexy: Double-Blind Subjective Measured," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 26: 331-343, 1989.
- Scrima et al., "The Effects of γ -Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," *Sleep*, 13(6): 479-490, 1990.
- Séries et al., "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 1378-1383, 1992.
- Smolders et al., "Tonic GABAergic Modulation of Striatal Dopamine Release Studied by In Vivo Microdialysis in the Freely Moving Rat," *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 284 (1-2): 83-91, 1995.
- Strong, " γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid and Intracranial Pressure," *The Lancet*, vol. 1: No. 8389, 1984.
- Van Den Bogert et al., "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man," *Anesthesiology and Intensive Care Medicine*, 110: 55-64, 1978.
- Vickers, M.D., "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," *Int. Anesth. Clinic*, 7: 75-89, 1969.
- Waszkielewicz et al., " γ -Hydrobutyric Acid (GHB) and its Chemical Modifications: A Review of the GHergic System," *Pol. J. Pharmacol.*, 56 (1): 43-49, 2004.
- Wesnes et al., "Moxonidine and Cognitive Function: Interactions with Moclobemide and Lorazepam," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 52: 351-358, 1997.
- Wesnes et al., "The Memory Enhancing Effects of a Ginkgo biloba/Panax ginseng Combination in Healthy Middle-Aged Volunteers," *Psychopharmacology*, 152: 353-361, 2000.
- Williams et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on Time-Based Sensitization of Cognitive Impairment with Haloperidol," *J. Clinic. Psych.*, 57, 7-11, 1996.
- Wu et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and γ -aminobutyric acid_B receptor (GABA_BR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence," *Neuropharmacology*, 47 (8): 1146-56, 2004.
- Yamada et al., "Effect of Butyrolactone and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," *Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol.*, 22: 558-562, 1967.
- United States Patent and Trademark Office, nonfinal Office Action mailed Nov. 15, 2013, in related U.S. Appl. No. 13/873,000.
- Wellendorph et al., "Phenylacetic acids and the structurally related non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug diclofenac bind to specific c-hydroxybutyric acid sites in rat brain," *Fundamental & Clinical Pharmacology*, 23: 207-213, 2009.
- Orphan Medical, Inc., NDA 21196, Major Amendment, filed Mar. 26, 2001, "Review and Evaluation of Clinical Data," http://www.fda.gov/ohrms/dockets/ac/01/briefing/3754b1_02_section%204.PDF (as downloaded on Mar. 4, 2014).

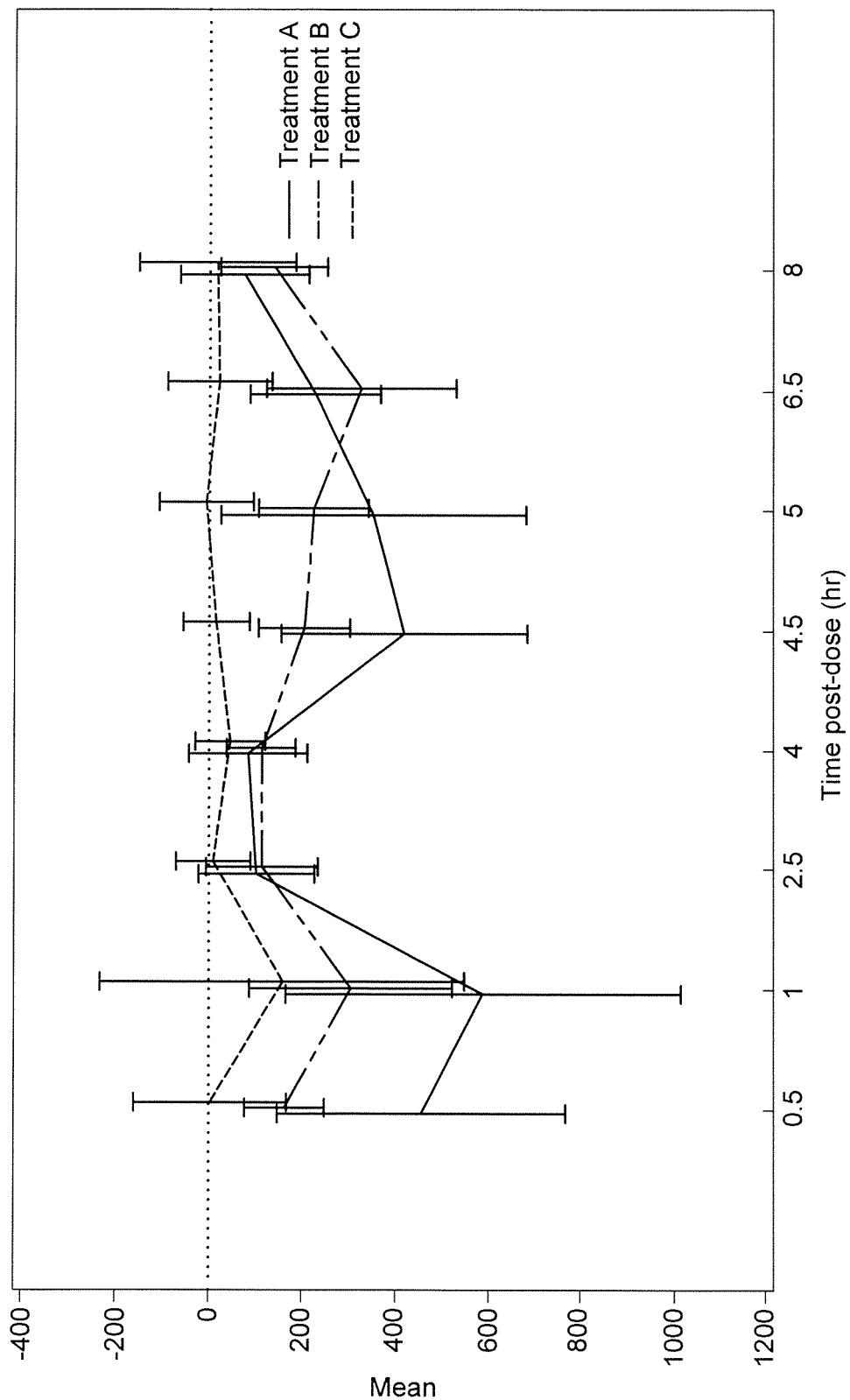
* cited by examiner

U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2014

Sheet 1 of 10

US 8,772,306 B1

**FIG. 1**

U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2014

Sheet 2 of 10

US 8,772,306 B1

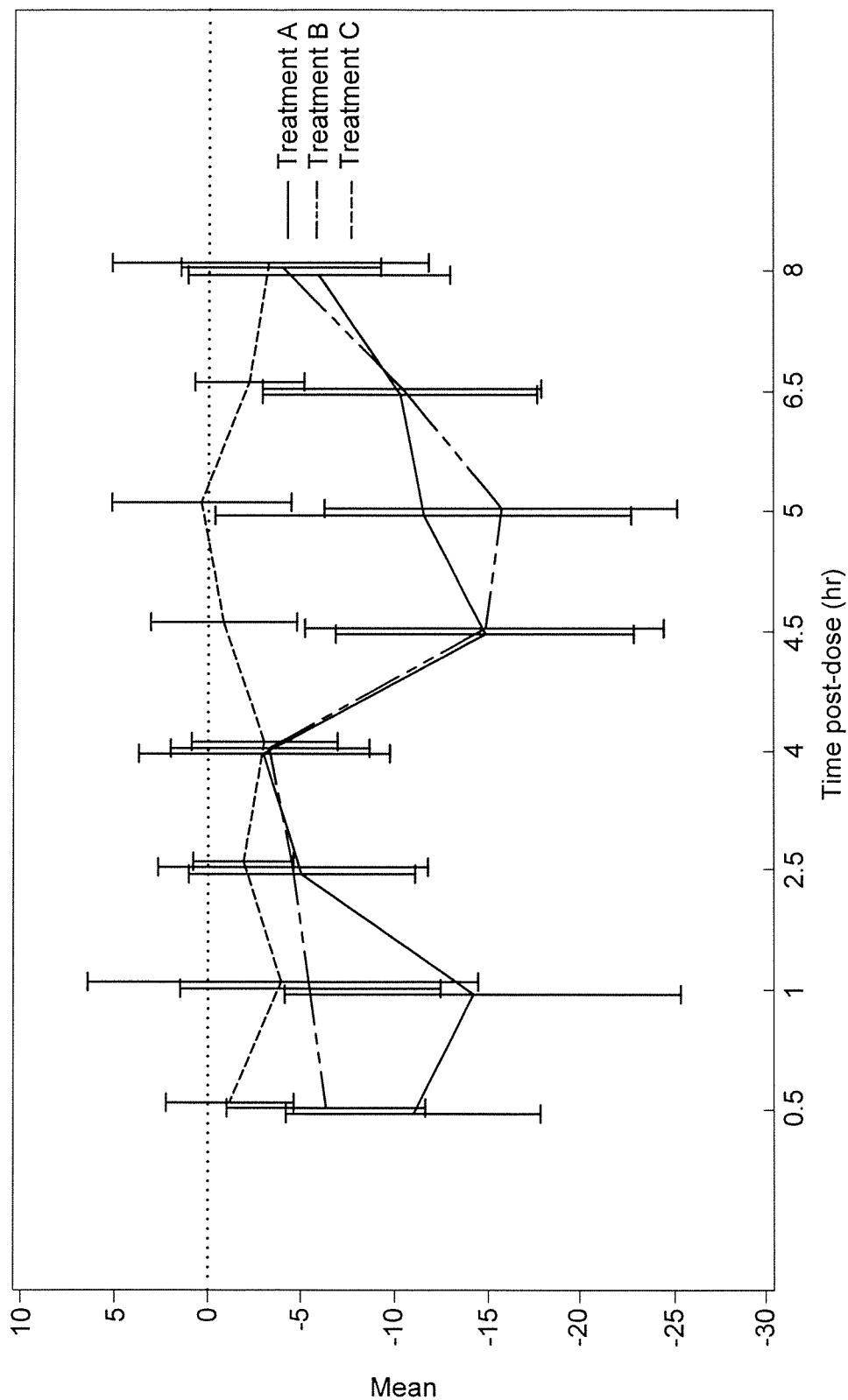


FIG. 2

U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2014

Sheet 3 of 10

US 8,772,306 B1

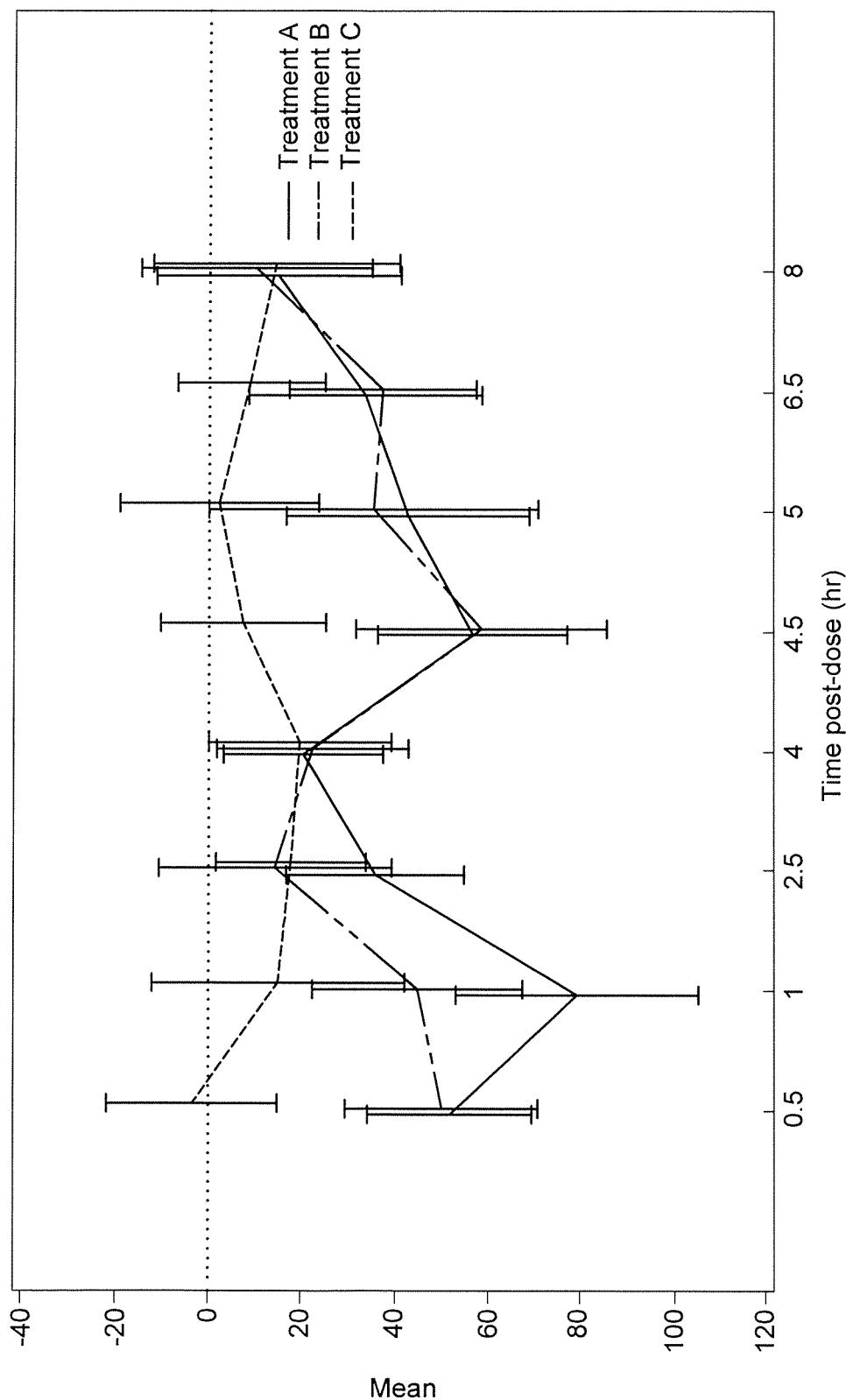


FIG. 3

U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2014

Sheet 4 of 10

US 8,772,306 B1

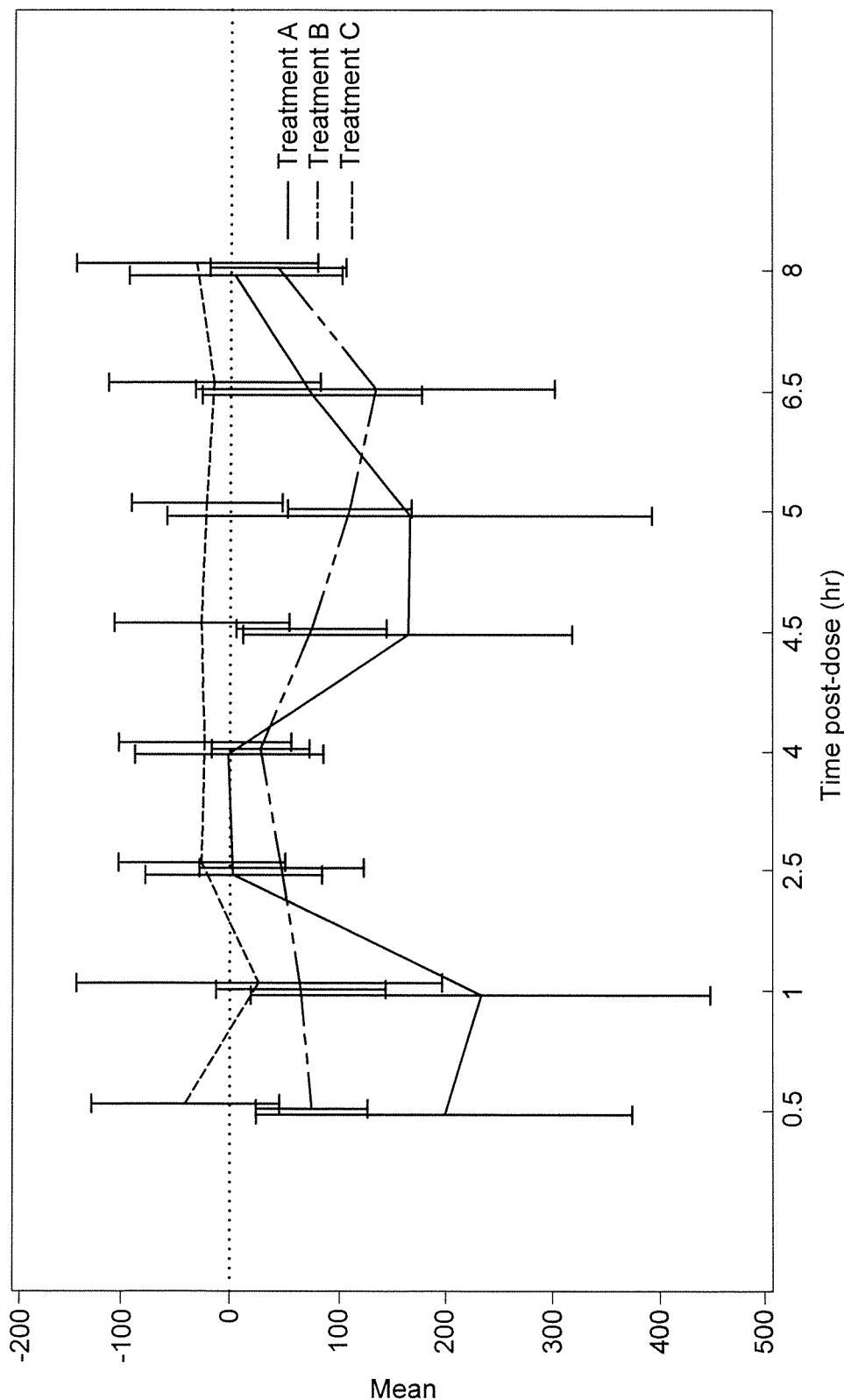


FIG. 4

U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2014

Sheet 5 of 10

US 8,772,306 B1

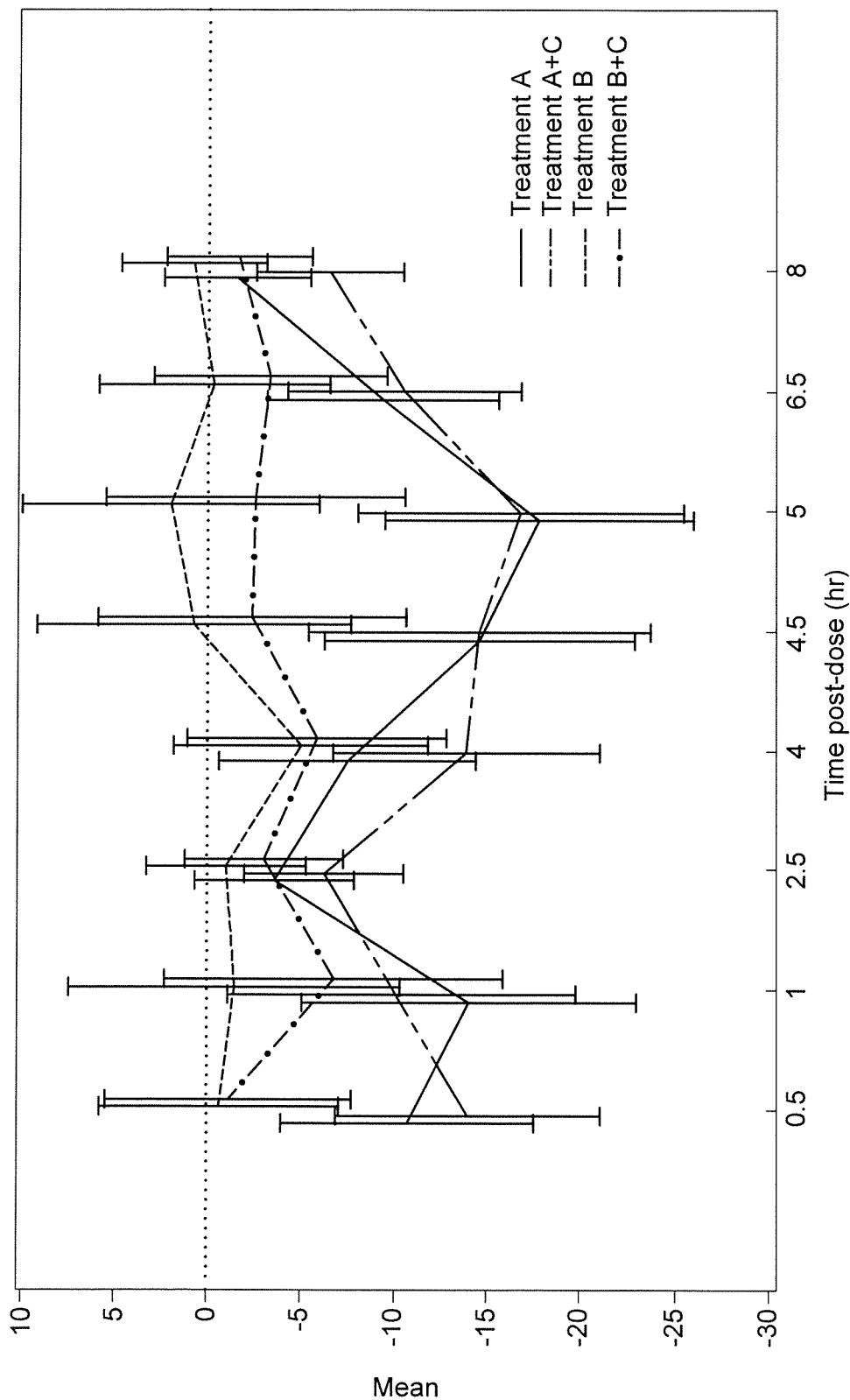


FIG. 5

U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2014

Sheet 6 of 10

US 8,772,306 B1

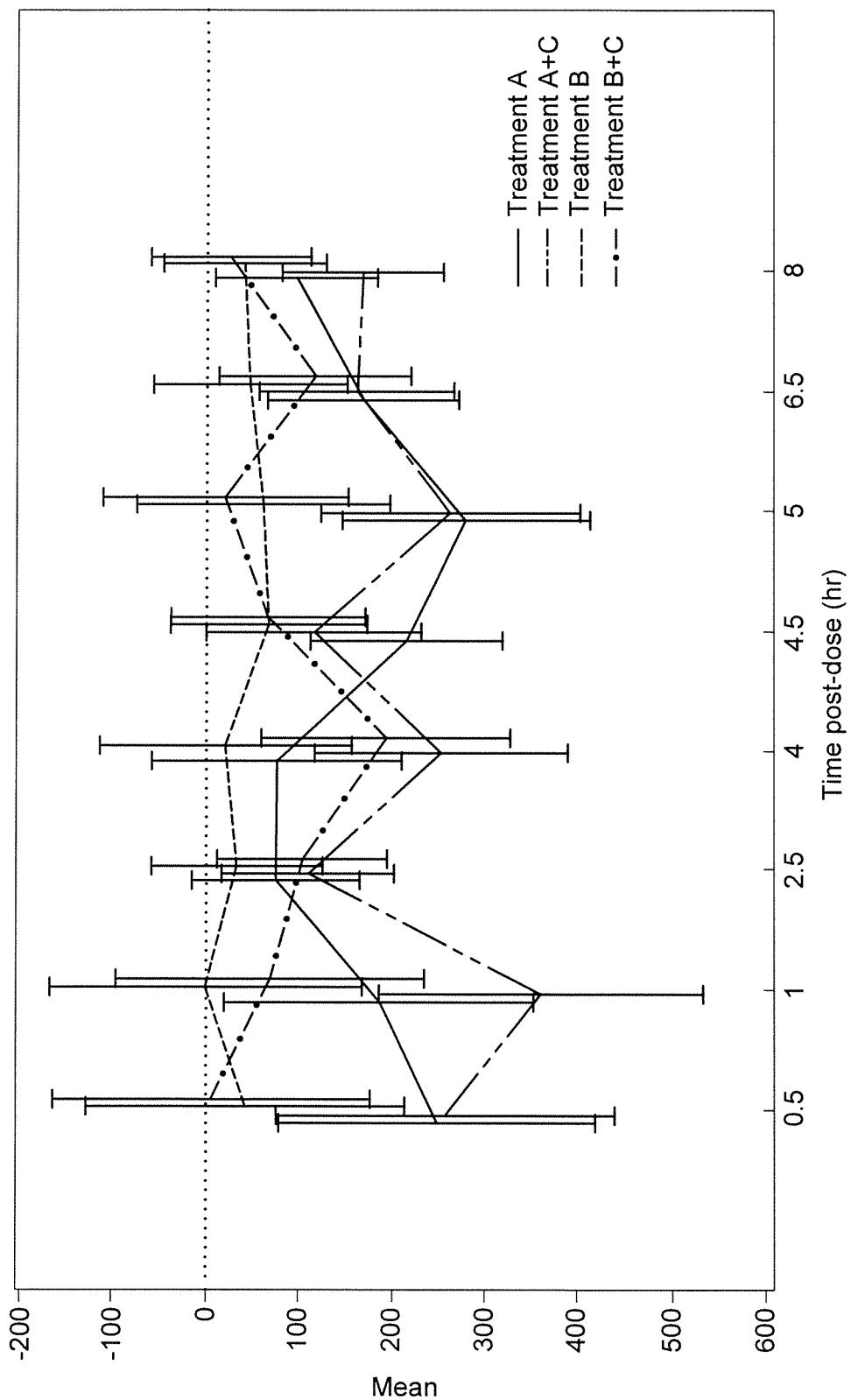


FIG. 6

U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2014

Sheet 7 of 10

US 8,772,306 B1

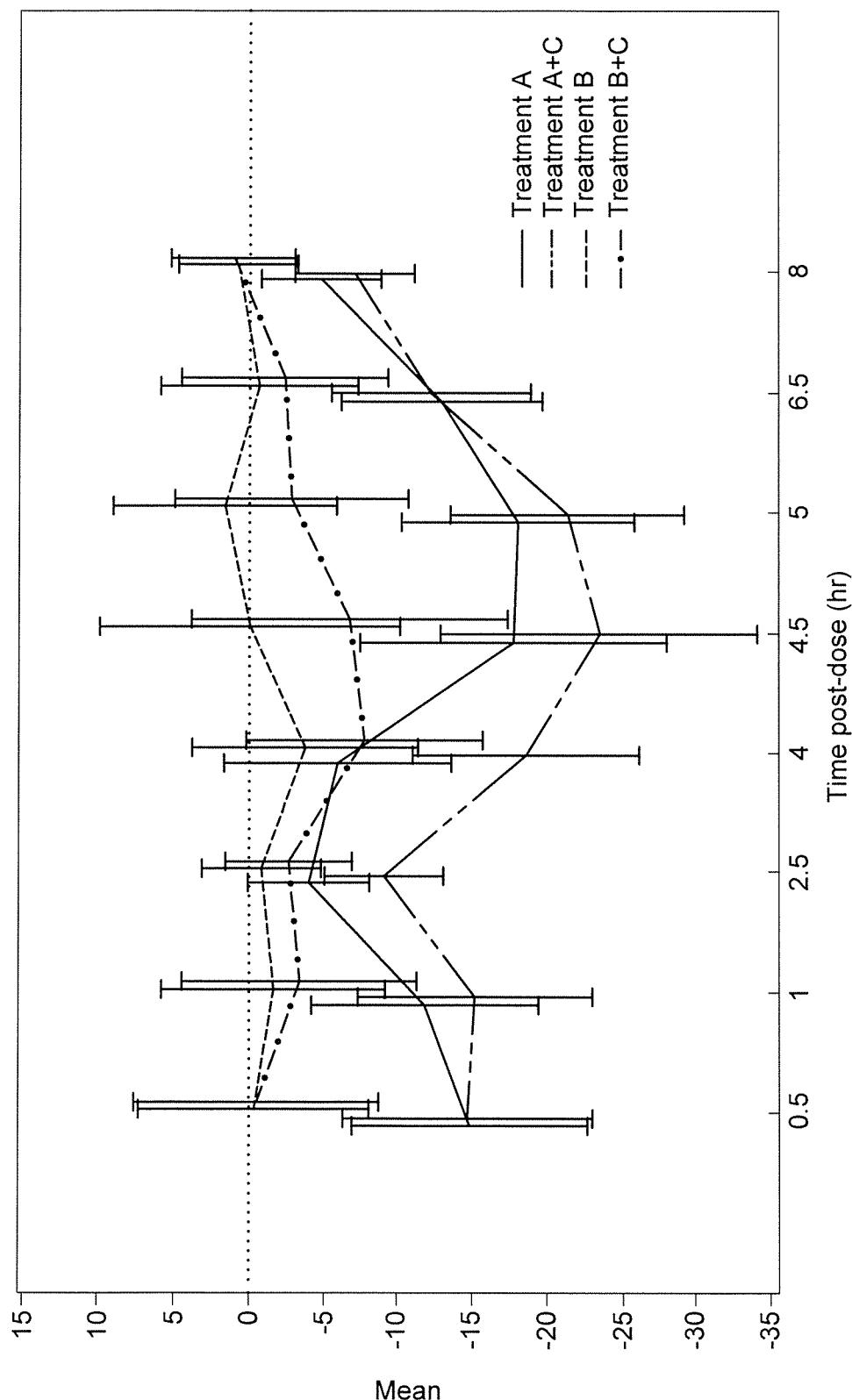


FIG. 7

U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2014

Sheet 8 of 10

US 8,772,306 B1

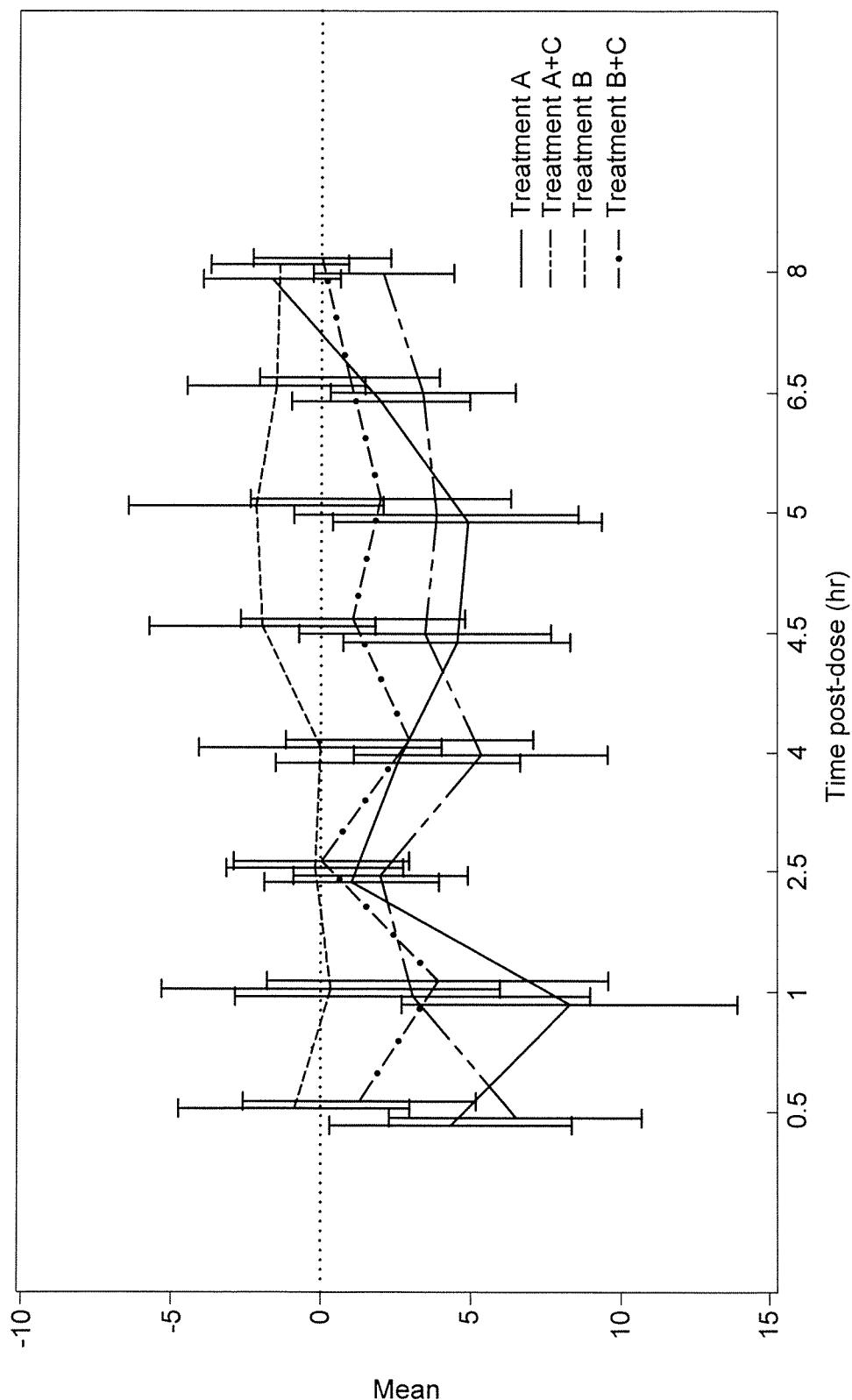


FIG. 8

U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2014

Sheet 9 of 10

US 8,772,306 B1

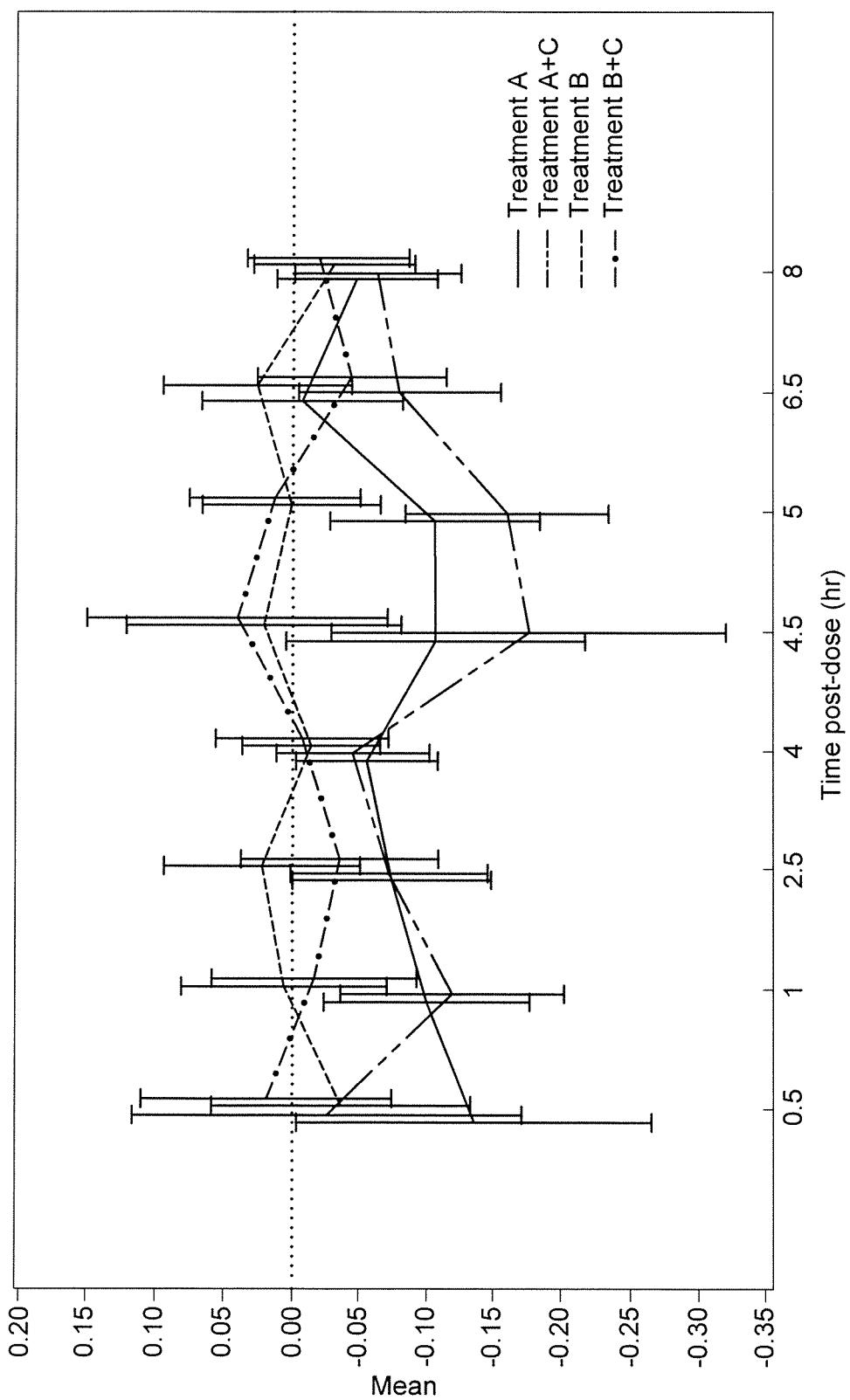


FIG. 9

U.S. Patent

Jul. 8, 2014

Sheet 10 of 10

US 8,772,306 B1

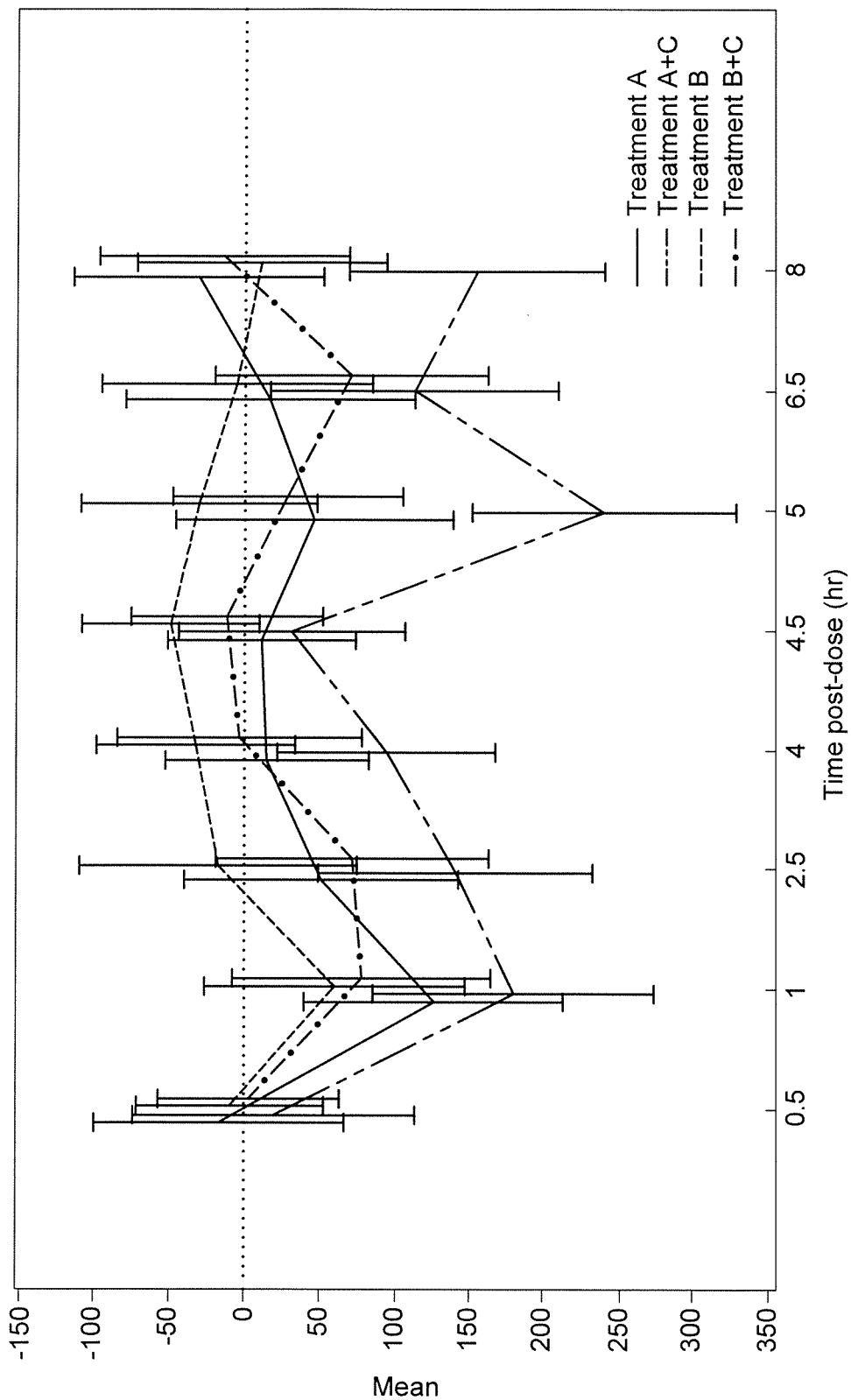


FIG. 10

US 8,772,306 B1

METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS

This application is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/837,714, filed Mar. 15, 2013, which claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/771,557, filed Mar. 1, 2013, and U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/777,873, filed Mar. 12, 2013, all of which applications are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

BACKGROUND

This application relates to methods for safely administering gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB) together with one or more other monocarboxylate transporter (MCT) inhibitors for therapeutic purposes. Example transporter inhibitors are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof, comprising: orally administering to the patient in need of treatment, an adjusted dosage amount of the salt of GHB when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of valproate. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced at least about 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the amount of GHB is reduced at least about 10% and about 30% of the normal administration and the daily administration of the GHB salt is between 1 gram and 10 grams. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the ranges of about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 45%, or about 45% or 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the range of about 1% to 50%, about 1% to 45%, about 1% to 40%, about 1% to 35%, about 1% to 30%, about 1% to 25%, about 1% to 20%, about 1% to 15%, about 1% to 10%, about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 50%, about 5% to 45%, about 5% to 40%, about 5% to 35%, about 5% to 30%, about 5% to 25%, about 5% to 20%, about 5% to 15%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 50%, about 10% to 45%, about 10% to 40%, about 10% to 35%, about 10% to 30%, about 10% to 25%, about 10% to 20%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to 45%, about 15% to 40%, about 15% to 35%, about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 50%, about 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient.

Another embodiment of the invention is a method of safely administering GHB a salt thereof for excessive daytime

sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising; determining if the patient is has taken, or
5 will take a concomitant dose of valproate; orally administering a reduced amount of the GHB or GHB salt to the patient compared to the normal dose so as to diminish the additive effects of the GHB or GHB salt when administered with valproate. The amount of GHB is reduced at least 10% to
10 30%, or at least +15% of the normal administration.

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep 15 arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with GHB or a salt thereof, comprising: orally administering to the patient in need of treatment, an adjusted dosage amount of the salt of GHB when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of diclofenac. In certain embodiments, the adjusted 20 amount is at least about 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% higher than the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the increased amount of GHB is at least about 15% more than the normal administration and the daily adminis- 25 tration of the GHB salt is between 1 gram and 10 grams. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is increased between the range of about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 30 40% to 45%, or about 45% or 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is increased between the range of about 1% to 50%, about 1% to 45%, about 1% to 40%, about 1% to 35%, about 1% to 30%, about 1% to 25%, 35 45% about 1% to 20%, about 1% to 15%, about 1% to 10%, about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 50%, about 5% to 45%, about 5% to 40%, about 5% to 35%, about 5% to 30%, about 5% to 25%, about 5% to 20%, about 5% to 15%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 50%, about 10% to 45%, about 10% to 40%, about 40 40% to 35%, about 10% to 30%, about 10% to 25%, about 10% to 20%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to 45%, about 15% to 40%, about 15% to 35%, about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 45 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 50%, about 50 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. See the product insert for normal dose ranges of GHB as sold by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. GHB is commercially known as Xyrem®.

55 In another embodiment, the invention is a method of safely administering a GHB salt for excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising:
60 determining if the patient has taken, or will take a concomitant dose of diclofenac; orally administering an increased amount of a GHB salt to the patient so as to compensate for the effects of diclofenac on the GHB salt when concomitantly administered

65 Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, wherein said patient is currently taking or has been prescribed

US 8,772,306 B1

3

GHB or a salt thereof, comprising determining if the patient is taking or has also been prescribed valproate or diclofenac; and adjusting the dose of the GHB or GHB salt to compensate for the effect caused by valproate or diclofenac. In certain embodiments, the method additionally comprises administering the adjusted dose to the patient.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma GHB, wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate additive effects.

The embodiments of the present invention can administer the GHB at a level of between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day. The concentration of the formulation can be between 350-750 mg/ml or 450-550 mg/ml and a pH between 6-10 or 6.5-8.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a salt of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient or determining whether the patient is currently on a GHB drug regimen; determining if the patient is also being administered ibuprofen; and advising a patient to cease or ceasing the administration of ibuprofen. In some embodiments, patients benefitting from this directive when the patient has will have a renal impairment.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered valproate; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of valproate and GHB; and reducing the dose of the GHB or GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by valproate. Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered diclofenac; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of diclofenac and the GHB salt; and increasing the dose of the GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by diclofenac.

In each of the embodiments of the invention the method includes administering GHB at between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day and at a concentration of between 350-750 or 450-550 mg/ml, and a pH between 6-10 or between 6.5-8. In further embodiments the valproate or diclofenac is administered within three days, one or two weeks (before or after) of GHB administration. In another embodiment, the present invention is a method wherein aspirin is also administered to the patient, especially with valproate.

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB as a single salt or a mixture of salts of GHB selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate

4

droxybutyrate ($Mg.(GHB)_2$), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate ($Ca.(GHB)_2$).

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB to a patient suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to the patient; determining if the patient has concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor; and adjusting the GHB dose or ceasing administering of the MCT inhibitor to maintain the effect of the GHB.

10 In any of the versions of the invention, the methods optionally further include administering aspirin to the patient.

In a further embodiment the method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof comprises administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while 15 avoiding concomitant of a diclofenac or valproate.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a method of administering GHB or a salt thereof (GHB) to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of diclofenac, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB or a GHB salt per day while avoiding diclofenac concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that diclofenac should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with 20 drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with diclofenac can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being 25 treated with diclofenac is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in an decrease in exposure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for 30 increased GHB clearance.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a administering GHB to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of valproate, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB per 35 day while avoiding valproate concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being 40 treated with valproate is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in exposure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient that MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for 45 increased GHB clearance.

In another embodiment, the present invention is a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management system to dispense information concerning the risks associated 50 with ingesting a MCT inhibitor concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; providing said pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and authorizing distribution of said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The method may also comprise including an electronic or written alert, which can explain the risks, to employees to dispense said information 55

US 8,772,306 B1

5

with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Also, the information can be dispensed when a subject refills said prescription. The warnings would be as recited above.

The methods of the present invention may include a warning for patients not to operate hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely and not to engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Any information dispensed with said drug advises patients of the potential for enhanced potency of said drug if said patients also take valproate or advises patients of the potential for decreased potency of said drug if said patients also take diclofenac.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while avoiding concomitant administration of diclofenac or valproate.

The invention may also comprise a method for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that the toxic effects of GHB are reduced. It may also comprise a method for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population). Treatment A=diclofenac placebo+Xyrem®. Treatment B=diclofenac+Xyrem®. Treatment C=diclofenac+Xyrem® placebo.

FIG. 2 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 3 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 4 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 5 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population). Treatment A=Xyrem®. Treatment B=Xyrem® placebo. Treatment C=valproate.

FIG. 6 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

FIG. 7 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

FIG. 8 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

FIG. 9 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

FIG. 10 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The following patents and applications are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties for all purposes: 6,472,

6

431, 6,780,889, 7,262,219, 7,851,506, 8,263,650, 8,324,275; 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 61/317,212, 13/071,369, 13/739,886, 12/264,709, PCT/US2010/033572, PCT/US2009/061312, 2009/0137565; and 5 2012/0076865. The following patents are also incorporated by reference: U.S. Pat. No. 5,380,937; U.S. Pat. No. 4,393, 236 German Patent DD 237,309 A1; and British Pat. No. 922,029.

Objects, features and advantages of the methods and compositions described herein will become apparent from the following detailed description. It should be understood, however, that the detailed description and the specific examples, while indicating specific embodiments, are given by way of illustration only, since various changes and modifications within the spirit and scope of the invention will become apparent to those skilled in the art from this detailed description.

The following references, to the extent that they provide 10 exemplary procedural or other details supplementary to those set forth herein, are specifically incorporated herein by reference.

Arena and Fung, "Absorption of sodium .gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and its prodrug .gamma.-butyrolactone: relationship between in vitro transport and in vivo absorption," J. Pharmaceutical Sciences, 69(3):356-358, 1980.

Bedard, Montplaisir, Godbout, Lapierre, "Nocturnal .gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate—Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients," 12(1):29-36, 1989.

Broughton and Mamelak, "The treatment of narcolepsy-cataplexy with nocturnal gamma-hydroxybutyrate," Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques. 6(1):1-6, 1979.

Ferrara, Zotti, Tedeschi, Frison, Castagna, Gessa and Gallimberti, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in the treatment of alcohol dependent," Clin. Neuropharm., 15(1, PtA):303A-304A, 1992.

Gessa, Diana, Fadda, Colombo, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) for treatment of ethanol dependence," Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement, 1992. Gessa et al., Clin. Neuropharm., 15(supp.):303A-304A, 1992

Gessa et al., Internat. Clin. Psychopharm., 1994.

Hasenbos and Gieien, "Anaesthesia for bullectomy," Anaesthesia, 40:977-980, 1985.

45 Laborit, "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semi aldehyde and Sleep," Laboratoire d'Eutonologie, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France, 1973.

Ladinsky. Consolo, Zatta, Vezzani. "Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System, Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacal., 322:42-48, 1983.

Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and narcolepsy: a double-blind placebo-controlled study," Sleep, 16(3): 216-220, 1993.

55 Lapierre, Montplaisir, Lamarre, Bedard, "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep-Triggering Mechanisms," Sleep. 13(1):24-30, 1990.

Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1988. Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1990. Lee, C. R. "Evidence for the .beta.-Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans" Biochem. Medicine 17, 284-291, 1977.

Lettieri and Fung, "Improved pharmacological activity via pro-drug modification: comparative pharmacokinetics of sodium .gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and .gamma.-butyrolactone," Research Communications In Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology. 22(1):107-118. 1978.

US 8,772,306 B1

7

Mamelak, 1977; "Effects Of Gamma Hydroxybutyrate On Sleep," Biol. Psychiatry 12, 273-288. Mamelak, "Gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB): An endogenous regulator of energy metabolism," Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews, 13: 189-198, 1989.

Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," Neuro. & Biobehav. Rev., 13 187-198, 1989.

Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak, Escriu, Stokan "The effects of gamma-hydroxybutyrate on sleep," Biol. Psychiatry, 10 12(2):273-288. 1977.

Mamelak, Escriu, Stokan, "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," The Lance, p. 328-329. 1973.

Nema, et al., "Excipients and their use in injectable products," PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol., 51(4):166-171, 1997.

Palatini, Tedeschi, Frison, Padrini, Zordan, Orlando, Gallimberti, Gessa, Ferrara, "Dose dependent absorption and elimination of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in healthy volunteers," Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol., 45:353-356, 1993.

Roth and Giarman, ".gamma.-Butyrolactone and .gamma.-Hydroxybutyric Acid-I, Distribution and Metabolism," Biochemical Pharmacology, 15:1333-1348, 1966.

Scharf, Brown, Woods, Brown, Hirschowitz, "The effects and effectiveness of gammahydroxybutyrate In patients with narcolepsy," J. Clin. Psychiatry, 46(6)222-225, 1985.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "Efficacy of gamma-hydroxybutyrate versus placebo in treating narcolepsy-cataplexy: Double-blind subjective measured," Biol. Psychiatry, 26:331-343, 1989.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "The Effects of .gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," Sleep, 13(6):479-490, 1990.

Scrima, et al, "Sleep Res. 16, 134, 1987, Abstract. Series, Series, Cormier, "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," Am. Rev. Respir. Dis., 1378-1383, 1992.

Strong, ".gamma.-Hydroxybutyric acid and Intracranial Pressure," The Lancet, Vol. 1: No. 8389, 1984. van den Bogert, Vree, van der Kleijn, Damsma, "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man."

Vickers, "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," Int. Anesth. Clinic, 7:75-89, 1969.

Lee, Biochem. Med. 17:234-291, 1977. Yamada, Yamamoto, Fujiki, Hishikawa, Kaneko, "Effect of Butyrolactone and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol., 22:558-562, 1967.

Yamada et al., 1967. Wu, Ying; Ali, Saima; Ahmadian, Ghola-mreza; Liu, Chun Che; Wang, Yu Tian; Gibson, K. Michael; Calver, Andrew R.; Francis, Joseph et al. (2004). "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-aminobutyric acidB receptor (GABABR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence". Neuroparmacology 47 (8): 1146-56.

Cash, C; Gobaille, S; Kemmel, V; Andriamanampandry, C; Maitre, M (1999). " γ -hydroxybutyrate receptor function studied by the modulation of nitric oxide synthase activity in rat frontal cortex punches". Biochemical Pharmacology 58 (11): 1815-9.

Maitre M, Humbert JP, Kemmel V, Aunis D, Andriamanampandry C (2005). "A mechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse" (in French). Med Sci (Paris) 21 (3): 284-9. Waszkielewicz A, Bojarski J (2004). "Gamma-hydrobutyric acid (GHB) and its chemical modifications: a review of the GH Bergic system" (PDF). Pol J Pharmacol 56 (1): 43-9.

8

Kuriyama K, Sze P Y (1971). "Blood-brain barrier to H3-gamma-aminobutyric acid in normal and amino oxy-acetic acid-treated animals". Neuropharmacology 10 (1): 103-8.

5 Dimitrijevic N, Dzitoyeva S, Satta R, Imbesi M, Yildiz S, Manev H (2005). "Drosophila GABA(B) receptors are involved in behavioral effects of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB)". Eur. J. Pharmacol. 519 (3): 246-52.

Banerjee P K, Snead O C (1995). "Presynaptic gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-aminobutyric acidB (GABAB) receptor-mediated release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in rat thalamic ventrobasal nucleus (VB): a possible mechanism for the generation of absence-like seizures induced by GHB". J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther. 273 (3): 1534-43.

Hechler V, Gobaille S, Bourguignon J J, Maitre M (1991). "Extracellular events induced by gamma-hydroxybutyrate in striatum: a microdialysis study". J. Neurochem. 56 (3): 938-44. Maitre, M; Hechler, V; Vayer, P; Gobaille, S; Cash, CD; Schmitt, M; Bourguignon, J J (1990). "A specific gamma-hydroxybutyrate receptor ligand possesses both antagonistic and anticonvulsant properties". J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther. 255 (2): 657-63.

25 Smolders I, De Klippe N, Sarre S, Ebinger G, Michotte Y (1995). "Tonic GABAergic modulation of striatal dopamine release studied by in vivo microdialysis in the freely moving rat". Eur. J. Pharmacol. 284 (1-2): 83-91.

In the specification and claims that follow, references will be made to a number of terms which shall be defined to have the following meaning.

30 The terms "a" and "an" do not denote a limitation of quantity, but rather denote the presence of at least one of the referenced item. The term "or" means "and/or". The terms "comprising", "having", "including", and "containing" are to be construed as open-ended terms (i.e., meaning "including, but not limited to").

35 "Concomitant" and "concomitantly" as used herein refer to the administration of at least two drugs to a patient either subsequently, simultaneously, or consequently within a time period during which the effects of the first administered drug are still operative in the patient. Thus, if the first drug is, e.g., Xyrem®, or GHB, and the second drug is valproate, the concomitant administration of the second drug occurs within two weeks, preferably within one week or even three days, before or after the administration of the first drug.

40 "Dosage amount" means an amount of a drug suitable to be taken during a fixed period, usually during one day (i.e., daily).

45 "Dosage amount adapted for oral administration" means a dosage amount that is of an amount deemed safe and effective for the particular patient under the conditions specified. As used herein and in the claims, this dosage amount is determined by following the recommendations of the drug manufacturer's Prescribing Information as approved by the US

50 Food and Drug Administration.

55 "Dosing regimen" means the dose of a drug taken at a first time by a patient and the interval (time or symptomatic) and dosage amounts at which any subsequent doses of the drug are taken by the patient. Each dose may be of the same or a different dosage amount.

60 "A "dose" means the measured quantity of a drug to be taken at one time by a patient.

A "patient" means a human in need of medical treatment. In one embodiment medical treatment can include treatment of an existing condition, such as a disease or disorder, prophylactic or preventative treatment, or diagnostic treatment. In another embodiment, medical treatment also includes

US 8,772,306 B1

9

administration to treat excessive daytime sleepiness, catalepsy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus.

“Providing” means giving, administering, selling, distributing, transferring (for profit or not), manufacturing, compounding, or dispensing.

The terms “therapeutically effective amount,” as used herein, refer to an amount of a compound sufficient to treat, ameliorate, or prevent the identified disease or condition, or to exhibit a detectable therapeutic, prophylactic, or inhibitory effect. The effect can be detected by, for example, an improvement in clinical condition, or reduction in symptoms. The precise effective amount for a subject will depend upon the subject’s body weight, size, and health; the nature and extent of the condition; and the therapeutic or combination of therapeutics selected for administration. Where a drug has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), a “therapeutically effective amount” refers to the dosage approved by the FDA or its counterpart foreign agency for treatment of the identified disease or condition.

“Side effect” means a secondary effect resulting from taking a drug. The secondary effect can be a negative (unfavorable) effect (i.e., an adverse side effect) or a positive (favorable) effect.

Pharmacokinetic parameters referred to herein describe the in vivo characteristics of drug (or a metabolite or a surrogate marker for the drug) over time. These include plasma concentration (C), as well as C_{max} , C_n , C_{24} , T_{max} , and AUC. The term “ T_{max} ” refers to the time from drug administration until C_{max} is reached. “AUC” is the area under the curve of a graph of the measured plasma concentration of an active agent vs. time, measured from one time point to another time point. For example AUC_{0-t} is the area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time t, where time 0 is the time of initial administration of the drug. Time t can be the last time point with measurable plasma concentration for an individual formulation. The $AUC_{0-\infty}$, or AUC_{0-INF} is the calculated area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time infinity. In steady-state studies, $AUC_{0-\tauau}$ is the area under the curve of plasma concentration over the dosing interval (i.e., from time 0 to time τau). (τau is the length of the dosing interval).

It may be advantageous to incorporate a pharmacy management system into the method of the present invention. Pharmacy management systems are computer-based systems that are used by commercial pharmacies to manage prescriptions and to provide pharmacy and medical personnel with warnings and guidance regarding drugs being administered to patients. Such systems typically provide alerts warning either or both of health care providers and patients when a drug that may be harmful to the particular patient is prescribed. For example, such systems can provide alerts warning that a patient has an allergy to a prescribed drug, or is receiving concomitant administration of a drug that can have a dangerous interaction with a prescribed drug. U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 5,758,095, 5,833,599, 5,845,255, 6,014,631, 6,067,524, 6,112,182, 6,317,719, 6,356,873, and U.S. Pat. No. 7,072,840, each of which is incorporated herein by reference, disclose various pharmacy management systems and aspects thereof. Example pharmacy management systems are now commercially available, e.g., CENTRICITY Pharmacy from BDM Information Systems Ltd., General Electric Healthcare, Waukesha, Wis., Rx30 Pharmacy Systems from Transaction Data Systems, Inc., Ocoee, Fla., SPEED SCRIPT from Digi-

10

tal Simplistics, Inc., Lenexa, Kans., and various pharmacy management systems from OPUS-ISM, Hauppauge, N.Y.

In some embodiments, a pharmacy management system may be required or preferred as part of a drug distribution program. For example, the present invention includes a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: (1) Identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management system to dispense information concerning the risks associated with ingesting a MCT inhibitors concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; (2) Providing said pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and (3) Authorizing distribution of said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The established management system may include an electronic alert to employees to dispense said information with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Such information may be dispensed in written form, for example in a brochure explaining the risks of concomitant ingestion of GHB and an MCT inhibitor such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen or combinations thereof. For example, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for enhanced potency of GHB if the patient also takes valproate. Alternatively, or in addition thereto, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for decreased potency of GHB if the patient also takes diclofenac. Such information may also be dispensed in verbal form. Distributors may maintain a directory of approved pharmacies, for example in a computer readable storage medium, to further ensure that GHB is dispensed only to patients who are advised of the additive effects.

In addition, the system can prevent the dispensing of GHB or salt thereof until proper testing or confirmation is obtained that the patient is not taking or going to take valproate or diclofenac concomitantly with GHB. Alternatively, the patient can be warned of the adverse effect and instructed to modify the dose of GHB to accommodate the increased or reduced effects of GHB due to valproate or diclofenac.

A pharmacy management system of the present invention can be a REMS system as shown in U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,059; 7,797,171; and 7,668,730 and also include monitoring for concomitant use of diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, or combinations thereof. Warnings may be administered through the existing pharmacy management system as described in the patents above.

One embodiment of the present invention, without being limited by theory, is the discovery of drug interactions that change either, or both, the efficacy or safety profile of GHB. The three compounds are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprophen or combinations thereof. To achieve the above benefits, GHB of the present invention can be administered in a reduced amount when a second compound, such as valproate, is concomitantly administered with GHB. It can also be administered in an increased amount to overcome any effects of diclofenac. The compounds can also be avoided or discontinued to prevent unsafe concomitant administration.

In one embodiment of the present invention, concomitant administration of GHB with other agents is monitored and potential changes to the doses of GHB are made, or changes in the administration of other compounds are made. In one embodiment of the present invention, when GHB was concomitantly administered with ibuprofen, there were pharmacokinetic (PK) changes consistent with monocarboxylic transporter (MCT) inhibition and renal excretion of GHB doubled (statistically significant). Plasma levels were about ~5% lower, which was statistically significant. In another

US 8,772,306 B1

11

embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and Diclofenac are concomitantly administered, PD effects were significantly reduced. In another embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and divalproate were concomitantly administered, PK showed both MCT and GHB dehydrogenase inhibition, with the latter predominating. MCT inhibition caused renal clearance to be increased 30% (statistically significant). GHB dehydrogenase inhibition caused systemic exposure (plasma AUC) to be increased 26%. Both measures are statistically significant and outside FDA "equivalence window". PD shows more pronounced effects with concomitant administration.

One embodiment is a method of administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to a patient in need of treatment, such as with narcolepsy, the invention provides an improvement that comprises avoiding or discontinuing administration of a compound that affects GHB potency and administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB. The compound can be diclofenac or valproate and they can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB.

Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB)

GHB (also called oxysorbate or oxybate) is approved in the United States (US) for the treatment of excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS) and for the treatment of cataplexy, both in patients with narcolepsy. GHB is commercially sold as Xyrem® sodium oxybate by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. Sodium oxybate is the sodium salt of the endogenous neurotransmitter gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB), which is found in many tissues of the body. "GHB", oxybate, a GHB salt or Xyrem® will be used to refer to these active forms. It can be used as a sodium, calcium, potassium, or magnesium salt. See U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886.

GHB is present, for example, in the mammalian brain and other tissues. In the brain, the highest GHB concentration is found in the hypothalamus and basal ganglia and GHB is postulated to function as a neurotransmitter. The neuropharmacologic effects of GHB include increases in brain acetylcholine, increases in brain dopamine, inhibition of GABA-ketoglutarate transaminase and depression of glucose utilization but not oxygen consumption in the brain. GHB is converted to succinate and then metabolized via the Krebs cycle. Clinical trials have shown that GHB increases delta sleep and improves the continuity of sleep (Laborit, 1973; Lapierre et al., 1988; Lapierre et al., 1990; Yamada et al., 1967; Scharf, 1985).

GHB treatment substantially reduces the signs and symptoms of narcolepsy, i.e. excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus. In addition, GHB increases total sleep time and REM sleep, and it decreases REM latency (Mamelak et al., 1973; Yamada et al., 1967; Bedard et al., 1989), reduces sleep apnea (Scrima et al., 1987), and improves general anesthesia (Hasenbos and Gielen, 1985).

GHB has several clinical applications other than narcolepsy and sleep disorders. GHB has been reported to reduce alcohol craving, the number of daily drinks consumed, and the symptoms of alcohol withdrawal in patients (Gallimberti et al., 1989; Gallimberti et al., 1992; Gessa et al., 1992). GHB has been used to decrease the symptoms of opiate withdrawal, including both heroin and methadone withdrawal (Gallimberti et al., 1994; Gallimberti et al., 1993). It has analgesic effects that make it suitable as a pain reliever (U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236). Intravenous administration of GHB has been reported to reduce intracranial pressure in patients (Strong, A. 1984). Also, administration of GHB was reported to increase growth hormone levels in patients (Gessa et al., 1994).

12

A good safety profile for GHB consumption, when used long term for treatment of narcolepsy has been reported. Patients have been safely treated for many years with GHB without development of tolerance (Scharf, 1985). Clinical laboratory tests carried out periodically on many patients have not indicated organ or other toxicities (Lammers, 1993; Scrima, 1990; Scharf, 1985; Mamelack, 1977; Mamelak, 1979; Gessa, 1992). The side effects of GHB treatment have been minimal in incidence and degree of severity, though they include sleepwalking, enuresis, headache, nausea and dizziness (Broughton and Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak et al., 1981; Mamelak et al., 1977; Scrima et al., 1989; Scrima et al., 1990; Scharf et al., 1985). Therefore, it is critical to identify adverse drug-drug interactions to maintain the positive safety profile for GHB.

GHB Pharmacology

GHB has at least two distinct binding sites (See Wu, et al., 2004) in the central nervous system. GHB is an agonist at the GHB receptor, which is excitatory, (Cash et al., 2009) and it is a weak agonist at the GABAB receptor, which is inhibitory. GHB acts in a similar fashion to some neurotransmitters in the mammalian brain and is probably synthesized from GABA in GABAergic neurons, and released when the neurons fire. If taken orally, GABA itself does not effectively cross the blood-brain-barrier. (See Kuriyama et al., 2005).

GHB induces the accumulation of either a derivative of tryptophan or tryptophan itself in the extracellular space, possibly by increasing tryptophan transport across the blood-brain barrier. The blood content of certain neutral amino-acids, including tryptophan, is also increased by peripheral GHB administration. GHB-induced stimulation of tissue serotonin turnover may be due to an increase in tryptophan transport to the brain and in its uptake by serotonergic cells. As the serotonergic system may be involved in the regulation of sleep, mood, and anxiety, the stimulation of this system by high doses of GHB may be involved in certain neuropharmacological events induced by GHB administration.

However, at therapeutic doses, GHB reaches much higher concentrations in the brain and activates GABAB receptors, which are primarily responsible for its sedative effects. (See Dimitrijevic et al., 2005). GHB's sedative effects are blocked by GABAB antagonists.

The role of the GHB receptor in the behavioral effects induced by GHB is more complex. GHB receptors are densely expressed in many areas of the brain, including the cortex and hippocampus, and these are the receptors that GHB displays the highest affinity for. There has been somewhat limited research into the GHB receptor; however, there is evidence that activation of the GHB receptor in some brain areas results in the release of glutamate, the principal excitatory neurotransmitter. Drugs that selectively activate the GHB receptor cause absence seizures in high doses, as do GHB and GABA(B) agonists. (See Banerjee et al., 1995.)

Activation of both the GHB receptor and GABA(B) is responsible for the addictive profile of GHB. GHB's effect on dopamine release is biphasic. (See Hechler et al., 1991). Low concentrations stimulate dopamine release via the GHB receptor. (See Maitre et al., 1990). Higher concentrations inhibit dopamine release via GABA(B) receptors as do other GABA(B) agonists such as baclofen and phenibut. (See Smolders et al., 1995). After an initial phase of inhibition, dopamine release is then increased via the GHB receptor. Both the inhibition and increase of dopamine release by GHB are inhibited by opioid antagonists such as naloxone and naltrexone. Dynorphin may play a role in the inhibition of dopamine release via kappa opioid receptors. (See Mamelak 1989).

US 8,772,306 B1

13

This may explain the paradoxical mix of sedative and stimulatory properties of GHB, as well as the so-called “rebound” effect, experienced by individuals using GHB as a sleeping agent, wherein they awake suddenly after several hours of GHB-induced deep sleep. That is to say that, over time, the concentration of GHB in the system decreases below the threshold for significant GABAB receptor activation and activates predominantly the GHB receptor, leading to wakefulness. However, one embodiment of the present invention is the unexpected discovery that drugs change the PD profile of GHB to alter its effects and its safety profile. Example drugs are include valproate and diclofenac. It is important for efficacy safety purposes that the effect of GHB be maintained consistently and not subject to variation due to the effects of other drugs.

Both of the metabolic breakdown pathways shown for GHB can run in either direction, depending on the concentrations of the substances involved, so the body can make its own GHB either from GABA or from succinic semialdehyde. Under normal physiological conditions, the concentration of GHB in the body is rather low, and the pathways would run in the reverse direction to what is shown here to produce endogenous GHB. However, when GHB is consumed for recreational or health promotion purposes, its concentration in the body is much higher than normal, which changes the enzyme kinetics so that these pathways operate to metabolize GHB rather than produce it.

The pharmacokinetics of GHB have been investigated in alcohol dependent patients (Ferrara et al., 1992) and in normal healthy males (Palatini et al., 1993) after oral administration. GHB possesses a rapid onset and short pharmacological effect (Ferrara et al., 1992; Palatini et al., 1993; Lettieri and Fung, 1978; Arena and Fung, 1980; Roth and Giarman, 1966; Vickers, 1969; Lee, 1977). In alcohol dependent patients, GHB absorption into and elimination from the systemic circulation were fast processes. Virtually no unchanged drug could be recovered in the urine. There were preliminary indications that the pharmacokinetics of GHB might be non-linear or dose-dependent (Ferrara et al., 1992). In the healthy volunteers study, the pharmacokinetics of three rising GHB doses (12.5, 25, and 50 mg/kg) were investigated. These findings indicate that both the oral absorption and elimination processes of GHB were capacity-limited though the degree of dose dependency was moderate (Palatini et al., 1993).

Methods of making GHB salts are described, for example, in U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236, and U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886 which are incorporated herein by reference.

It has been discovered that there are unexpected drug-drug interactions (DDI) between GHB and common drugs frequently prescribed for other ailments. It is one goal of the present invention to warn when those interactions may affect the safety profile of GHB. In one embodiment of the present invention, drugs that may affect GHB administration include valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

GHB is a central nervous system (CNS) depressant. Alcohol and sedative hypnotics are contraindicated in patients who are using GHB. The concurrent use of GHB with other CNS depressants, including but not limited to opioid analgesics, benzodiazepines, sedating antidepressants or antipsychotics, general anesthetics, muscle relaxants, and/or illicit CNS depressants, may increase the risk of respiratory depression, hypotension, profound sedation, syncope, and death. If use of these CNS depressants in combination with GHB is required, dose reduction or discontinuation of one or more CNS depressants (including GHB) should be considered. In addition, if short-term use of an opioid (e.g. post- or periop-

14

erative) is required, interruption of treatment with GHB should be considered. See the package insert for Xyrem®.

GHB may impair respiratory drive, especially with overdoses associated with interactions with other drugs and alcohol. Since valproate may potentiate the effect of GHB, a warning should accompany any use of valproate and GHB as stated herein. The warning should address the use of additional drugs that may further enhance the effect of GHB, such as alcohol or aspirin, for example.

Healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Patients should be queried about potential adverse events, such as excessive daytime sleepiness, CNS depression related events, etc. upon initiation of GHB therapy and periodically thereafter. These queries should include info regarding additional medication such as diclofenac and valproate for example. See the Xyrem® package insert.

In one embodiment described herein, patients are warned that combination of GHB with valproate can increase plasma levels and potentiate the activity of GHB and exacerbate all the effects and adverse event associated with GHB. These effects include the intended effects of drowsiness, sedation, and sleep and typically unintended events such as depressed respiration, CNS depression, excessive drowsiness, hepatic impairment, and depression, among other things.

In another embodiment, diclofenac mitigates and protects against the pharmacodynamic effects the effects of GHB. However, the mixture of GHB and diclofenac does not affect sleepiness and does not make a patient more attentive. Without wishing to be bound by theory, the effects may be due to the interaction between diclofenac and the GHB receptor in lieu of the MCT inhibitor activity.

Typical concentrations of GHB formulations are shown in U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,263,650 and 8,324,275, for example. They include minimum concentrations starting from 150 mg/ml to 450 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) and increasing to 600 mg/ml to 750 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) as a maximum. So, a broad range would include 150-750 mg/ml and any range within the broad range using 10 mg/ml increments. One embodiment of the invention is a range of 350-750 mg/ml and another is 450-550 mg/ml GHB. One embodiment of the present invention uses a GHB formulation with a pH range of 6-10, another uses a pH range of between 6.5-8. For example, a minimum concentration includes 350, 360, 370, 380 mg/ml, and so on up to at least 730, 740, and 750 mg/ml and all concentrations (measured in 10 mg/ml increments in between).

pH adjusting agents can include acids, bases and many of the compounds found in U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650. In some embodiments the pH adjusting agent is an acid selected from the group of: acetic, acetylsalicylic, barbital, barbituric, benzoic, benzyl penicillin, boric, caffeine, carbonic, citric, dichloroacetic, ethylenediaminetetra-acetic acid (EDTA), formic, glycerophosphoric, glycine, lactic, malic, mandelic, monochloroacetic, oxalic, phenobarbital, phenol, picric, propionic, saccharin, salicylic, sodium dihydrogen phosphate, succinic, sulfadiazine, sulfamerazine, sulfapyridine, sulfathiazole, tartaric, trichloroacetic, and the like, or inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, nitric, phosphoric or sulfuric, and the like.

US 8,772,306 B1

15

GHB is commercially available as a sodium salt, however, it can also be formulated as a mixture of salts as shown in U.S. Ser. No. 13/739,886, which is incorporated by reference as stated above. For example, the mixture comprises one, two, or three or more salts selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂). The different salts may be present in different percentages. For example, in certain embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 5% to about 40%, the K.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 10% to about 40%, and the Ca.(GHB)₂ salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 20% to about 80%. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂ salts are present in a wt/wt % ratio of about 11%:39%:50%, respectively.

Valproic Acid

Valproic acid (VPA, also called valproate or divalproex), an acidic chemical compound, has found clinical use as an anticonvulsant and mood-stabilizing drug, primarily in the treatment of epilepsy, bipolar disorder, and, less commonly, major depression. See G. Rosenberg, *Cell. Mol. Life. Sci.* 64 (2007) 2090-2103. It is also used to treat migraine headaches and schizophrenia. A typical dose of valproate varies by indication. Dosages for seizures are between 10 to 15 mg/kg/day, with potential increases of 5 to 10 mg/kg/day. VPA is a liquid at room temperature, but it can be reacted with a base such as sodium hydroxide to form the salt sodium valproate, which is a solid. The acid, salt, or a mixture of the two (valproate semisodium, divalproate) are marketed under the various brand names Depakote, Depakote ER, Depakene, Depakene Crono (extended release in Spain), Depacon, Depakine, Valparin and Stavzor.

Valproate is believed to affect the function of the neurotransmitter GABA in the human brain, making it an alternative to lithium salts in treatment of bipolar disorder. Its mechanism of action includes enhanced neurotransmission of GABA (by inhibiting GABA transaminase, which breaks down GABA). However, several other mechanisms of action in neuropsychiatric disorders have been proposed for valproic acid in recent years. See Rosenberg G (2007). "The mechanisms of action of valproate in neuropsychiatric disorders: can we see the forest for the trees?". *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences* 64 (16): 2090-103.

Valproic acid also blocks the voltage-gated sodium channels and T-type calcium channels. These mechanisms make valproic acid a broad-spectrum anticonvulsant drug. Valproic acid is an inhibitor of the enzyme histone deacetylase 1 (HDAC1), hence it is a histone deacetylase inhibitor. Valproic acid may interact with carbamazepine, as valproates inhibit microsomal epoxide hydrolase (mEH), the enzyme responsible for the breakdown of carbamazepine-10,11 epoxide (the main active metabolite of carbamazepine) into inactive metabolites. (See Gonzalez, Frank J.; Robert H. Tukey (2006). "Drug Metabolism". In Laurence Brunton, John Lazo, Keith Parker (eds.). *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* (11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill. pp. 79.) By inhibiting mEH, valproic acid causes a buildup of the active metabolite, prolonging the effects of carbamazepine and delaying its excretion. Valproic acid also decreases the clearance of amitriptyline and nortriptyline.

Aspirin may decrease the clearance of valproic acid, leading to higher-than-intended serum levels of the anticonvulsant. Also, combining valproic acid with the benzodiazepine

16

clonazepam can lead to profound sedation and increases the risk of absence seizures in patients susceptible to them.

Valproic acid and sodium valproate reduce the apparent clearance of lamotrigine (lamictal). In most patients, the lamotrigine dosage for coadministration with valproate must be reduced to half the monotherapy dosage.

Valproic acid is contraindicated in pregnancy, as it decreases the intestinal reabsorption of folate (folic acid), which leads to neural tube defects. Because of a decrease in folate, megaloblastic anemia may also result. Phenytoin also decreases folate absorption, which may lead to the same adverse effects as valproic acid.

Valproic acid, 2-propylvaleric acid, is synthesized by the alkylation of cyanoacetic ester with two moles of propylbromide, to give dipropylcyanoacetic ester. Hydrolysis and decarboxylation of the carboethoxy group gives dipropylacetonitrile, which is hydrolyzed into valproic acid. See U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,325,361 and 4,155,929 and GB Pat. Nos. 980279 and 1522450. See also, T. R. Henry, "The History of Valproate in Clinical Neuroscience." *Psychopharmacology bulletin* (2003) 37 (Suppl 2):5-16.

Diclofenac

Diclofenac is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) taken to reduce inflammation and as an analgesic reducing pain in certain conditions. Diclofenac is used to treat pain, inflammatory disorders, and dysmenorrhea and is a commonly used NSAID. See Auler et al., *Brazilian Jour. Med. Bio. Res.*, (1977) 30:369-374 and Hasan, et al., and *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, vol. 18, No. 1, January 2005, pp 18-24 both are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

The name is derived from its chemical name: 2-(2,6-dichloranilino) phenylacetic acid, it may be supplied as either the sodium or potassium salt. Diclofenac is available as a generic drug in a number of formulations; including Dichlofenac diethylammonium applied topically to joints. Over-the-counter (OTC) use is approved in some countries for minor aches and pains and fever associated with common infections.

Diclofenac is typically absorbed readily, but absorption is delayed upon administration with food. Its half-life varies from 1 to 3 hours with mean peak plasma levels of about 0.5 ug/ml to 1.0 ug/ml after 2 hours of a single dose of 25 mg. Diclofenac binds to human serum proteins, specifically albumin. See Hasan et al 2005.

Ibuprofen

Ibuprofen (from iso-butyl-propanoic-phenolic acid) is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) widely prescribed for pain relief, fever reduction, and swelling. Ibuprofen was derived from propanoic acid. Originally marketed as Brufen, ibuprofen is available under a variety of popular trademarks, including Motrin, Nurofen, Advil, and Nuprin. Ibuprofen is used primarily for fever, pain, dysmenorrhea and inflammatory diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis. It is also used for pericarditis and patent ductus arteriosus. It is a commonly used drug commercially available over the counter.

Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as ibuprofen work by inhibiting the enzyme cyclooxygenase (COX), which converts arachidonic acid to prostaglandin H₂ (PGH₂). PGH₂, in turn, is converted by other enzymes to several other prostaglandins (which are mediators of pain, inflammation, and fever) and to thromboxane A₂ (which stimulates platelet aggregation, leading to the formation of blood clots).

Like aspirin and indomethacin, ibuprofen is a nonselective COX inhibitor, in that it inhibits two isoforms of cyclooxygenase, COX-1 and COX-2. The analgesic, antipyretic, and

US 8,772,306 B1

17

anti-inflammatory activity of NSAIDs appears to operate mainly through inhibition of COX-2, whereas inhibition of COX-1 would be responsible for unwanted effects on the gastrointestinal tract. However, the role of the individual COX isoforms in the analgesic, anti-inflammatory, and gastric damage effects of NSAIDs is uncertain and different compounds cause different degrees of analgesia and gastric damage.

The synthesis of this compound consisted of six steps, started with the Friedel-Crafts acetylation of isobutylbenzene. Reaction with ethyl chloroacetate (Darzens reaction) gave the α,β -epoxy ester, which was hydrolyzed and decarboxylated to the aldehyde. Reaction with hydroxylamine gave the oxime, which was converted to the nitrile, then hydrolyzed to the desired acid. See U.S. Pat. No. 3,385,886.

An improved synthesis by BHC required only three steps. After a similar acetylation, hydrogenation with Raney nickel gave the alcohol, which underwent palladium-catalyzed carbonylation.

Valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen are monocarboxylate transporter inhibitors. One embodiment of the present application is a method to improve safety by monitoring the combination of these compounds with GHB.

Monocarboxylate Transporters

Monocarboxylate transporters, or MCTs, constitute a family of proton-linked plasma membrane transporters that carry molecules having one carboxylate group (monocarboxylates), such as lactate and pyruvate, across biological membranes. See Halestrap A P, Meredith D (2004). "The SLC16 gene family—from monocarboxylate transporters (MCTs) to aromatic amino acid transporters and beyond". *Pflugers Arch.* 447 (5): 619-28.

MCTs are a series of transporters which move chemicals in body tissues, such as kidneys, blood/brain barrier, intestines, etc. They can transport chemical compounds back from urine to create a higher concentration in the blood than the urine. They can be used to treat an overdose or to prevent excretion of a compound. They can also be used to prevent absorption or transport into the brain or gut, or excretion via the urine. Exemplary MCT inhibitors include valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

Concomitant Administration of GHB and Drug-Drug Interactions

In one embodiment of the present invention the concomitant administration of MCT inhibitors, such as either valproate, diclofenac, or ibuprofen with GHB can effect GHB levels or activity and alter the GHB safety and efficacy profile to create an unsafe condition. For example, valproate can increase or prolong GHB effects and diclofenac can reduce or shorten GHB effects. For example, if the effects are increased, then there could be an increase of adverse events associated with too much GHB. Also, the effect of GHB may be prolonged to cause side effects, such as excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS), to last into the daytime. Prolongation of the effect would counter the purpose for providing the GHB and could create an unsafe situation for patients who wish to be alert and who may be engaged in otherwise dangerous activity. This concomitant administration can transform an otherwise safe dose of GHB into one with safety concerns. It is a health risk to patients and a medical challenge to health care workers.

The drug-drug interaction could also reduce the effects of GHB by altering its blood levels or otherwise. Reduction in the GHB level may also provide an unsafe condition due to excessive daytime sleepiness. In each situation, where GHB is increased, decreased or excessively cleared, those drug-

18

drug interactions need to be identified to a health care worker to adjust the dose of GHB or discontinue the use of the other compound.

As recited on the product insert for Xyrem®, healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB.

In some embodiments in which diclofenac or valproate is discontinued to avoid an adverse drug interaction, they are discontinued within at least 3 days prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In various embodiments, diclofenac or valproate is discontinued within at least 4 days, or at least 5 days, or at least 6 days, or at least 7 days (or one week), or at least 8 days, or at least 9 days, or at least 10 days, or at least 11 days, or at least 12 days, or at least 13 days, or at least 14 days (or two weeks), or at least 15 days, or at least 16 days, or at least 17 days, or at least 18 days, or at least 19 days, or at least 20 days, or at least 21 days (or three weeks) prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In some embodiments, the diclofenac or valproate is discontinued no later than 2 weeks or 1 week before starting GHB therapy.

In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy when valproate is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient downward relative to a previously administered dosage in the patient, so the dose does not result in an increased exposure to GHB. In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy when diclofenac is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient upward relative to a previously administered dosage in the patient, so the dose results in an effective exposure to GHB.

Thus, the present invention includes a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB), wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate such additive effects.

In one embodiment of the present invention, a reduced amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with valproate. In another embodiment of the present invention, an increased amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with diclofenac.

When valproate is concomitantly administered with GHB, the amount of GHB can be reduced at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 9 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to reduce the normal dose by 15% is 7.65 g/day. The GHB dose reduction may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. A typical adult range of doses for GHB are between 4.5 or 6 g as a minimum and 8 or 10 g/day as a maximum divided into two doses. The dose recommended on the package insert and approved by the FDA is between 4.5 and 9.0 g/day. Typical exemplary paediatric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 6 g/day for pediatric patients aged 0-6 years. Typical exemplary paediat-

US 8,772,306 B1

19

ric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 9 g/day for pediatric patients aged 7-17 years. However, these ranges are not absolute and can be increased or decreased by 1-2 grams in either direction. One dose is typically administered prior to bed (night time sleep) and another dose administered 1-2 hours later. See the Xyrem® package insert (Xyrem® is a registered trademark of Jazz Pharmaceuticals plc or its subsidiaries.). Either or both of the multiple doses may be reduced to present a safer administration profile. For example, the first dose may be reduced by the numbers referred to above or the second may be reduced by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day may be reduced at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary decrease in an adult dose would be to reduce the maximum dose to less than 8.5, 8, 7.5, 7, 6.5, 6, 5.5, 5, 4.5, 4, 3.5, 3 g/day and so on. The minimum dose will be reduced accordingly to 4, 3.5, 3, 2.5, 2, and so on.

In one embodiment of the present invention, diclofenac may dampen or delay the effect of GHB upon a patient during concomitant administration. In one embodiment, it may be useful to increase the amount of GHB that is administered to the patient. For example, GHB may be increased at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 10 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to increase the normal dose by 15% is 11.5 g/day. The GHB dose increase may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. Either, or both, of the multiple doses may be increased to present a safer administration profile. For example, the first dose may be increased by the numbers referred to above or the second may be increased by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day may be increased at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary increase in an adult dose would be to increase the minimum dose to 5, 5.5, 6, 6.5, 7, 7.5, 8, 8.5 g/day and so on. An increase in the maximum dose would be at least 9.5, 10, 10.5, 11, 11.5, 12, 12.5, 13, 13.5, 14 g/day and so on.

In another aspect, a package or kit is provided comprising GHB, optionally in a container, and a package insert, package label, instructions or other labelling including any one, two, three or more of the following information or recommendations: (a) use of diclofenac or valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors, such as diclofenac or valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in exposure to GHB, (d) concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in a decrease in exposure to GHB, and/or (e) MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

Alternatively, diclofenac can be administered to counteract the effects of GHB toxicity using a reverse of the numerical relationships above. Similarly, valproate can be used to increase the effects of GHB in patients that cannot take higher amounts of GHB. In this regard, the present invention includes methods for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that potential toxic effects of GHB are reduced. The present invention also includes methods for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

20

The examples below, which show drug interaction studies in healthy adults, demonstrated those instances, test conditions or metrics which showed a distinction between GHB and either of the test compounds, diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen. Additionally, drug interaction studies in healthy adults demonstrated pharmacokinetic or clinically significant pharmacodynamic interactions between GHB and diclofenac or valproate.

10

Example 1

This study was designed to compare Pharmacokinetic (PK) and Pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® sodium oxybate (GHB) with and without concomitant administration of diclofenac. A crossover design was employed to allow within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with diclofenac. The PK and PD effects of Xyrem® upon those of diclofenac were also studied.

15 The PD parameters included a selection of automated tests of attention, information processing, working memory and skilled coordination from the CDR System. (Rapeport et al, 1996ab; Williams et al, 1996). (Wesnes et al, 1997). (Wesnes et al, 2000) (Modi et al, 2007).

20 Methods

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, three-period, crossover study in healthy subjects. 24 subjects were recruited to ensure that 18 completed the study. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eligible subjects were entered into the study and received one of the 25 following treatments per period, in randomized order:

30 Diclofenac placebo administered as one capsule qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, one diclofenac placebo capsule administered at -1 h and 3 h, and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

35 Diclofenac administered as 50 mg immediate-release (IR) tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

40 45 Diclofenac administered as 50 mg IR tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and Xyrem® placebo (volume equivalent to 3 g of Xyrem® oral solution) administered at 0 h and 4 h.

50 55 Subjects were randomized to one of the above treatments on Day 1, crossed over to another treatment on Day 6, and crossed over again to the remaining treatment on Day 11 (Table 1). Subjects were dosed in groups of up to 12. A 2-day washout period followed each of the treatment periods. The treatments were as follows: A=Diclofenac placebo (qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® two 3 g doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. C=Diclofenac (50 mg qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® placebo two doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time

US 8,772,306 B1

21

(SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

Results

Power of attention-On this measure of focussed attention and information processing Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 0.5 h; while the smaller impairments with the combination narrowly missed significance at 1 and 4.5 h. Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac also resulted in impairments at two timepoints compared to diclofenac alone which at 6.5 h was significant and a trend at 8 h. See FIG. 1 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy-On this measure of focussed attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 2 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time—On this measure of focussed attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 3 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

Choice Reaction Time Mean-Impairments to this measure of attention and information processing were significantly smaller than with Xyrem® alone when co-dosed with diclofenac during the hour following the first dose of Xyrem®. See FIG. 4 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

While diclofenac alone had no effect on sleepiness or cognitive function, when co-dosed with Xyrem® it significantly reduced the effects of the compound on Power of Attention and two of the contributing scores, simple and choice reaction time; these effects being seen during the hour after the first dose of Xyrem®. On the other hand, there was no evidence on any measure of greater cognitive impairment or sleepiness when the two compounds were co-dosed.

The extent of the reductions in the impairments to the ability to focus attention and efficiently process information were quite notable, and likely to be of clinical relevance. It is interesting that protective effect of diclofenac was not seen on the subjects ratings of alertness, such a dissociation having been seen previously with haloperidol in healthy elderly volunteers (Beuzan et al, 1991).

In conclusion, evidence of an interaction was seen in this study over the hour following the first dose of Xyrem® on the study days, the impairments being notably smaller when diclofenac was co-dosed with Xyrem®. There was no interaction however on the feelings of sleepiness in the subjects.

Example 2

This study is designed to compare the pharmacokinetic (PK) and pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. The crossover design allows within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time (SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

22

The objectives of this study were to evaluate the PK and PD of Xyrem® co-administered with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets and to evaluate and compare the safety and tolerability of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets.

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, five-period, crossover study in healthy male subjects. The study was conducted in approximately 24 healthy subjects to ensure completion of 16 subjects. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eligible subjects were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 1 and 2; were dosed with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets for 10 consecutive days in Period 3; and while continuing to take divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 4 and 5 (Table 1).

Periods 1 and 2:

Subjects were randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo 4 hours apart in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 AM (first dose) and 1 PM (second dose) on Days 1 and 3. PK and PD parameters were evaluated during the 24 hours postdose.

Blood samples (4 mL) for sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at predose and at specified time-points up to 12 hours after the first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo on Days 1 and 3. A PD Battery including the Karolinska Sleepiness Scale, Simple Reaction Time task, Digit Vigilance task, Choice Reaction Time task, Tracking task, and Numeric Working Memory task was administered at planned timepoints up to X hours after first dose (X hours after second dose), and safety were monitored at specified timepoints on Days 1 and 3 as well as throughout the periods.

Period 3:

All subjects received divalproex sodium extended-release tablets 1250 mg at approximately 8 AM on Days 5 through 14. Blood samples (4 mL) for valproic acid concentrations were collected before the divalproex sodium dose (to determine trough concentration for assessment of steady state) on Days 13 and 14. Safety was monitored at specified timepoints as well as throughout the period.

Periods 4 and 5:

Subjects continued taking 1250 mg divalproex sodium extended-release tablets at approximately 8 AM on Days 15 through 18. Subjects were also randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 am (first dose) and 1 pm (second dose) on Days 15 and 18. The first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken approximately 1 hour after dosing with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, and the second dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken 4 hours after the first Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose.

Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at pre Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose and at specified timepoints after the first Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo dose on Days 15 and 18. Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma valproic acid concentrations were collected pre divalproex sodium dose and at specified timepoints after the dose of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets on Day 15 and 18.

The PD battery was administered on Day 15 and 18, and safety was monitored at specified times on Days 15 and 18 as well as throughout the periods.

The treatments were as follows: A=Xyrem®, two 3 g doses, 4 hours apart at approximately 9 AM (1st dose) and 1

US 8,772,306 B1

23

PM (2nd dose); B=Xyrem® placebo, two doses, 4 hours apart; and C=Divalproex sodium 1250 mg, once a day at approximately 8 AM.

Results

The results below show the tests in which GHB administration was affected by concomitant administration of any of three MCT inhibitors, such as valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

Continuity of Attention

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 hours and 8 hours. See FIG. 5 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population).

Simple Reaction Time Mean

At 1 hour and 4 hours, Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together produced statistically reliably greater impairments than Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 6, which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy

At 2.5 and 4 hours Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together were statistically reliably different greater impairment to Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 7, which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

Tracking Distance from Target

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a statistically significant difference by a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 and 8 hours. See FIG. 8 which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a difference at 4.5 through 8 hours. See FIG. 9, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed statistically significant differences at 2.5, 5 and 8 hours when the combination produced greater impairment. See FIG. 10, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

In addition, it was observed that renal excretion of GHB increase 30% upon co-administration of Valproate.

We also found pk changes which were consistent with the inhibition of GHB dehydrogenase. This effect will increase the exposure of GHB to the subject and increase Cmax and AUC about 15%.

The combination of Xyrem® dosed with divalproex sodium was compared to divalproex sodium alone, more consistent statistically significant impairments over time were seen with the combination, than when Xyrem® was compared to its placebo, indicating that the effects of co-administration, when they appeared, were in the direction of increased impairments.

As has been seen previously, Xyrem® induces sleepiness and produces impairments to attention, working memory and performance on a tracking task in healthy volunteers. Divalproex sodium alone showed no consistent or notable effects on cognitive function or sleepiness. There were occasions when co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex sodium produced greater deficits than Xyrem® alone. Further the

24

combination also produced more consistent impairments when compared with divalproex sodium alone, than did Xyrem® when compared to its placebo. Thus this study has found evidence that co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex produces greater impairments to cognitive function and sleepiness than were seen with Xyrem® alone.

Example 3

10 The effects of Ibuprofen were evaluated when combined with Xyrem® in a manner similar to the above. No differences were seen using the metrics above for Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), and the following CDR System tasks: Simple Reaction Time, Digit Vigilance, Choice Reaction Time, Tracking and Numeric Working Memory. However, it was observed that renal excretion of Xyrem® doubled upon concomitant administration of Ibuprofen and Xyrem®.

15 All publications and patent applications cited in this specification are herein incorporated by reference as if each individual publication or patent application were specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference. Although the foregoing has been described in some detail by way of illustration and example for purposes of clarity of understanding, it will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art in light of the teachings of the specification that certain changes and modifications may be made thereto without departing from the spirit or scope of the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method for treating a patient who is suffering from 30 excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, or nocturnal myoclonus with gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof, said method comprising:

orally administering to the patient in need of treatment at least 5% decrease in an effective dosage amount of the GHB or salt thereof when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of valproate, an acid, salt, or mixture thereof.

40 2. The method in accordance with claim 1, wherein there is at least about a 15% reduction in the effective dosage amount of the GHB or salt thereof given to the patient and wherein the valproate, acid, salt or mixture thereof is divalproex sodium.

45 3. The method in accordance with claim 2, wherein the dose of the GHB or salt thereof given to the patient without concomitant administration of valproate, an acid, salt or mixture thereof is from 4.5 to 9 grams per day.

4. The method in accordance with claim 1, wherein the effective dosage amount is a reduction of about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 45%, or about 45% to 50%, relative to the dose of the GHB or salt thereof normally given to the patient.

5. The method in accordance with claim 1, wherein the patient is suffering from narcolepsy.

55 6. The method in accordance with claim 1, further comprising administering aspirin to the patient.

7. The method in accordance with claim 1, wherein the effective dosage amount of the GHB or a salt thereof is reduced from a range of 4.5 to 9 grams per day.

60 8. The method in accordance with claim 1, wherein the dose of the GHB or salt thereof without concomitant administration of valproate, an acid, salt or mixture thereof is from 4.5 to 9 grams per day.

65 9. The method in accordance with claim 1, wherein the effective dosage amount of the GHB or salt thereof is between 3 grams and 7 grams per day.

US 8,772,306 B1

25

10. The method in accordance with claim 1, wherein the effective dosage amount of the GHB or salt thereof is between 3.5 grams and 4 grams per day.

11. A method of safely administering GHB or a salt thereof for excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, or nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient who is being administered GHB, said method comprising:

determining if the patient has taken, or will take, a concomitant dose of valproate, an acid, salt or mixture thereof; and

orally administering a reduced amount of the GHB or salt thereof to the patient wherein the reduction is at least 5% compared to a dose without concomitant administration of valproate, an acid, salt or mixture thereof.

12. The method in accordance with claim 11, wherein the amount of GHB or salt thereof is reduced at least 10% to 30%.

13. The method in accordance with claim 11, wherein the amount of GHB or salt thereof is reduced at least 15% patient and wherein the valproate, acid, salt, or mixture thereof is divalproex sodium.

14. The method in accordance with claim 11, wherein the valproate, acid, salt or mixture thereof is administered within two weeks of administration of the GHB or salt thereof.

15. The method in accordance with claim 11, wherein the valproate, acid, salt or mixture thereof is administered within three days of administration of the GHB or salt thereof.

16. The method in accordance with claim 11, wherein the patient is suffering from narcolepsy.

17. The method in accordance with claim 11, further comprising administering aspirin to the patient.

18. The method in accordance with claim 11, further comprising recommending to decrease the dose of GHB or salt thereof by 20% patient and wherein the valproate, acid, salt, or mixture thereof is divalproex sodium.

19. A method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, said method comprising:

administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing a GHB salt to a patient starting at a concentration of between 350 and 750 mg/ml with a pH of between 6 and 10;

determining if the patient is also being administered valproate, an acid, salt or mixture thereof;

warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of valproate, an acid, salt or mixture thereof and the GHB salt; and

recommending reducing the dose of the GHB salt at least 15%.

20. The method in accordance with claim 19, wherein the valproate, acid, salt or mixture thereof is administered within two weeks of administration of the GHB salt.

21. The method in accordance with claim 19, wherein the valproate, acid, salt or mixture thereof is administered within three days of administration of the GHB salt.

26

22. The method in accordance with claim 19, wherein the GHB salt is administered starting at a concentration of between 450 to 550 mg/ml.

23. The method in accordance with claim 22, further comprising adding water to the GHB salt formulation.

24. The method in accordance with claim 19, wherein the GHB salt formulation has a pH between 6.5 and 8.

25. The method in accordance with claim 19, further comprising administering the reduced dose of the GHB salt to the patient.

10. **26.** The method in accordance with claim 19, wherein the GHB salt comprises a single salt or a mixture of salts of GHB selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂).

27. The method in accordance with claim 19, further comprising administering aspirin to the patient.

28. The method in accordance with claim 19, comprising recommending reducing a dose of GHB or salt thereof at least 20% patient and wherein the valproate, acid, salt, or mixture thereof is divalproex sodium.

29. The method in accordance with claim 19, further comprising adding water to the GHB salt formulation.

30. A method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, said method comprising:

administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing a GHB salt to a patient;
determining if the patient is also being administered valproate, an acid, salt or mixture thereof;
recommending a 20% decrease in the starting dose of the GHB salt such that a patient starts taking the GHB salt at an adjusted dosage amount between 3.5 grams and 4 grams the GHB salt per night administered orally.

31. The method in accordance with claim 30, wherein the starting adjusted dosage amount of the GHB salt is about 3.6 grams.

32. The method in accordance with claim 30, further comprising optionally diluting the GHB salt formulation from a starting concentration of between 350 and 750 mg/ml with a pH of between 6 and 10.

33. A method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, said method comprising:

orally administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing a GHB salt;
determining if the patient is also being administered valproate, an acid, salt or mixture thereof;
recommending a 20% decrease in the starting dose of the GHB salt such that the amount that the patient is administered is reduced to about 3.6 grams GHB per day.

34. The method in accordance with claim 33, further comprising optionally diluting the GHB salt formulation from a starting concentration of between 350 and 750 mg/ml with a pH of between 6 and 10.

* * * * *

UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
CERTIFICATE OF CORRECTION

PATENT NO. : 8,772,306 B1
APPLICATION NO. : 13/872997
DATED : July 8, 2014
INVENTOR(S) : Eller

Page 1 of 1

It is certified that error appears in the above-identified patent and that said Letters Patent is hereby corrected as shown below:

In the Claims

In column 25, line 20 claim 13, remove “patient.”

In column 25, line 35 claim 18, remove “patient.”

In column 26, line 22 claim 28, remove “patient.”

Signed and Sealed this
Fourteenth Day of July, 2015



Michelle K. Lee
Director of the United States Patent and Trademark Office

EXHIBIT B



US009050302B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Eller

(10) **Patent No.:** US 9,050,302 B2
(45) **Date of Patent:** *Jun. 9, 2015

- (54) **METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS**
- (71) Applicant: **Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited**, Dublin (IE)
- (72) Inventor: **Mark Eller**, Redwood City, CA (US)
- (73) Assignee: **Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited**, Dublin (IE)
- (*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.
- This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.
- (21) Appl. No.: **13/837,714**
- (22) Filed: **Mar. 15, 2013**
- (65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2014/0249115 A1 Sep. 4, 2014

Related U.S. Application Data

- (60) Provisional application No. 61/771,557, filed on Mar. 1, 2013, provisional application No. 61/777,873, filed on Mar. 12, 2013.
- (51) **Int. Cl.**
- | | |
|--------------------|-----------|
| <i>A01N 37/36</i> | (2006.01) |
| <i>A61K 31/19</i> | (2006.01) |
| <i>A61K 31/616</i> | (2006.01) |
| <i>A61K 31/20</i> | (2006.01) |
| <i>A61K 31/33</i> | (2006.01) |
| <i>A61K 31/505</i> | (2006.01) |
| <i>A61K 31/55</i> | (2006.01) |
- (52) **U.S. Cl.**
- | | |
|-----------|--|
| CPC | <i>A61K 31/19</i> (2013.01); <i>A61K 31/616</i> (2013.01); <i>A61K 31/20</i> (2013.01); <i>A61K 31/33</i> (2013.01); <i>A61K 31/505</i> (2013.01); <i>A61K 31/55</i> (2013.01) |
|-----------|--|
- (58) **Field of Classification Search**
- USPC 514/163, 557
- See application file for complete search history.

- (56)
- References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,051,619 A	8/1962	Laborit
3,325,361 A	6/1967	Meunier
3,385,886 A	5/1968	Nicholson et al.
4,155,929 A	5/1979	Chignac et al.
4,393,236 A	7/1983	Klosa
4,983,632 A	1/1991	Gessa et al.
5,380,937 A	1/1995	Koehler et al.
5,758,095 A	5/1998	Albaum et al.
5,833,599 A	11/1998	Schrier et al.
5,845,255 A	12/1998	Mayaud
5,990,162 A	11/1999	Scharf
6,014,631 A	1/2000	Teagarden et al.
6,067,524 A	5/2000	Byerly et al.
6,112,182 A	8/2000	Akers et al.
6,204,245 B1 *	3/2001	Siegel et al. 514/17.7
6,317,719 B1	11/2001	Schrier et al.
6,356,873 B1	3/2002	Teagarden et al.
6,472,431 B2 *	10/2002	Cook et al. 514/557
6,780,889 B2	8/2004	Cook et al.

7,015,200 B2	3/2006	Mamelak et al.
7,072,840 B1	7/2006	Mayaud
7,262,219 B2	8/2007	Cook et al.
7,572,605 B2	8/2009	Mamelak et al.
7,668,730 B2	2/2010	Reardan et al.
7,765,106 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.
7,765,107 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.
7,797,171 B2	9/2010	Reardan et al.
7,851,506 B2	12/2010	Cook et al.
7,895,059 B2	2/2011	Reardan et al.
8,263,650 B2	9/2012	Cook et al.
8,324,275 B2	12/2012	Cook et al.
8,772,306 B1	7/2014	Eller
8,952,029 B2	2/2015	Eller
2003/0171270 A1 *	9/2003	Civelli et al. 514/12
2006/0018933 A1	1/2006	Vaya et al.
2008/0293698 A1 *	11/2008	Johnson 514/220
2009/0137565 A1	5/2009	Frucht
2010/0112056 A1	5/2010	Rourke et al.
2010/0160299 A1	6/2010	Baker, Jr. et al.
2011/0237664 A1 *	9/2011	Dalton et al. 514/522
2012/0076865 A1	3/2012	Allphin et al.
2014/0249222 A1	9/2014	Eller

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

DE	237 309	5/1985
GB	922 029	3/1963
GB	980 279	1/1965
GB	1 522 450	8/1978
WO	WO 2006/053186	5/2006
WO	WO 2010/03691	5/2010
WO	WO 2011/119839	9/2011
WO	WO 2011/139271	11/2011
WO	WO 2012/037457	3/2012

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Arena et al., "Absorption of Sodium γ -Hydroxybutyrate and Its Prodrug γ -Butyrolactone: Relationship between In Vitro Transport and In Vivo Absorption," *J. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 69(3): 356-358, 1980.
- Auler et al., "Diclofenac Plasma Protein Binding: PK-PD Modelling in Cardiac Patients Submitted to Cardiopulmonary Bypass," *Braz. J. Med. Bio. Res.*, 30: 369-374, 1997.
- Banerjee et al., "Presynaptic Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB) and Gamma-Aminobutyric Acid_B (GABA_B) Receptor-Mediated Release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in Rat Thalamic Ventrobasal Nucleus (VB): A Possible Mechanism for the Generation of Absence-Like Seizures Induced by GHB," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 273 (3): 1534-1543, 1995.

(Continued)

Primary Examiner — Shirley V Gembeh*(74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm* — Jones Day**ABSTRACT**

One embodiment of the present invention is to improve the safety and efficacy of the administration of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient. It has been discovered that the concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor, such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, will affect GHB administration. For example, it has been discovered that diclofenac lowers the effect of GHB in the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition. Furthermore, it has been discovered that valproate increases the effect of GHB on the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition.

US 9,050,302 B2

Page 2

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- U.S. Appl. No. 13/737,886, filed Jan. 11, 2013, Allphin et al.
- U.S. Appl. No. 61,317,212, filed Mar. 24, 2010, Allphin et al.
- Bédard et al., "Nocturnal γ -Hydroxybutyrate. Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients," *Clin. Neuropharmacol.*, 12(1): 29-36, 1989.
- Broughton et al., "The Treatment of Narcolepsy-Cataplexy with Nocturnal Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate," *Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques*, 6(1): 1-6, 1979.
- Cash et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Function Studied by the Modulation of Nitric Oxide Synthase Activity in Rat Frontal Cortex Punches," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 58 (11): 1815-1819, 1999.
- Dimitrijevic et al., "Drosophila GABA_A Receptors are Involved in Behavioral Effects of γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB)," *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 519 (3): 246-252, 2005.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Alcohol Withdrawal Syndrome," *The Lancet*, Sep. 30: 787-789, 1989.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence: A Double-Blind Study," *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, 16(4): 673-676, 1992.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal Syndrome," *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 9(1): 77-81, 1993.
- Gallimberti et al., "Clinical Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal," *Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci*, 244: 113-114, 1994.
- Gerra et al., "Flumazenil Effects on Growth Hormone Response to Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid," *Internat. Clin. Psychopharm.*, 9: 211-215, 1994.
- Gessa et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence," *Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement*, 15 (Suppl. 1, Pt. A): 303A-304A, 1992.
- Gonzalez et al., "Drug Metabolism," in *Goodman & Gilman's the Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* (11th ed.), Brunton et al. (eds.), New York: McGraw-Hill, pp. 71-91, 2006.
- Halestrap et al., "The SLC16 Gene Family—From Monocarboxylate Transporters (MCTs) to Aromatic Amino Acid Transporters and Beyond," *Pflugers Arch.*, 447 (5): 619-628, 2004.
- Hasan et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Diclofenac Sodium in Normal Man," *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 18(1): 18-24, 2005.
- Hasenbos et al., "Anaesthesia for bullectomy," *Anaesthesia*, 40: 977-980, 1985.
- Hechler et al., "Extracellular Events Induced by γ -Hydroxybutyrate in Striatum: A Microdialysis Study," *J. Neurochem.*, 56 (3): 938-944, 1991.
- Henry, Thomas R., "The History of Divalproex in Clinical Neuroscience," *Psychopharmacology Bulletin*, 37 (Suppl 2): 5-16, 2003.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," Xyrem® SmPC European Package Insert available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR__Product_Information/human/000593/WC500057103.pdf (downloaded May 3, 2013).
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (sodium oxybate) oral solution Prescribing Information," Xyrem® US Package Insert available at <http://www.xyrem.com/xyrem-pi.pdf> (downloaded May 3, 2013).
- Kuriyama et al., "Blood—Brain Barrier to H³- γ -Aminobutyric Acid in Normal and Amino Oxyacetic Acid-Treated Animals," *Neuropharmacology*, 10: 103-108, 1971.
- Laborit, H., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semialdehyde and Sleep," Laboratoire d'Eutonologie, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France, pp. 257-274, 1973.
- Ladinsky et al., Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System, *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacol.*, 322: 42-48, 1983.
- Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and Narcolepsy: A Double-Blind Placebo-Controlled Study," *Sleep*, 16(3): 216-220, 1993.
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate: A Double-Blind Study of Normal Subjects," *Sleep Research*, 17: 99, 1988 (abstract).
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep-Triggering Mechanisms," *Sleep*, 13(1): 24-30, 1990.
- Lee, C.R., "Evidence for the β -Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans," *Biochem. Med.*, 17, 284-291: 1977.
- Lettieri et al., "Improved Pharmacological Activity via Pro-Drug Modification: Comparative Pharmacokinetics of Sodium γ -Hydroxybutyrate and γ -Butyrolactone," *Research Communications in Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology*, 22(1): 107-118, 1978.
- Maitre et al., "A Specific γ -Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Ligand Possesses both Antagonistic and Anticonvulsant Properties," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 255 (2): 657-663, 1990.
- Maitre et al., "Mécanismes d'action d'un medicament détourné: le γ -hydroxybutyrate" ("A mechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse") (in French), *Med Sci (Paris)*, 21 (3): 284-9, 2005.
- Mamelak et al., "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," *The Lancet*, 302 (7824): 328-329, 1973.
- Mamelak et al., "The Effects of γ -Hydroxybutyrate on Sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 12(2): 273-288, 1977.
- Mamelak et al., "Narcolepsy: A Family Study," *Biological Psychiatry*, 14: 821-834, 1979.
- Mamelak et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy and Sleep Apnea with Gammahydroxybutyrate: A Clinical and Polysomnographic Case Study," *Sleep*, 4(1): 105-111, 1981.
- Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," *Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews*, 13: 187-198, 1989.
- Modi et al., "Dapoxetine has no Pharmacokinetic or Cognitive Interactions with Ethanol in Healthy Male Volunteers," *J. Clin. Pharmac.*, 47(3): 315-322, 2007.
- Nema et al., "Excipients and Their Use in Injectable Products," *PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol.*, 51(4): 166-171, 1997.
- Palatini et al., "Dose-Dependent Absorption and Elimination of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Healthy Volunteers," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 45: 353-356, 1993.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on Digoxin Pharmacokinetics and Electrocardiographic Findings," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 16-19, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Carbamazepine," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 20-23, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Phenytoin," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 24-28, 1996.
- Rosenberg, G., "The Mechanisms of Action of Valproate in Neuropsychiatric Disorders: Can We See the Forest for the Trees?" *Cel. Mol. Life Sci.*, 64 (16): 2090-2103, 2007.
- Roth et al., " γ -Butyrolactone and γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid—I Distribution and Metabolism," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 15: 1333-1348, 1966.
- Roth et al., " γ -Butyrolactone and γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid—II The Pharmacologically Active Form," *Int. J. Neropharmacol.*, 5: 421-428, 1966.
- Scharf et al., "The Effects and Effectiveness of γ -Hydroxybutyrate in Patients with Narcolepsy," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 46(6): 222-225, 1985.
- Scrima et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate Effects on Cataplexy and Sleep Attacks in Narcoleptics," *Sleep Res.*, 16: 134, 1987, Abstract.
- Scrima et al., "Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate versus Placebo in Treating Narcolepsy—Cataplexy: Double-Blind Subjective Measured," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 26: 331-343, 1989.
- Scrima et al., "The Effects of γ -Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," *Sleep*, 13(6): 479-490, 1990.
- Sériès et al., "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 1378-1383, 1992.

US 9,050,302 B2

Page 3

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

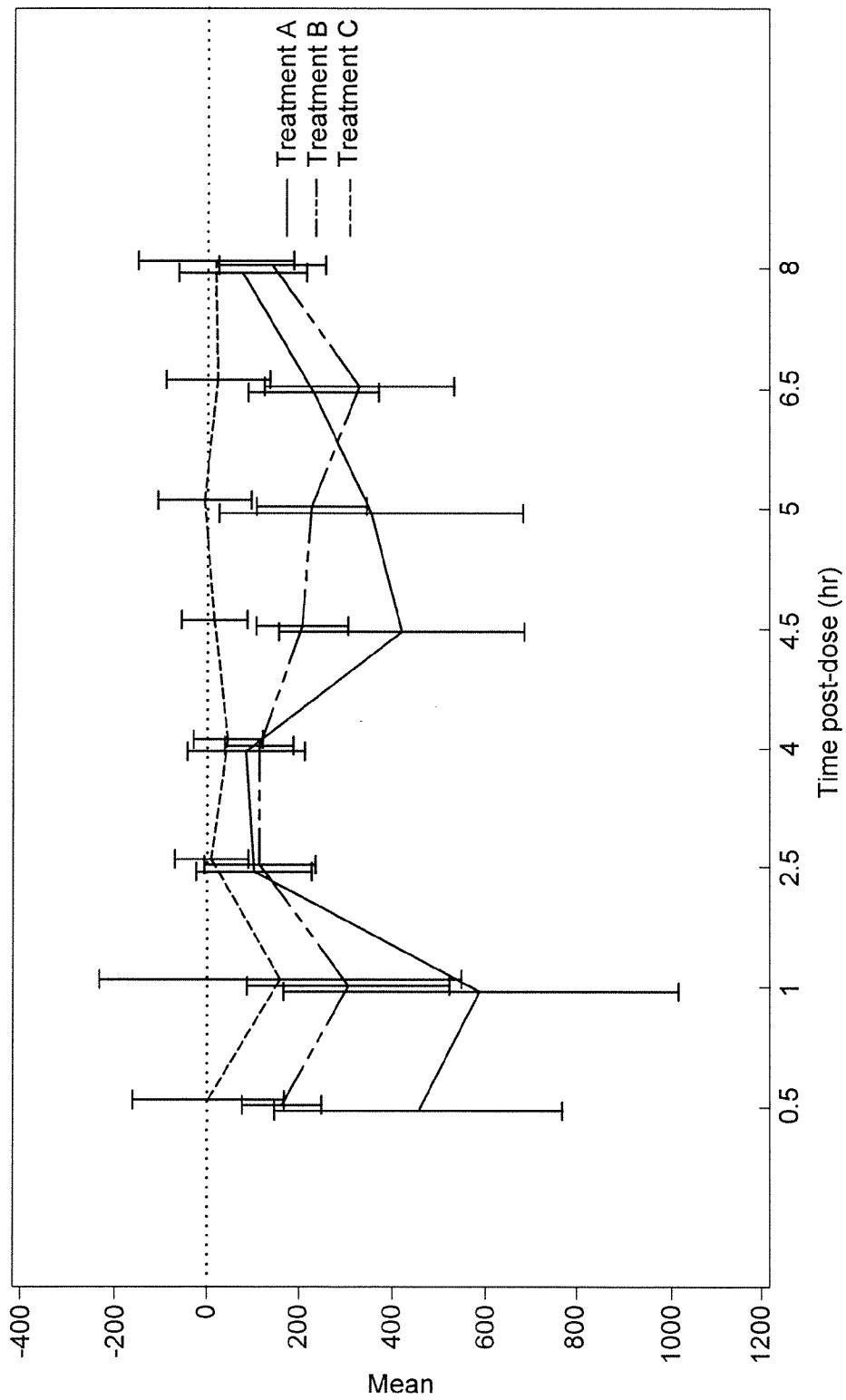
- Smolders et al., "Tonic GABAergic Modulation of Striatal Dopamine Release Studied by In Vivo Microdialysis in the Freely Moving Rat," *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 284 (1-2): 83-91, 1995.
- Strong, "γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid and Intracranial Pressure," *The Lancet*, vol. 1: No. 8389, 1984.
- Van Den Bogert et al., "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man," *Anesthesiology and Intensive Care Medicine*, 110: 55-64, 1978.
- Vickers, M.D., "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," *Int. Anesth. Clin.*, 7: 75-89, 1969.
- Waszkielewicz et al., "γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB) and its Chemical Modifications: A Review of the GHergic System," *Pol J Pharmacol.*, 56 (1): 43-49, 2004.
- Wesnes et al., "Moxonidine and Cognitive Function: Interactions with Moclobemide and Lorazepam," *Eur. J. Clinic. Pharmacol.*, 52: 351-358, 1997.
- Wesnes et al., "The Memory Enhancing Effects of a Ginkgo biloba/Panax ginseng Combination in Healthy Middle-Aged Volunteers," *Psychopharmacology*, 152: 353-361, 2000.
- Williams et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on Time-Based Sensitization of Cognitive Impairment with Haloperidol," *J. Clinic. Psych.*, 57, 7-11, 1996.
- Wu et al., "γ-Hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and γ-aminobutyric acid_B receptor (GABA_BR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence," *Neuropharmacology*, 47 (8): 1146-56, 2004.
- Yamada et al., "Effect of Butyrolactone and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," *Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol.*, 22: 558-562, 1967.
- Abbvie Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Depakote® (Divalproex Sodium) Tablets for Oral Use: FDA Approved Labeling Text" (Oct. 7, 2011).
- Bhattacharya et al., "GHB (γ-Hydroxybutyrate) Carrier-Mediated Transport across the Blood-Brain Barrier," *The Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, 311(1): 92-98, 2004.
- Cagnin et al., "γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid-Induced Psychosis and Seizures," *Epilepsy & Behavior*, 21: 203-205, 2011.
- Food and Drug Administration. Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Clinical Pharmacology Division; "Guidance for Industry: Drug Interaction Studies—Study Design, Data Analysis, and Implications for Dosing and Labeling" (Feb. 2012).
- Fuller et al., "From Club Drug to Orphan Drug: Sodium Oxybate (Xyrem) for the Treatment of Cataplexy," *Pharmacotherapy*, 23(9): 1205-1209, 2003.
- Hechler et al., "γ-Hydroxybutyrate Conversion into GABA Induces Displacement of GABA_B Binding that is Blocked by Valproate and Ethosuximide," *The Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, 281(2): 753-760, 1997.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text" (Nov. 18, 2005).
- Lyng, "Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB): Mechanisms of Central Nervous System Toxicity," Baylor University, ProQuest, UMI Dissertations Publishing, 2006, 3213445.
- Orphan Medical, Inc., NDA 21196, Major Amendment, filed Mar. 26, 2001, "Review and Evaluation of Clinical Data," http://www.fda.gov/ohrms/dockets/ac/01/briefing/3754b1_02_section%204.PDF (as downloaded on Mar. 4, 2014).
- PCT, International Search Report, mailed Jun. 24, 2014, in International Patent Application No. PCT/US2014/019217.
- PCT, Written Opinion, mailed Jun. 24, 2014, in International Patent Application No. PCT/US2014/019217.
- Physicians' Desk Reference, 65th ed. (2011), pp. 1698-1703 (Xyrem).
- Thorpy et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy with Cataplexy—An Overview of the Disease and a Report on Sodium Oxybate Dosage and Prescribing Information," *European Neurological Review*, 3(1):84-88, 2008.
- Wellendorph et al., "Phenylacetic Acids and the Structurally Related Non-Steroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drug Diclofenac Bind to Specific γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid Sites in Rat Brain," *Fundamental & Clinical Pharmacology*, 23:207-213, 2009.
- USPTO, Notice of Allowance and Fee(s) Due, mailed Nov. 3, 2014, in U.S. Appl. No. 13/873,000.
- USPTO, Report on the filing or determination of an action regarding a patent; documents filed Sep. 18, 2014, Oct. 2, 2014, and Oct. 7, 2014, in U.S. Patent No. 8,772,306 (5 pages total).
- Notification Letter dated Aug. 5, 2014, from Par Pharmaceutical, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: "Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution (XYREM®); United States Patent No. 8,772,306; Notice of Paragraph IV Certification".
- Notification Letter dated Aug. 19, 2014, from Ranbaxy Laboratories Limited to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: "Notice of Paragraph IV Certification Regarding NDA 021196 Xyrem® Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/mL Oral Solution with respect to U.S. Patent Nos. 6,780,889; 7,262,219; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 7,851,605; 7,895,059; 8,263,650; 8,324,275; 8,457,988; 8,589,182; 8,731,963; and 8,772,306".
- Notification Letter dated Oct. 29, 2014, from Watson Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: "Notification of Certification for U.S. Patent Nos. 6,780,889; 7,262,219; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 7,851,605; 7,895,059; 8,263,650; 8,324,275; 8,457,988; 8,589,182; 8,731,963; and 8,772,306; Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(iv) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act".
- Chateauvieux et al., "Molecular and Therapeutic Potential and Toxicity of Valproic Acid," *Journal of Biomedicine and Biotechnology* (2010), pp. 1-18.
- Sanofi Aventis, "Prescribing Information for EPILIM," (Sep. 12, 2011), pp. 1-18.
- Snead et al., "Effect of Acute and Chronic Anticonvulsant Administration of Endogenous γ-Hydroxybutyrate in a Rat Brain," *Neuropharmacology* (1980), pp. 47-52, vol. 19.
- Weiss et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate (GHB) and Topiramate-Clinically Relevant Drug Interaction Suggested by Case of Coma and Increased Plasma GHB Concentration," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, (2012), pp. 1193-1194, vol. 69.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," Xyrem®, 30 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_product_INFORMATION/human/000593/WC000057103.pdf. Downloaded Mar. 6, 2015.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Xyrem® FDA Approved Label (Jul. 17, 2002), 95 pages.
- "Xyrem: EPAR-Procedural steps taken before authorization," (Aug. 9, 2006), 1 page. Available at http://www.ema.europa.eu/ema/index.jsp?curl=pages/medicines/human/medicines/000593/human_med/001163.jsp&mid=WC0b01ac058001d124. Downloaded Jan. 28, 2015.
- "Xyrem® : Procedural steps taken and scientific information after the authorisation," European Medicine Agency, (2014), pp. 1-9.
- "Xyrem®," The Pharmaceutical Journal, (Feb. 18, 2006). Available at: <http://www.pharmaceutical-journal.com/new-medicines/-spec-changes/-counter-products/-discontinued-products/-oriduct-miscellany/20016677.article#xyrem>. Downloaded Mar. 5, 2015.
- "Disulfiram/sodium oxybate/valproate interaction," *Reactions Weekly*, (Jul. 2011), pp. 18, vol. 1361. No. 1.
- Fides, "Solutions of 4-hydroxybutyric acid salts for injection," *Chem Abstract ES302338*, Laboratorio M. Cuatescases, S.A. (2011), 2 pages.
- Copy of Notification Letter dated Jan. 9, 2015, from Roxane Laboratories to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Patent Notice Pursuant to Section 505(j)(2)(B)(ii)[210 USC Section 355(j)(2)(B)(ii)]for U.S. Patent Nos. 8,731,963; 8,772,306; and 8859619, 32 pages.
- Copy of Notification Letter dated Jan. 16, 2015, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Patent No. 8,731,963; 8,772,306; and 8859619, 22 pages.

* cited by examiner

U.S. Patent

Jun. 9, 2015

Sheet 1 of 10

US 9,050,302 B2**FIG. 1**

U.S. Patent

Jun. 9, 2015

Sheet 2 of 10

US 9,050,302 B2

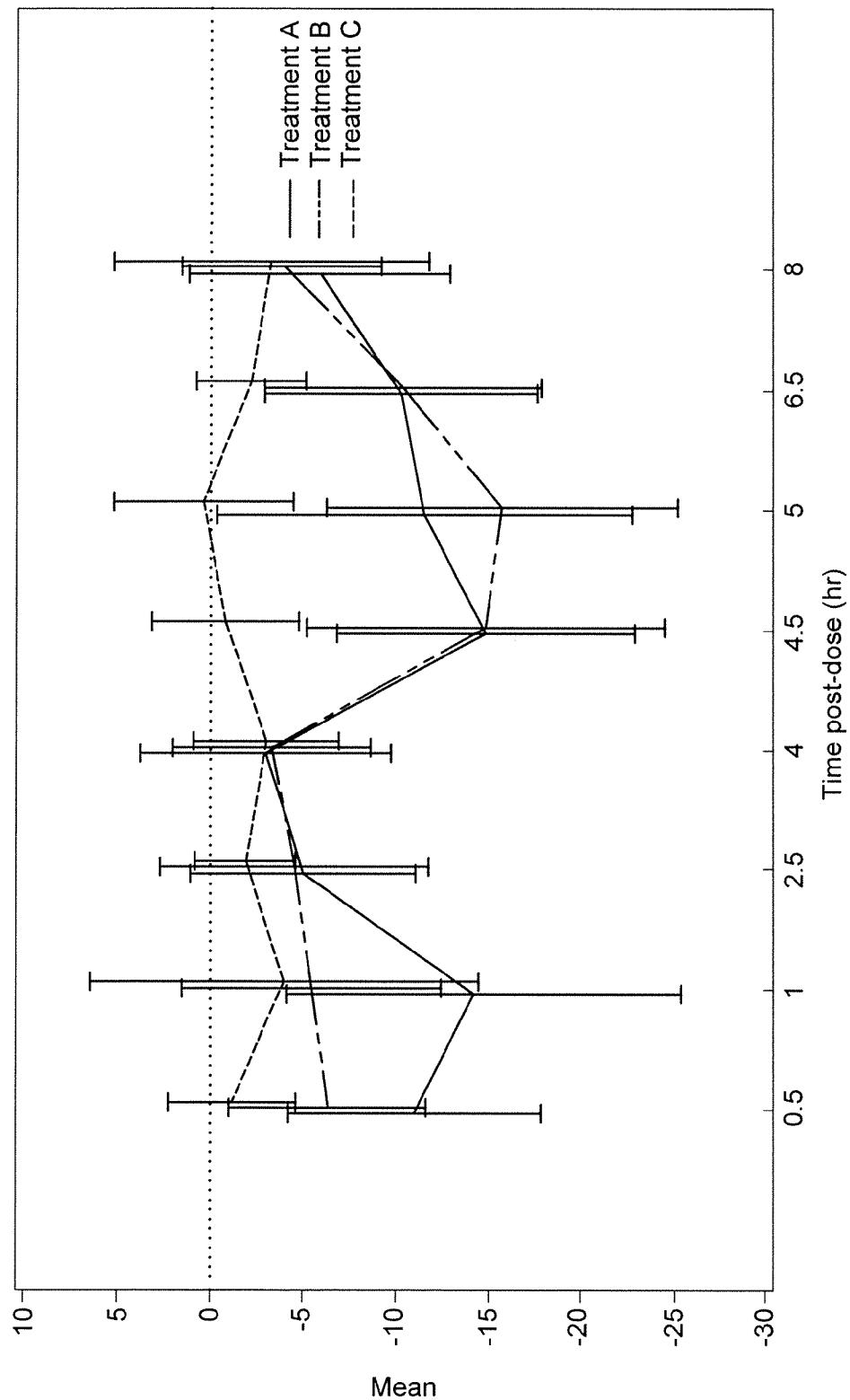


FIG. 2

U.S. Patent

Jun. 9, 2015

Sheet 3 of 10

US 9,050,302 B2

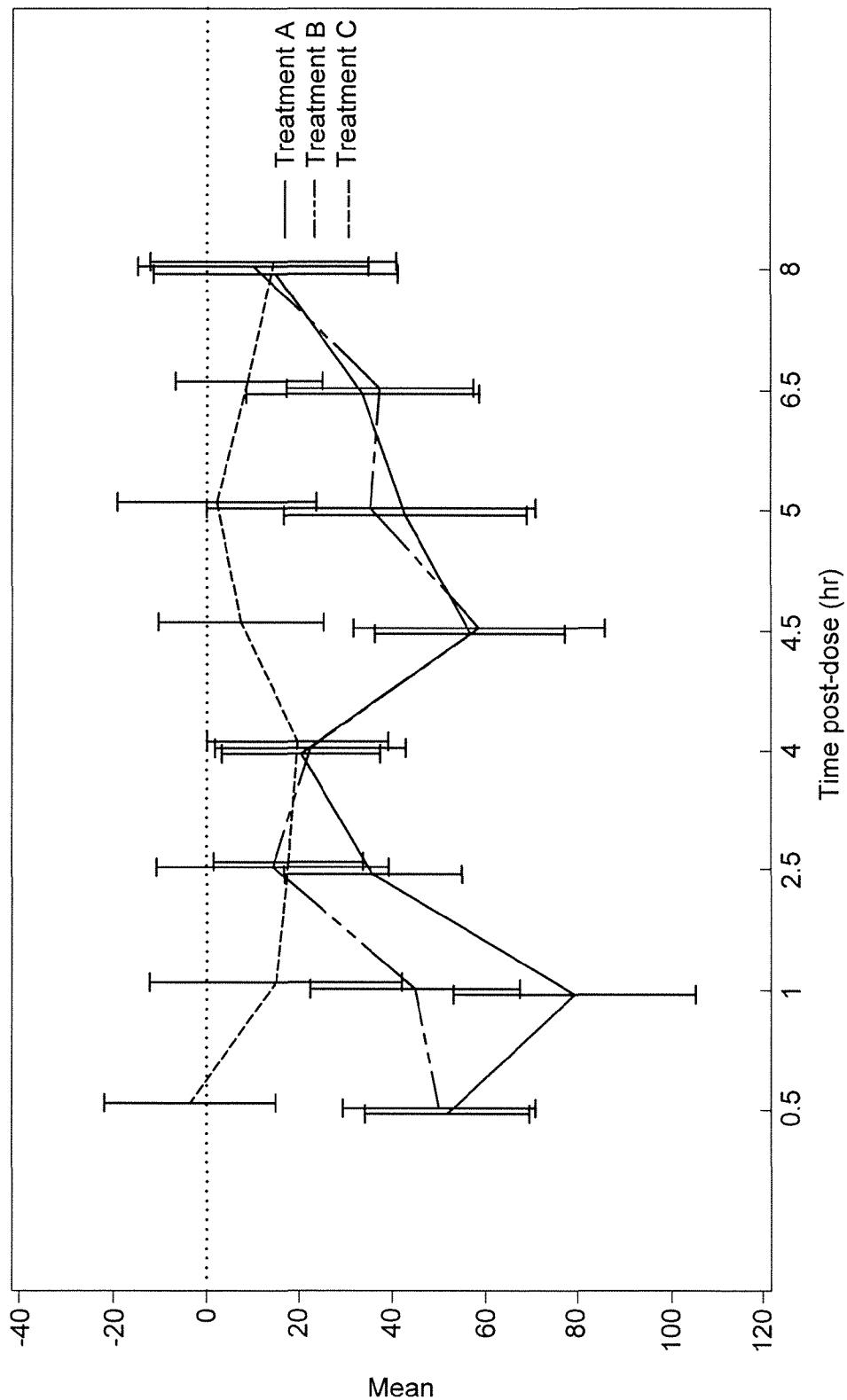


FIG. 3

U.S. Patent

Jun. 9, 2015

Sheet 4 of 10

US 9,050,302 B2

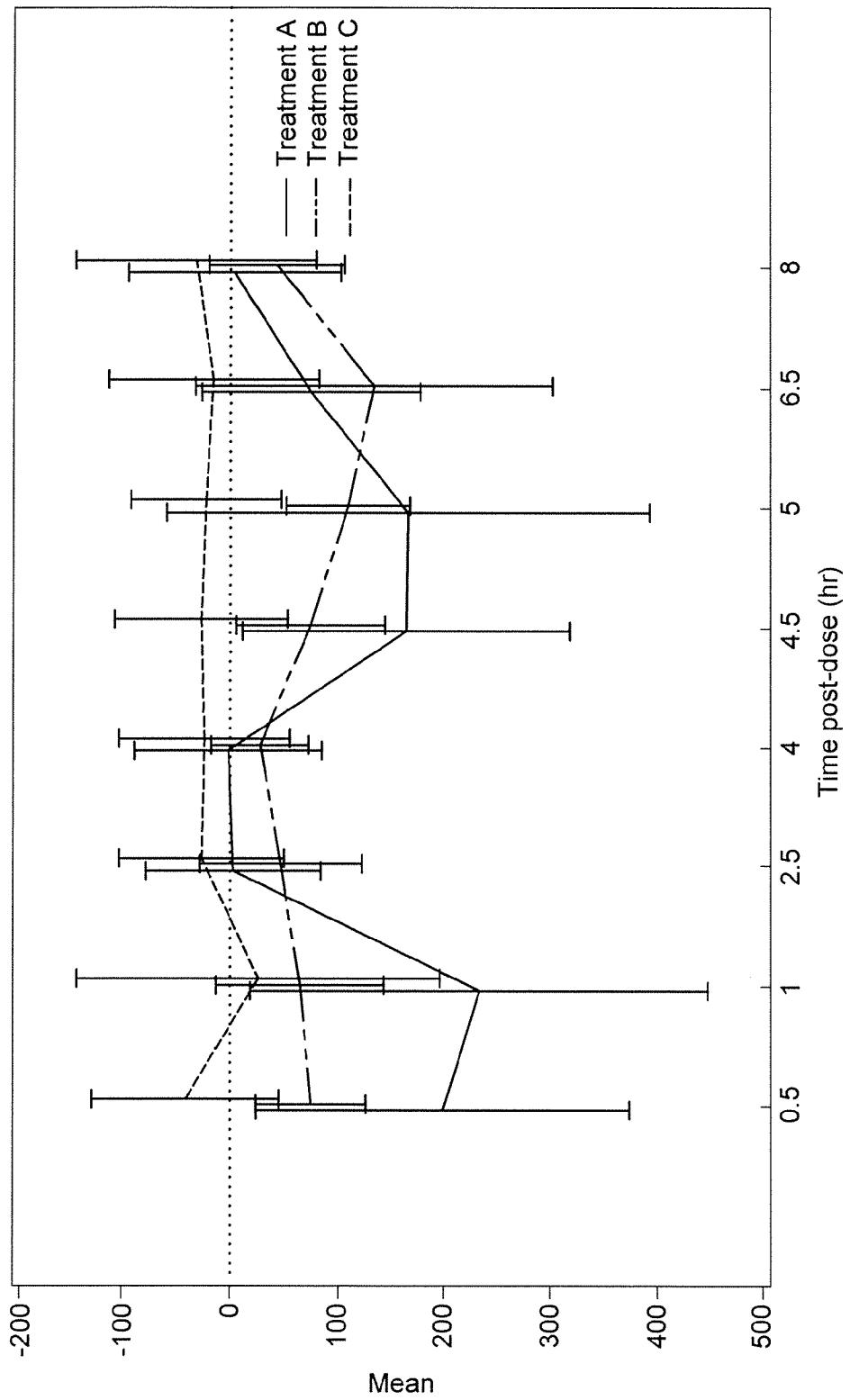


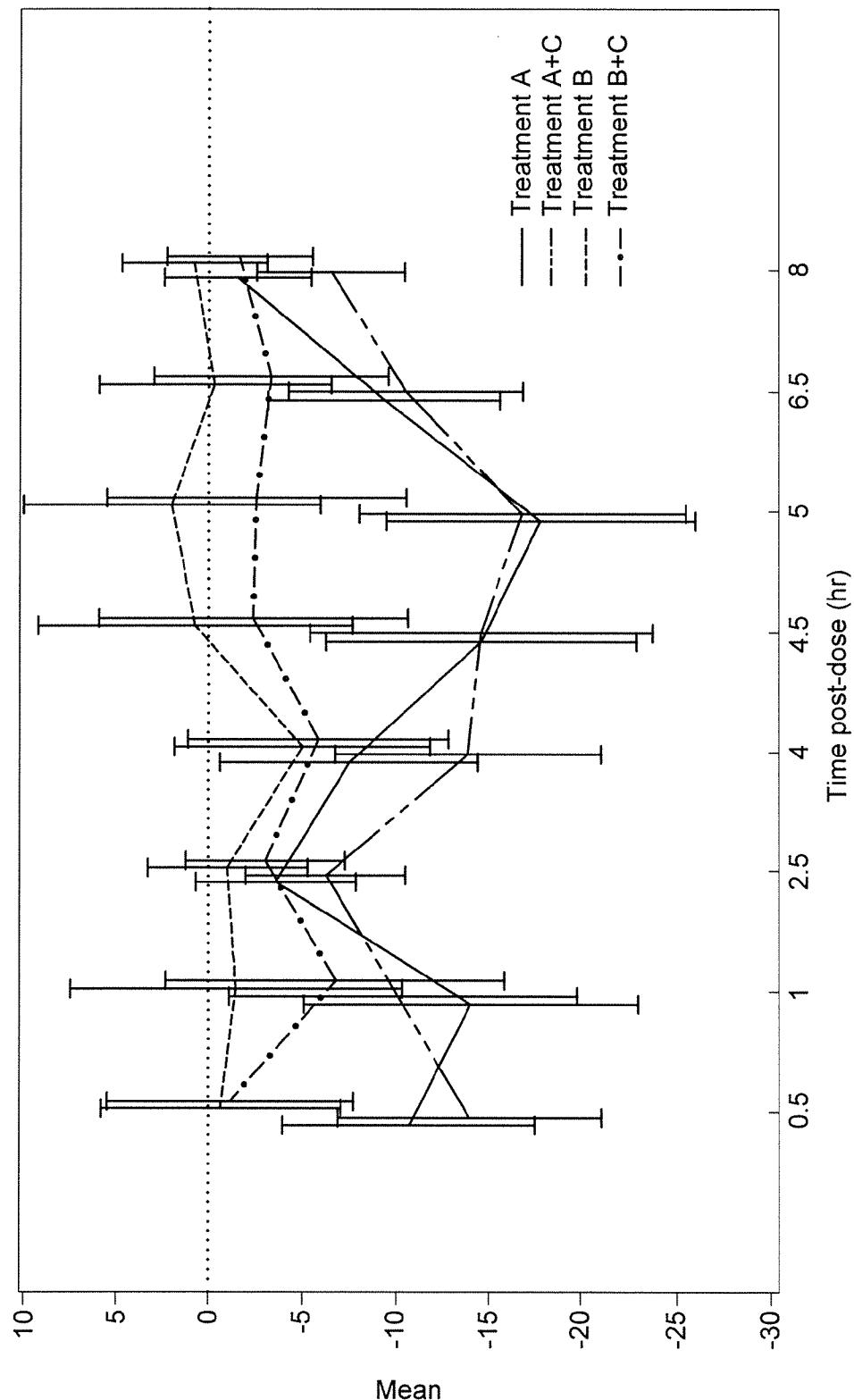
FIG. 4

U.S. Patent

Jun. 9, 2015

Sheet 5 of 10

US 9,050,302 B2

**FIG. 5**

U.S. Patent

Jun. 9, 2015

Sheet 6 of 10

US 9,050,302 B2

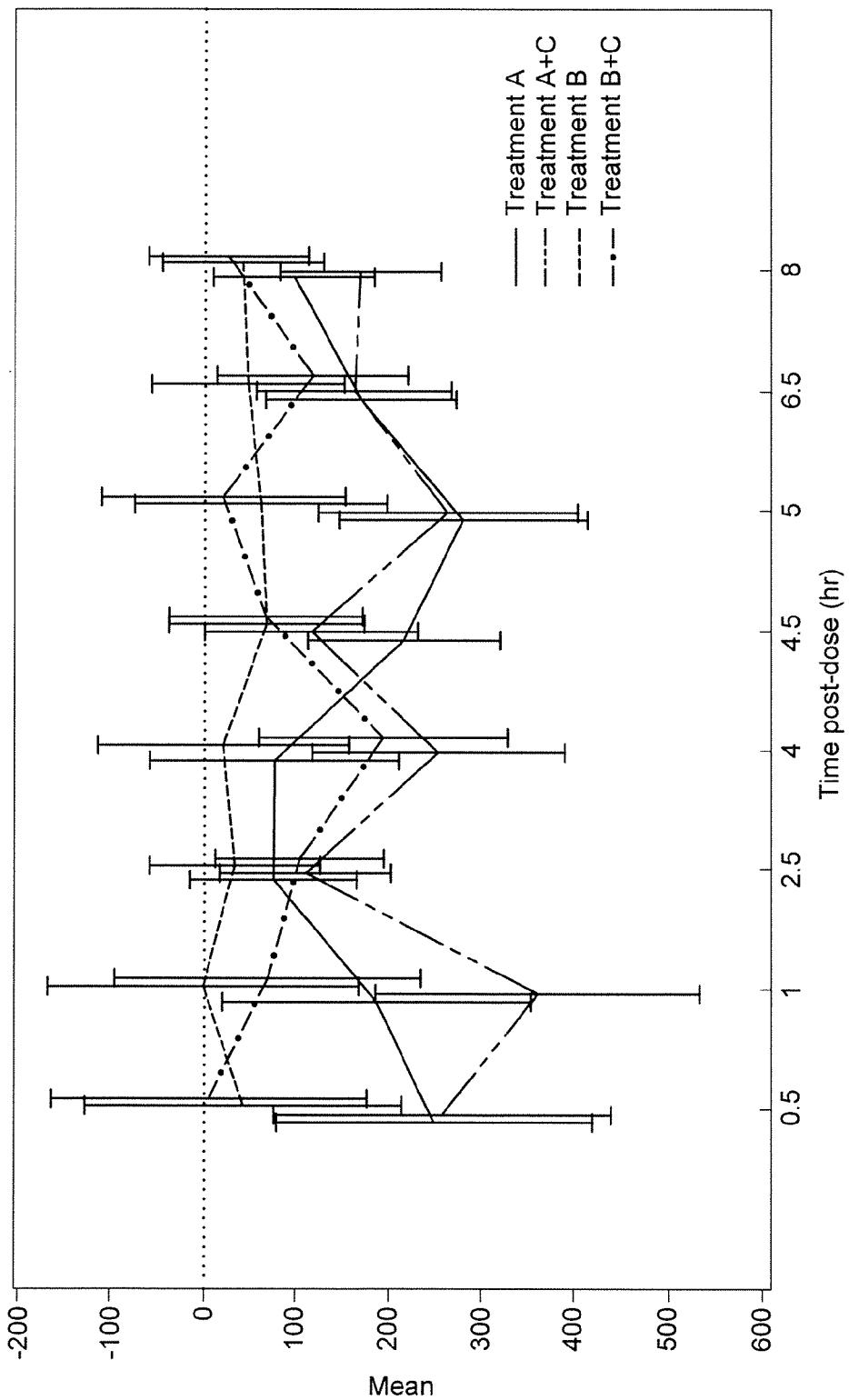


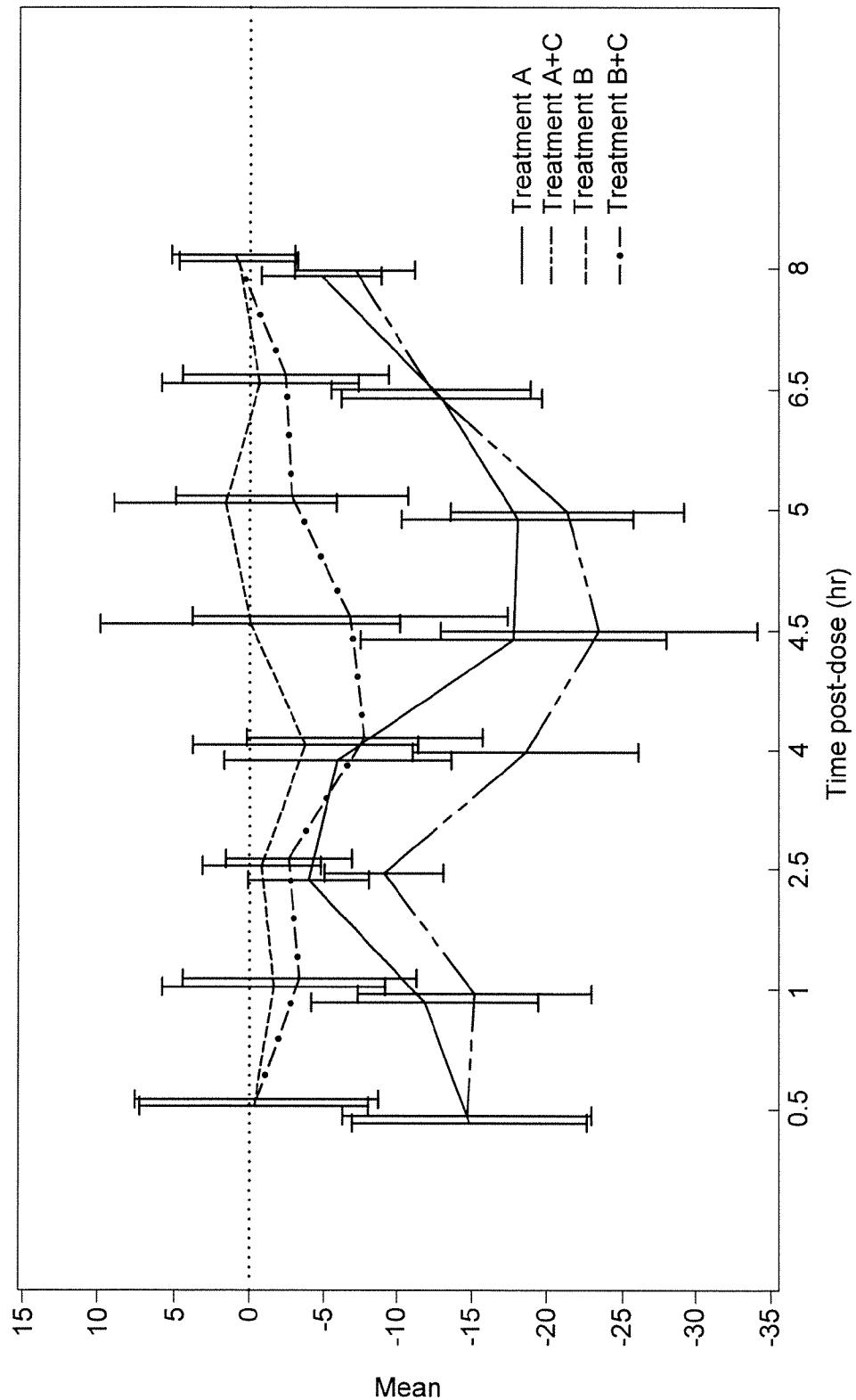
FIG. 6

U.S. Patent

Jun. 9, 2015

Sheet 7 of 10

US 9,050,302 B2

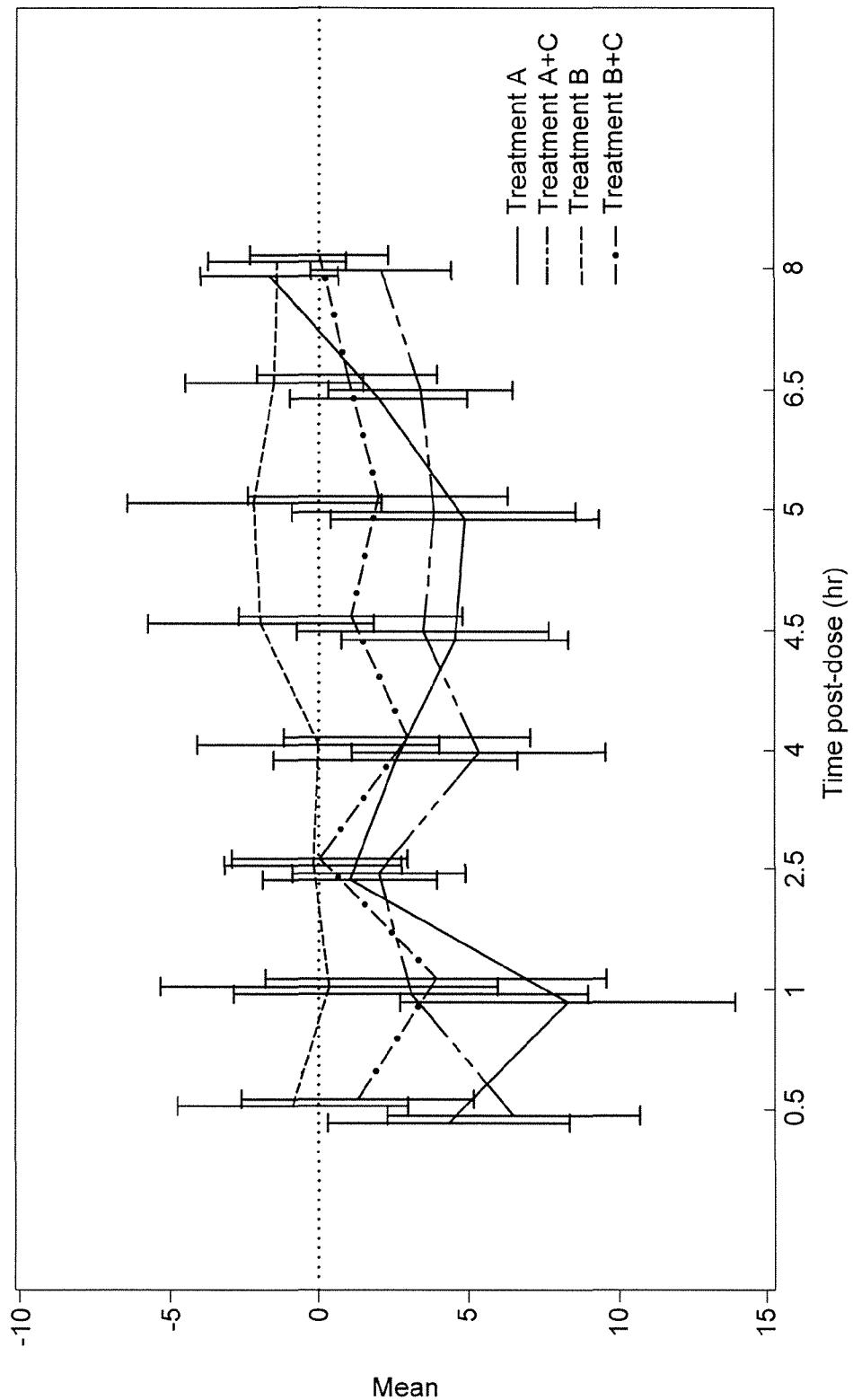
**FIG. 7**

U.S. Patent

Jun. 9, 2015

Sheet 8 of 10

US 9,050,302 B2

**FIG. 8**

U.S. Patent

Jun. 9, 2015

Sheet 9 of 10

US 9,050,302 B2

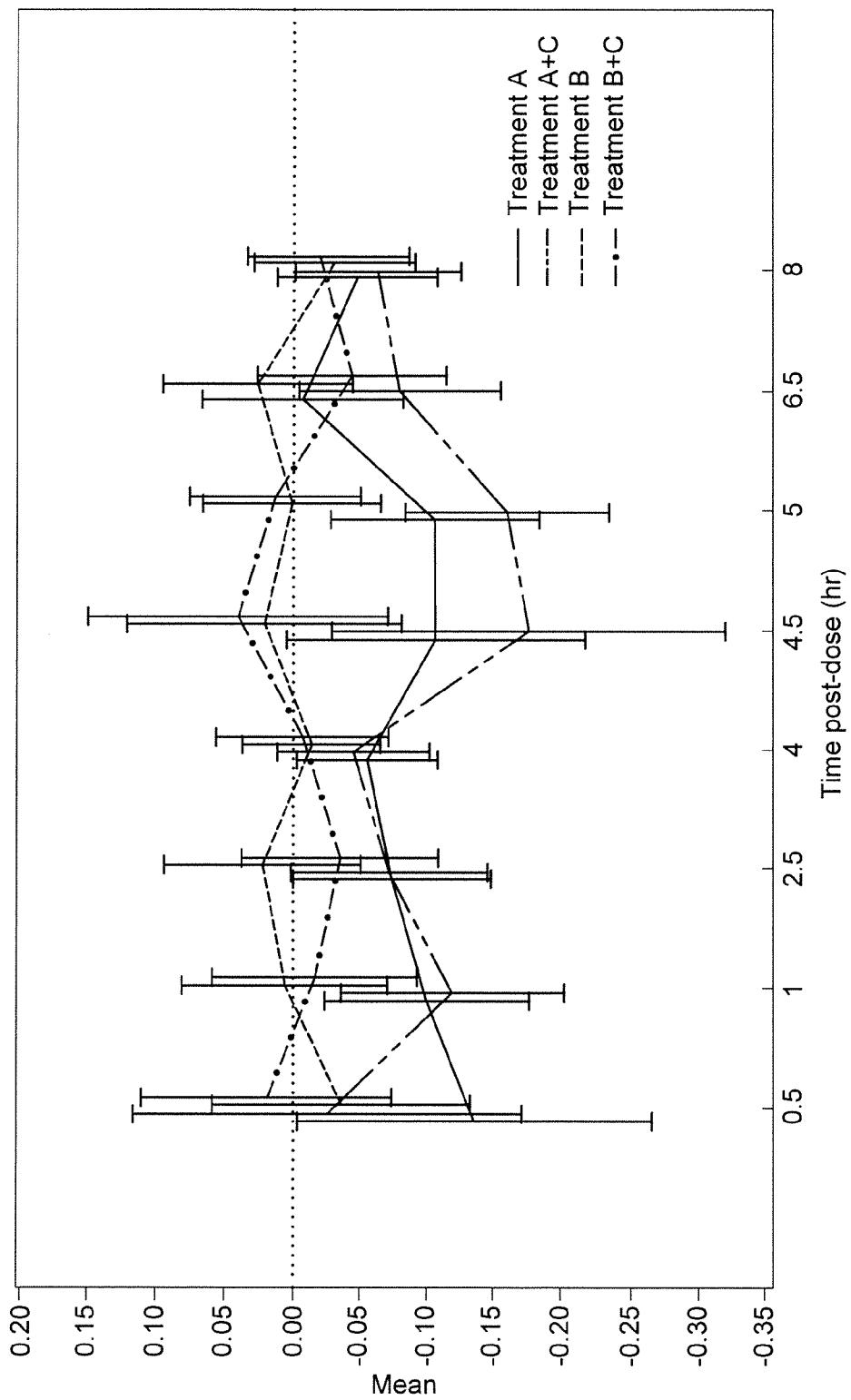


FIG. 9

U.S. Patent

Jun. 9, 2015

Sheet 10 of 10

US 9,050,302 B2

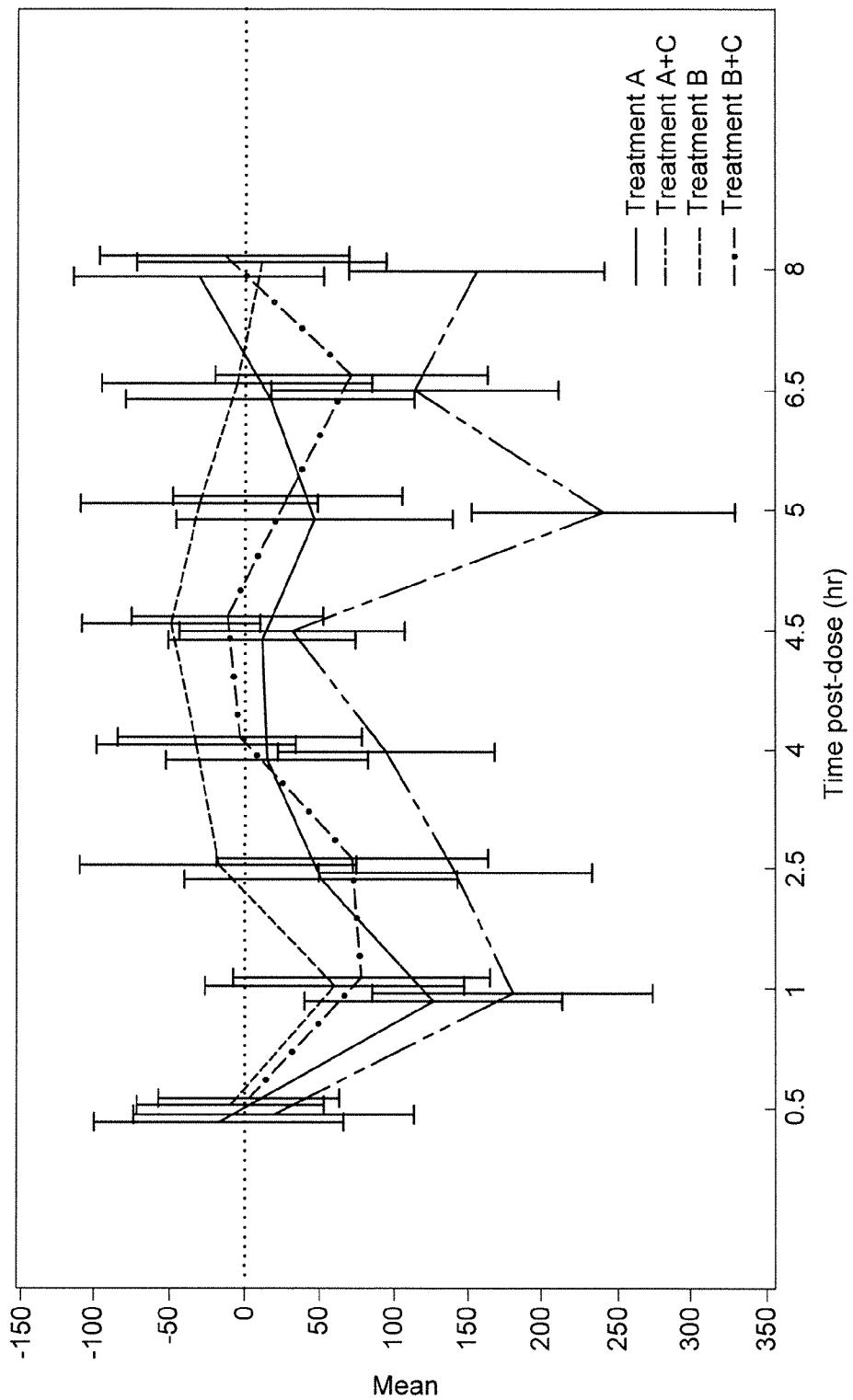


FIG. 10

US 9,050,302 B2

1

METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS

This application claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/771,557, filed Mar. 1, 2013, and U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/777,873, filed Mar. 12, 2013, each of which is hereby incorporated by reference in its entirety.

BACKGROUND

This application relates to methods for safely administering gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB) together with one or more other monocarboxylate transporter (MCT) inhibitors for therapeutic purposes. Example transporter inhibitors are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof, comprising: orally administering to the patient in need of treatment, an adjusted dosage amount of the salt of GHB when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of valproate. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced at least about 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the amount of GHB is reduced at least about 10% and about 30% of the normal administration and the daily administration of the GHB salt is between 1 gram and 10 grams. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the ranges of about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 45%, or about 45% or 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the range of about 1% to 50%, about 1% to 45%, about 1% to 40%, about 1% to 35%, about 1% to 30%, about 1% to 25%, about 1% to 20%, about 1% to 15%, about 1% to 10%, about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 50%, about 5% to 45%, about 5% to 40%, about 5% to 35%, about 5% to 30%, about 5% to 25%, about 5% to 20%, about 5% to 15%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 50%, about 10% to 45%, about 10% to 40%, about 10% to 35%, about 10% to 30%, about 10% to 25%, about 10% to 20%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to 45%, about 15% to 40%, about 15% to 35%, about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 50%, about 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient.

Another embodiment of the invention is a method of safely administering GHB a salt thereof for excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep

2

arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising: determining if the patient is has taken, or will take a concomitant dose of valproate; orally administering a reduced amount of the GHB or GHB salt to the patient compared to the normal dose so as to diminish the additive effects of the GHB or GHB salt when administered with valproate. The amount of GHB is reduced at least 10% to 30%, or at least +15% of the normal administration.

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for

In another embodiment, the invention is a method of safely administering a GHB salt for excessive daytime sleepiness,

- 55 cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising: determining if the patient has taken, or will take a concomitant dose of diclofenac; orally administering an increased
60 amount of a GHB salt to the patient so as to compensate for the effects of diclofenac on the GHB salt when concomitantly administered.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy wherein said patient is currently taking or has been prescribed GHB or a salt thereof, comprising determining if the patient is taking or has also been prescribed valproate or diclofenac;

US 9,050,302 B2

3

and adjusting the dose of the GHB or GHB salt to compensate for the effect caused by valproate or diclofenac. In certain embodiments, the method additionally comprises administering the adjusted dose to the patient.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma GHB, wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate additive effects.

The embodiments of the present invention can administer the GHB at a level of between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day. The concentration of the formulation can be between 350-750 mg/ml or 450-550 mg/ml and a pH between 6-10 or 6.5-8.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a salt of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient or determining whether the patient is currently on a GHB drug regimen; determining if the patient is also being administered ibuprofen; and advising a patient to cease or ceasing the administration of ibuprofen. In some embodiments, patients benefiting from this directive when the patient has will have a renal impairment.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered valproate; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of valproate and GHB; and reducing the dose of the GHB or GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by valproate. Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered diclofenac; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of diclofenac and the GHB salt; and increasing the dose of the GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by diclofenac.

In each of the embodiments of the invention the method includes administering GHB at between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day and at a concentration of between 350-750 or 450-550 mg/ml, and a pH between 6-10 or between 6.5-8. In further embodiments the valproate or diclofenac is administered within three days, one or two weeks (before or after) of GHB administration. In another embodiment, the present invention is a method wherein aspirin is also administered to the patient, especially with valproate.

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB as a single salt or a mixture of salts of GHB selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂).

4

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB to a patient suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to the patient; determining if the patient has concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor; and adjusting the GHB dose or ceasing administering of the MCT inhibitor to maintain the effect of the GHB.

In any of the versions of the invention, the methods optionally further include administering aspirin to the patient.

In a further embodiment the method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof comprises administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while avoiding concomitant of a diclofenac or valproate.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a method of administering GHB or a salt thereof (GHB) to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of diclofenac, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB or a GHB salt per day while avoiding diclofenac concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that diclofenac should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with diclofenac can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being treated with diclofenac is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in a decrease in exposure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a administering GHB to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of valproate, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB per day while avoiding valproate concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being treated with valproate is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in exposure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient that MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

In another embodiment, the present invention is a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management system to dispense information concerning the risks associated with ingesting a MCT inhibitor concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; providing said pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and authorizing distribution of said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The method may also comprise including an electronic or written alert, which can explain the risks, to employees to dispense said information with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Also, the infor-

US 9,050,302 B2

5

mation can be dispensed when a subject refills said prescription. The warnings would be as recited above.

The methods of the present invention may include a warning for patients not to operate hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely and not to engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Any information dispensed with said drug advises patients of the potential for enhanced potency of said drug if said patients also take valproate or advises patients of the potential for decreased potency of said drug if said patients also take diclofenac.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while avoiding concomitant administration of diclofenac or valproate.

The invention may also comprise a method for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that the toxic effects of GHB are reduced. It may also comprise a method for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population). Treatment A=diclofenac placebo+Xyrem®. Treatment B=diclofenac+Xyrem®. Treatment C=diclofenac+Xyrem® placebo.

FIG. 2 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 3 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 4 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 5 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population). Treatment A=Xyrem®. Treatment B=Xyrem® placebo. Treatment C=valproate.

FIG. 6 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

FIG. 7 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

FIG. 8 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

FIG. 9 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

FIG. 10 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The following patents and applications are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties for all purposes: U.S.

6

Pat. Nos. 6,472,431, 6,780,889, 7,262,219, 7,851,506, 8,263, 650, 8,324,275; 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; Ser. Nos. 61/317,212, 13/071,369, 13/739,886, 12/264,709, PCT/US2010/033572, PCT/US2009/061312, 2009/0137565; and 2012/0076865. The following patents are also incorporated by reference: U.S. Pat. No. 5,380,937; U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236 German Patent DD 237,309 A1; and British Pat. No. 922,029.

Objects, features and advantages of the methods and compositions described herein will become apparent from the following detailed description. It should be understood, however, that the detailed description and the specific examples, while indicating specific embodiments, are given by way of illustration only, since various changes and modifications within the spirit and scope of the invention will become apparent to those skilled in the art from this detailed description.

The following references, to the extent that they provide exemplary procedural or other details supplementary to those set forth herein, are specifically incorporated herein by reference.

Arena and Fung, "Absorption of sodium .gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and its prodrug .gamma.-butyrolactone: relationship between in vitro transport and in vivo absorption," *J. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 69(3):356-358, 1980.

Bedard, Montplaisir, Godbout, Lapierre, "Nocturnal .gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate—Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients," 12(1):29-36, 1989.

Broughton and Mamelak, "The treatment of narcolepsy-cataplexy with nocturnal gamma-hydroxybutyrate," *Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques*. 6(1):1-6, 1979.

Ferrara, Zotti, Tedeschi, Frison, Castagna, Gessa and Gallimberti, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in the treatment of alcohol dependent," *Clin. Neuropharm.*, 15(1, Pt A):303A-304A, 1992.

Gessa, Diana, Fadda, Colombo, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) for treatment of ethanol dependence," *Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement*, 1992. Gessa et al., *Clin. Neuropharm.*, 15(supp.):303A-304A, 1992

Gessa et al., *Internat. Clin. Psychopharm.*, 1994.

Hasenbos and Gieien, "Anaesthesia for bullectomy," *Anaesthesia*, 40:977-980, 1985.

Laborit, "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semi aldehyde and Sleep," Laboratoire d'Eutonologie, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France, 1973.

Ladinsky, Consolo, Zatta, Vezzani, "Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System, Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacal., 322:42-48, 1983.

Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and narcolepsy: a double-blind placebo-controlled study," *Sleep*, 16(3); 216-220, 1993.

Lapierre, Montplaisir, Lamarre, Bedard, "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep-Triggering Mechanisms," *Sleep*. 13(1):24-30, 1990.

Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1988. Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1990. Lee, C. R. "Evidence for the .beta.-Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans" *Biochem. Medicine* 17, 284-291, 1977.

Lettieri and Fung, "Improved pharmacological activity via pro-drug modification: comparative pharmacokinetics of sodium .gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and .gamma.-butyrolactone," *Research Communications In Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology*. 22(1):107-118. 1978.

US 9,050,302 B2

7

Mamelak, 1977; "Effects Of Gamma Hydroxybutyrate On Sleep," Biol. Psychiatry 12, 273-288. Mamelak, "Gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB): An endogenous regulator of energy metabolism," Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews, 13: 189-198, 1989.

Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," Neuro. & Biobehav. Rev., 13 187-198, 1989.

Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak, Escriu, Stokan "The effects of gamma-hydroxybutyrate on sleep," Biol. Psychiatry, 10 12(2):273-288. 1977.

Mamelak, Escriu, Stokan, "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," The Lance, p. 328-329. 1973.

Nema, et al., "Excipients and their use in injectable products," PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol., 51(4):166-171, 1997.

Palatini, Tedeschi, Frison, Padrini, Zordan, Orlando, Gallimberti, Gessa, Ferrara, "Dose dependent absorption and elimination of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in healthy volunteers," Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol., 45:353-356, 1993.

Roth and Giarman, ".gamma.-Butyrolactone and .gamma.-Hydroxybutyric Acid-I, Distribution and Metabolism," Biochemical Pharmacology, 15:1333-1348, 1966.

Scharf, Brown, Woods, Brown, Hirschkowitz, "The effects and effectiveness of gammahydroxybutyrate In patients with narcolepsy," J. Clin. Psychiatry, 46(6)222-225, 1985.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "Efficacy of gamma-hydroxybutyrate versus placebo in treating narcolepsy-cataplexy: Double-blind subjective measured," Biol. Psychiatry, 26:331-343, 1989.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "The Effects of .gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," Sleep, 13(6):479-490, 1990.

Scrima, et al, "Sleep Res. 16, 134, 1987, Abstract. Series, Series, Cormier, "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," Am. Rev. Respir. Dis., 1378-1383, 1992.

Strong, ".gamma.-Hydroxybutyric acid and Intracranial Pressure," The Lancet, Vol. 1: No. 8389, 1984. van den Bogert, Vree, van der Kleijn, Damsma, "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man."

Vickers, "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," Int. Anesth. Clinic, 7:75-89, 1969.

Lee, Biochem. Med. 17:234-291, 1977. Yamada, Yamamoto, Fujiki, Hishikawa, Kaneko, "Effect of Butyrolactone and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol., 22:558-562, 1967.

Yamada et al., 1967. Wu, Ying; Ali, Saima; Ahmadian, Ghola-mreza; Liu, Chun Che; Wang, Yu Tian; Gibson, K. Michael; Calver, Andrew R.; Francis, Joseph et al. (2004). "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-aminobutyric acidB receptor (GABABR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence". Neuroparmacology 47 (8): 1146-56.

Cash, C; Gobaille, S; Kemmel, V; Andriamanampandry, C; Maitre, M (1999). " γ -hydroxybutyrate receptor function studied by the modulation of nitric oxide synthase activity in rat frontal cortex punches". Biochemical Pharmacology 58 (11): 1815-9.

Maitre M, Humbert JP, Kemmel V, Aunis D, Andriamanampandry C (2005). "A mechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse" (in French). Med Sci (Paris) 21 (3): 284-9. Waszkielewicz A, Bojarski J (2004). "Gamma-hydrobutyric acid (GHB) and its chemical modifications: a review of the GH Bergic system" (PDF). Pol J Pharmacol 56 (1): 43-9.

8

Kuriyama K, Sze P Y (1971). "Blood-brain barrier to H3-gamma-aminobutyric acid in normal and amino oxy-acetic acid-treated animals". Neuropharmacology 10 (1): 103-8.

5 Dimitrijevic N, Dzitoyeva S, Satta R, Imbesi M, Yildiz S, Manev H (2005). "Drosophila GABA(B) receptors are involved in behavioral effects of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB)". Eur. J. Pharmacol. 519 (3): 246-52.

Banerjee P K, Snead O C (1995). "Presynaptic gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-aminobutyric acidB (GABAB) receptor-mediated release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in rat thalamic ventrobasal nucleus (VB): a possible mechanism for the generation of absence-like seizures induced by GHB". J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther. 273 (3): 1534-43.

Hechler V, Gobaille S, Bourguignon J J, Maitre M (1991). "Extracellular events induced by gamma-hydroxybutyrate in striatum: a microdialysis study". J. Neurochem. 56 (3): 938-44. Maitre, M; Hechler, V; Vayer, P; Gobaille, S; Cash, C D; Schmitt, M; Bourguignon, J J (1990). "A specific gamma-hydroxybutyrate receptor ligand possesses both antagonistic and anticonvulsant properties". J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther. 255 (2): 657-63.

25 Smolders I, De Klippe N, Sarre S, Ebinger G, Michotte Y (1995). "Tonic GABAergic modulation of striatal dopamine release studied by in vivo microdialysis in the freely moving rat". Eur. J. Pharmacol. 284 (1-2): 83-91.

In the specification and claims that follow, references will be made to a number of terms which shall be defined to have the following meaning.

30 The terms "a" and "an" do not denote a limitation of quantity, but rather denote the presence of at least one of the referenced item. The term "or" means "and/or". The terms "comprising", "having", "including", and "containing" are to be construed as open-ended terms (i.e., meaning "including, but not limited to").

35 "Concomitant" and "concomitantly" as used herein refer to the administration of at least two drugs to a patient either subsequently, simultaneously, or consequently within a time period during which the effects of the first administered drug are still operative in the patient. Thus, if the first drug is, e.g., Xyrem®, or GHB, and the second drug is valproate, the concomitant administration of the second drug occurs within two weeks, preferably within one week or even three days, before or after the administration of the first drug.

40 "Dosage amount" means an amount of a drug suitable to be taken during a fixed period, usually during one day (i.e., daily).

45 "Dosage amount adapted for oral administration" means a dosage amount that is of an amount deemed safe and effective for the particular patient under the conditions specified. As used herein and in the claims, this dosage amount is determined by following the recommendations of the drug manufacturer's Prescribing Information as approved by the US

50 Food and Drug Administration.

55 "Dosing regimen" means the dose of a drug taken at a first time by a patient and the interval (time or symptomatic) and dosage amounts at which any subsequent doses of the drug are taken by the patient. Each dose may be of the same or a different dosage amount.

60 "A "dose" means the measured quantity of a drug to be taken at one time by a patient.

A "patient" means a human in need of medical treatment. In one embodiment medical treatment can include treatment of an existing condition, such as a disease or disorder, prophylactic or preventative treatment, or diagnostic treatment. In another embodiment, medical treatment also includes

US 9,050,302 B2

9

administration to treat excessive daytime sleepiness, catalepsy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus.

“Providing” means giving, administering, selling, distributing, transferring (for profit or not), manufacturing, compounding, or dispensing.

The terms “therapeutically effective amount,” as used herein, refer to an amount of a compound sufficient to treat, ameliorate, or prevent the identified disease or condition, or to exhibit a detectable therapeutic, prophylactic, or inhibitory effect. The effect can be detected by, for example, an improvement in clinical condition, or reduction in symptoms. The precise effective amount for a subject will depend upon the subject’s body weight, size, and health; the nature and extent of the condition; and the therapeutic or combination of therapeutics selected for administration. Where a drug has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), a “therapeutically effective amount” refers to the dosage approved by the FDA or its counterpart foreign agency for treatment of the identified disease or condition.

“Side effect” means a secondary effect resulting from taking a drug. The secondary effect can be a negative (unfavorable) effect (i.e., an adverse side effect) or a positive (favorable) effect.

Pharmacokinetic parameters referred to herein describe the in vivo characteristics of drug (or a metabolite or a surrogate marker for the drug) over time. These include plasma concentration (C), as well as C_{max} , C_n , C_{24} , T_{max} , and AUC. The term “ T_{max} ” refers to the time from drug administration until C_{max} is reached. “AUC” is the area under the curve of a graph of the measured plasma concentration of an active agent vs. time, measured from one time point to another time point. For example AUC_{0-t} is the area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time t, where time 0 is the time of initial administration of the drug. Time t can be the last time point with measurable plasma concentration for an individual formulation. The $AUC_{0-\infty}$, or AUC_{0-INF} is the calculated area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time infinity. In steady-state studies, $AUC_{0-\tauau}$ is the area under the curve of plasma concentration over the dosing interval (i.e., from time 0 to time τau). (τau is the length of the dosing interval).

It may be advantageous to incorporate a pharmacy management system into the method of the present invention. Pharmacy management systems are computer-based systems that are used by commercial pharmacies to manage prescriptions and to provide pharmacy and medical personnel with warnings and guidance regarding drugs being administered to patients. Such systems typically provide alerts warning either or both of health care providers and patients when a drug that may be harmful to the particular patient is prescribed. For example, such systems can provide alerts warning that a patient has an allergy to a prescribed drug, or is receiving concomitant administration of a drug that can have a dangerous interaction with a prescribed drug. U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 5,758,095, 5,833,599, 5,845,255, 6,014,631, 6,067,524, 6,112,182, 6,317,719, 6,356,873, and 7,072,840, each of which is incorporated herein by reference, disclose various pharmacy management systems and aspects thereof. Example pharmacy management systems are now commercially available, e.g., CENTRICITY Pharmacy from BDM Information Systems Ltd., General Electric Healthcare, Waukesha, Wis., Rx30 Pharmacy Systems from Transaction Data Systems, Inc., Ocoee, Fla., SPEED SCRIPT from Digital Simplistics, Inc.,

10

Lenexa, Kans., and various pharmacy management systems from OPUS-ISM, Hauppauge, N.Y.

In some embodiments, a pharmacy management system may be required or preferred as part of a drug distribution program. For example, the present invention includes a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: (1) Identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management system to dispense information concerning the risks associated with ingesting a MCT inhibitors concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; (2) Providing said pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and (3) Authorizing distribution of said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The established management system may include an electronic alert to employees to dispense said information with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Such information may be dispensed in written form, for example in a brochure explaining the risks of concomitant ingestion of GHB and an MCT inhibitor such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen or combinations thereof. For example, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for enhanced potency of GHB if the patient also takes valproate. Alternatively, or in addition thereto, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for decreased potency of GHB if the patient also takes diclofenac. Such information may also be dispensed in verbal form. Distributors may maintain a directory of approved pharmacies, for example in a computer readable storage medium, to further ensure that GHB is dispensed only to patients who are advised of the additive effects.

In addition, the system can prevent the dispensing of GHB or salt thereof until proper testing or confirmation is obtained that the patient is not taking or going to take valproate or diclofenac concomitantly with GHB. Alternatively, the patient can be warned of the adverse effect and instructed to modify the dose of GHB to accommodate the increased or reduced effects of GHB due to valproate or diclofenac.

A pharmacy management system of the present invention can be a REMS system as shown in U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,059; 7,797,171; and 7,668,730 and also include monitoring for concomitant use of diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, or combinations thereof. Warnings may be administered through the existing pharmacy management system as described in the patents above.

One embodiment of the present invention, without being limited by theory, is the discovery of drug interactions that change either, or both, the efficacy or safety profile of GHB. The three compounds are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprophen or combinations thereof. To achieve the above benefits, GHB of the present invention can be administered in a reduced amount when a second compound, such as valproate, is concomitantly administered with GHB. It can also be administered in an increased amount to overcome any effects of diclofenac. The compounds can also be avoided or discontinued to prevent unsafe concomitant administration.

In one embodiment of the present invention, concomitant administration of GHB with other agents is monitored and potential changes to the doses of GHB are made, or changes in the administration of other compounds are made. In one embodiment of the present invention, when GHB was concomitantly administered with ibuprofen, there were pharmacokinetic (PK) changes consistent with monocarboxylic transporter (MCT) inhibition and renal excretion of GHB doubled (statistically significant). Plasma levels were about ~5% lower, which was statistically significant. In another

US 9,050,302 B2

11

embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and Diclofenac are concomitantly administered, PD effects were significantly reduced. In another embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and divalproate were concomitantly administered, PK showed both MCT and GHB dehydrogenase inhibition, with the latter predominating. MCT inhibition caused renal clearance to be increased 30% (statistically significant). GHB dehydrogenase inhibition caused systemic exposure (plasma AUC) to be increased 26%. Both measures are statistically significant and outside FDA "equivalence window". PD shows more pronounced effects with concomitant administration.

One embodiment is a method of administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to a patient in need of treatment, such as with narcolepsy, the invention provides an improvement that comprises avoiding or discontinuing administration of a compound that affects GHB potency and administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB. The compound can be diclofenac or valproate and they can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB.

Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB)

GHB (also called oxysorbate or oxybate) is approved in the United States (US) for the treatment of excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS) and for the treatment of cataplexy, both in patients with narcolepsy. GHB is commercially sold as Xyrem® sodium oxybate by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. Sodium oxybate is the sodium salt of the endogenous neurotransmitter gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB), which is found in many tissues of the body. "GHB", oxybate, a GHB salt or Xyrem® will be used to refer to these active forms. It can be used as a sodium, calcium, potassium, or magnesium salt. See U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886.

GHB is present, for example, in the mammalian brain and other tissues. In the brain, the highest GHB concentration is found in the hypothalamus and basal ganglia and GHB is postulated to function as a neurotransmitter. The neuropharmacologic effects of GHB include increases in brain acetylcholine, increases in brain dopamine, inhibition of GABA-ketoglutarate transaminase and depression of glucose utilization but not oxygen consumption in the brain. GHB is converted to succinate and then metabolized via the Krebs cycle. Clinical trials have shown that GHB increases delta sleep and improves the continuity of sleep (Laborit, 1973; Lapierre et al., 1988; Lapierre et al., 1990; Yamada et al., 1967; Scharf, 1985).

GHB treatment substantially reduces the signs and symptoms of narcolepsy, i.e. excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus. In addition, GHB increases total sleep time and REM sleep, and it decreases REM latency (Mamelak et al, 1973; Yamada et al., 1967; Bedard et al., 1989), reduces sleep apnea (Scrima et al., 1987), and improves general anesthesia (Hasenbos and Gielen, 1985).

GHB has several clinical applications other than narcolepsy and sleep disorders. GHB has been reported to reduce alcohol craving, the number of daily drinks consumed, and the symptoms of alcohol withdrawal in patients (Gallimberti et al., 1989; Gallimberti et al., 1992; Gessa et al., 1992). GHB has been used to decrease the symptoms of opiate withdrawal, including both heroin and methadone withdrawal (Gallimberti et al., 1994; Gallimberti et al., 1993). It has analgesic effects that make it suitable as a pain reliever (U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236). Intravenous administration of GHB has been reported to reduce intracranial pressure in patients (Strong, A. 1984). Also, administration of GHB was reported to increase growth hormone levels in patients (Gessa et al, 1994).

12

A good safety profile for GHB consumption, when used long term for treatment of narcolepsy has been reported. Patients have been safely treated for many years with GHB without development of tolerance (Scharf, 1985). Clinical laboratory tests carried out periodically on many patients have not indicated organ or other toxicities (Lammers, 1993; Scrima, 1990; Scharf, 1985; Mamelack, 1977; Mamelak, 1979; Gessa, 1992). The side effects of GHB treatment have been minimal in incidence and degree of severity, though they include sleepwalking, enuresis, headache, nausea and dizziness (Broughton and Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak et al., 1981; Mamelak et al., 1977; Scrima et al., 1989; Scrima et al., 1990; Scharf et al., 1985). Therefore, it is critical to identify adverse drug-drug interactions to maintain the positive safety profile for GHB.

GHB Pharmacology

GHB has at least two distinct binding sites (See Wu, et al., 2004) in the central nervous system. GHB is an agonist at the GHB receptor, which is excitatory, (Cash et al., 2009) and it is a weak agonist at the GABAB receptor, which is inhibitory. GHB acts in a similar fashion to some neurotransmitters in the mammalian brain and is probably synthesized from GABA in GABAergic neurons, and released when the neurons fire. If taken orally, GABA itself does not effectively cross the blood-brain-barrier. (See Kuriyama et al., 2005).

GHB induces the accumulation of either a derivative of tryptophan or tryptophan itself in the extracellular space, possibly by increasing tryptophan transport across the blood-brain barrier. The blood content of certain neutral amino-acids, including tryptophan, is also increased by peripheral GHB administration. GHB-induced stimulation of tissue serotonin turnover may be due to an increase in tryptophan transport to the brain and in its uptake by serotonergic cells. As the serotonergic system may be involved in the regulation of sleep, mood, and anxiety, the stimulation of this system by high doses of GHB may be involved in certain neuropharmacological events induced by GHB administration.

However, at therapeutic doses, GHB reaches much higher concentrations in the brain and activates GABAB receptors, which are primarily responsible for its sedative effects. (See Dimitrijevic et al., 2005). GHB's sedative effects are blocked by GABAB antagonists.

The role of the GHB receptor in the behavioral effects induced by GHB is more complex. GHB receptors are densely expressed in many areas of the brain, including the cortex and hippocampus, and these are the receptors that GHB displays the highest affinity for. There has been somewhat limited research into the GHB receptor; however, there is evidence that activation of the GHB receptor in some brain areas results in the release of glutamate, the principal excitatory neurotransmitter. Drugs that selectively activate the GHB receptor cause absence seizures in high doses, as do GHB and GABA(B) agonists. (See Banerjee et al., 1995.)

Activation of both the GHB receptor and GABA(B) is responsible for the addictive profile of GHB. GHB's effect on dopamine release is biphasic. (See Hechler et al., 1991). Low concentrations stimulate dopamine release via the GHB receptor. (See Maitre et al., 1990). Higher concentrations inhibit dopamine release via GABA(B) receptors as do other GABA(B) agonists such as baclofen and phenibut. (See Smolders et al., 1995). After an initial phase of inhibition, dopamine release is then increased via the GHB receptor. Both the inhibition and increase of dopamine release by GHB are inhibited by opioid antagonists such as naloxone and naltrexone. Dynorphin may play a role in the inhibition of dopamine release via kappa opioid receptors. (See Mamelak 1989).

US 9,050,302 B2

13

This may explain the paradoxical mix of sedative and stimulatory properties of GHB, as well as the so-called “rebound” effect, experienced by individuals using GHB as a sleeping agent, wherein they awake suddenly after several hours of GHB-induced deep sleep. That is to say that, over time, the concentration of GHB in the system decreases below the threshold for significant GABAB receptor activation and activates predominantly the GHB receptor, leading to wakefulness. However, one embodiment of the present invention is the unexpected discovery that drugs change the PD profile of GHB to alter its effects and its safety profile. Example drugs are include valproate and diclofenac. It is important for efficacy safety purposes that the effect of GHB be maintained consistently and not subject to variation due to the effects of other drugs.

Both of the metabolic breakdown pathways shown for GHB can run in either direction, depending on the concentrations of the substances involved, so the body can make its own GHB either from GABA or from succinic semialdehyde. Under normal physiological conditions, the concentration of GHB in the body is rather low, and the pathways would run in the reverse direction to what is shown here to produce endogenous GHB. However, when GHB is consumed for recreational or health promotion purposes, its concentration in the body is much higher than normal, which changes the enzyme kinetics so that these pathways operate to metabolize GHB rather than produce it.

The pharmacokinetics of GHB have been investigated in alcohol dependent patients (Ferrara et al., 1992) and in normal healthy males (Palatini et al., 1993) after oral administration. GHB possesses a rapid onset and short pharmacological effect (Ferrara et al., 1992; Palatini et al., 1993; Lettieri and Fung, 1978; Arena and Fung, 1980; Roth and Giarman, 1966; Vickers, 1969; Lee, 1977). In alcohol dependent patients, GHB absorption into and elimination from the systemic circulation were fast processes. Virtually no unchanged drug could be recovered in the urine. There were preliminary indications that the pharmacokinetics of GHB might be non-linear or dose-dependent (Ferrara et al., 1992). In the healthy volunteers study, the pharmacokinetics of three rising GHB doses (12.5, 25, and 50 mg/kg) were investigated. These findings indicate that both the oral absorption and elimination processes of GHB were capacity-limited though the degree of dose dependency was moderate (Palatini et al., 1993).

Methods of making GHB salts are described, for example, in U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236, and U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886 which are incorporated herein by reference.

It has been discovered that there are unexpected drug-drug interactions (DDI) between GHB and common drugs frequently prescribed for other ailments. It is one goal of the present invention to warn when those interactions may affect the safety profile of GHB. In one embodiment of the present invention, drugs that may affect GHB administration include valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

GHB is a central nervous system (CNS) depressant. Alcohol and sedative hypnotics are contraindicated in patients who are using GHB. The concurrent use of GHB with other CNS depressants, including but not limited to opioid analgesics, benzodiazepines, sedating antidepressants or antipsychotics, general anesthetics, muscle relaxants, and/or illicit CNS depressants, may increase the risk of respiratory depression, hypotension, profound sedation, syncope, and death. If use of these CNS depressants in combination with GHB is required, dose reduction or discontinuation of one or more CNS depressants (including GHB) should be considered. In addition, if short-term use of an opioid (e.g. post- or periop-

14

erative) is required, interruption of treatment with GHB should be considered. See the package insert for Xyrem®.

GHB may impair respiratory drive, especially with overdoses associated with interactions with other drugs and alcohol. Since valproate may potentiate the effect of GHB, a warning should accompany any use of valproate and GHB as stated herein. The warning should address the use of additional drugs that may further enhance the effect of GHB, such as alcohol or aspirin, for example.

Healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Patients should be queried about potential adverse events, such as excessive daytime sleepiness, CNS depression related events, etc. upon initiation of GHB therapy and periodically thereafter. These queries should include info regarding additional medication such as diclofenac and valproate for example. See the Xyrem® package insert.

In one embodiment described herein, patients are warned that combination of GHB with valproate can increase plasma levels and potentiate the activity of GHB and exacerbate all the effects and adverse event associated with GHB. These effects include the intended effects of drowsiness, sedation, and sleep and typically unintended events such as depressed respiration, CNS depression, excessive drowsiness, hepatic impairment, and depression, among other things.

In another embodiment, diclofenac mitigates and protects against the pharmacodynamic effects the effects of GHB. However, the mixture of GHB and diclofenac does not affect sleepiness and does not make a patient more attentive. Without wishing to be bound by theory, the effects may be due to the interaction between diclofenac and the GHB receptor in lieu of the MCT inhibitor activity.

Typical concentrations of GHB formulations are shown in U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,263,650 and 8,324,275, for example. They include minimum concentrations starting from 150 mg/ml to 450 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) and increasing to 600 mg/ml to 750 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) as a maximum. So, a broad range would include 150-750 mg/ml and any range within the broad range using 10 mg/ml increments. One embodiment of the invention is a range of 350-750 mg/ml and another is 450-550 mg/ml GHB. One embodiment of the present invention uses a GHB formulation with a pH range of 6-10, another uses a pH range of between 6.5-8. For example, a minimum concentration includes 350, 360, 370, 380 mg/ml, and so on up to at least 730, 740, and 750 mg/ml and all concentrations (measured in 10 mg/ml increments in between).

pH adjusting agents can include acids, bases and many of the compounds found in U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650. In some embodiments the pH adjusting agent is an acid selected from the group of: acetic, acetylsalicylic, barbital, barbituric, benzoic, benzyl penicillin, boric, caffeine, carbonic, citric, dichloroacetic, ethylenediaminetetra-acetic acid (EDTA), formic, glycerophosphoric, glycine, lactic, malic, mandelic, monochloroacetic, oxalic, phenobarbital, phenol, picric, propionic, saccharin, salicylic, sodium dihydrogen phosphate, succinic, sulfadiazine, sulfamerazine, sulfapyridine, sulfathiazole, tartaric, trichloroacetic, and the like, or inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, nitric, phosphoric or sulfuric, and the like.

US 9,050,302 B2

15

GHB is commercially available as a sodium salt, however, it can also be formulated as a mixture of salts as shown in U.S. Ser. No. 13/739,886, which is incorporated by reference as stated above. For example, the mixture comprises one, two, or three or more salts selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂). The different salts may be present in different percentages. For example, in certain embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 5% to about 40%, the K.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 10% to about 40%, and the Ca.(GHB)₂ salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 20% to about 80%. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂ salts are present in a wt/wt % ratio of about 11%:39%:50%, respectively.

Valproic Acid

Valproic acid (VPA, also called valproate or divalproex), an acidic chemical compound, has found clinical use as an anticonvulsant and mood-stabilizing drug, primarily in the treatment of epilepsy, bipolar disorder, and, less commonly, major depression. See G. Rosenberg, *Cell. Mol. Life Sci.* 64 (2007) 2090-2103. It is also used to treat migraine headaches and schizophrenia. A typical dose of valproate varies by indication. Dosages for seizures are between 10 to 15 mg/kg/day, with potential increases of 5 to 10 mg/kg/day. VPA is a liquid at room temperature, but it can be reacted with a base such as sodium hydroxide to form the salt sodium valproate, which is a solid. The acid, salt, or a mixture of the two (valproate semisodium, divalproate) are marketed under the various brand names Depakote, Depakote ER, Depakene, Depakene Crono (extended release in Spain), Depacon, Depakine, Valparin and Stavzor.

Valproate is believed to affect the function of the neurotransmitter GABA in the human brain, making it an alternative to lithium salts in treatment of bipolar disorder. Its mechanism of action includes enhanced neurotransmission of GABA (by inhibiting GABA transaminase, which breaks down GABA). However, several other mechanisms of action in neuropsychiatric disorders have been proposed for valproic acid in recent years. See Rosenberg G (2007). "The mechanisms of action of valproate in neuropsychiatric disorders: can we see the forest for the trees?". *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences* 64 (16): 2090-103.

Valproic acid also blocks the voltage-gated sodium channels and T-type calcium channels. These mechanisms make valproic acid a broad-spectrum anticonvulsant drug. Valproic acid is an inhibitor of the enzyme histone deacetylase 1 (HDAC 1), hence it is a histone deacetylase inhibitor. Valproic acid may interact with carbamazepine, as valproates inhibit microsomal epoxide hydrolase (mEH), the enzyme responsible for the breakdown of carbamazepine-10,11 epoxide (the main active metabolite of carbamazepine) into inactive metabolites. (See Gonzalez, Frank J.; Robert H. Tukey (2006). "Drug Metabolism". In Laurence Brunton, John Lazo, Keith Parker (eds.). Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics (11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill. pp. 79.) By inhibiting mEH, valproic acid causes a buildup of the active metabolite, prolonging the effects of carbamazepine and delaying its excretion. Valproic acid also decreases the clearance of amitriptyline and nortriptyline.

Aspirin may decrease the clearance of valproic acid, leading to higher-than-intended serum levels of the anticonvulsant. Also, combining valproic acid with the benzodiazepine

16

clonazepam can lead to profound sedation and increases the risk of absence seizures in patients susceptible to them.

Valproic acid and sodium valproate reduce the apparent clearance of lamotrigine (lamictal). In most patients, the lamotrigine dosage for coadministration with valproate must be reduced to half the monotherapy dosage.

Valproic acid is contraindicated in pregnancy, as it decreases the intestinal reabsorption of folate (folic acid), which leads to neural tube defects. Because of a decrease in folate, megaloblastic anemia may also result. Phenytoin also decreases folate absorption, which may lead to the same adverse effects as valproic acid.

Valproic acid, 2-propylvaleric acid, is synthesized by the alkylation of cyanoacetic ester with two moles of propylbromide, to give dipropylcyanoacetic ester. Hydrolysis and decarboxylation of the carboethoxy group gives dipropylacetone, which is hydrolyzed into valproic acid. See U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,325,361 and 4,155,929 and GB Pat. Nos. 980279 and 1522450. See also, T. R. Henry, "The History of Valproate in Clinical Neuroscience." *Psychopharmacology bulletin* (2003) 37 (Suppl 2):5-16.

Diclofenac

Diclofenac is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) taken to reduce inflammation and as an analgesic reducing pain in certain conditions. Diclofenac is used to treat pain, inflammatory disorders, and dysmenorrhea and is a commonly used NSAID. See Auler et al., *Brazilian Jour. Med. Bio. Res.*, (1977) 30:369-374 and Hasan, et al., and *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, vol. 18, No. 1, January 2005, pp 18-24 both are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

The name is derived from its chemical name: 2-(2,6-dichloranilino)phenylacetic acid, it may be supplied as either the sodium or potassium salt. Diclofenac is available as a generic drug in a number of formulations; including Dichlofenac diethylammonium applied topically to joints. Over-the-counter (OTC) use is approved in some countries for minor aches and pains and fever associated with common infections.

Diclofenac is typically absorbed readily, but absorption is delayed upon administration with food. Its half-life varies from 1 to 3 hours with mean peak plasma levels of about 0.5 ug/ml to 1.0 ug/ml after 2 hours of a single dose of 25 mg. Diclofenac binds to human serum proteins, specifically albumin. See Hasan et al 2005.

Ibuprofen

Ibuprofen (from iso-butyl-propanoic-phenolic acid) is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) widely prescribed for pain relief, fever reduction, and swelling. Ibuprofen was derived from propanoic acid. Originally marketed as Brufen, ibuprofen is available under a variety of popular trademarks, including Motrin, Nurofen, Advil, and Nuprin. Ibuprofen is used primarily for fever, pain, dysmenorrhea and inflammatory diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis. It is also used for pericarditis and patent ductus arteriosus. It is a commonly used drug commercially available over the counter.

Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as ibuprofen work by inhibiting the enzyme cyclooxygenase (COX), which converts arachidonic acid to prostaglandin H₂ (PGH₂). PGH₂, in turn, is converted by other enzymes to several other prostaglandins (which are mediators of pain, inflammation, and fever) and to thromboxane A₂ (which stimulates platelet aggregation, leading to the formation of blood clots).

Like aspirin and indomethacin, ibuprofen is a nonselective COX inhibitor, in that it inhibits two isoforms of cyclooxygenase, COX-1 and COX-2. The analgesic, antipyretic, and

US 9,050,302 B2

17

anti-inflammatory activity of NSAIDs appears to operate mainly through inhibition of COX-2, whereas inhibition of COX-1 would be responsible for unwanted effects on the gastrointestinal tract. However, the role of the individual COX isoforms in the analgesic, anti-inflammatory, and gastric damage effects of NSAIDs is uncertain and different compounds cause different degrees of analgesia and gastric damage.

The synthesis of this compound consisted of six steps, started with the Friedel-Crafts acetylation of isobutylbenzene. Reaction with ethyl chloroacetate (Darzens reaction) gave the α,β -epoxy ester, which was hydrolyzed and decarboxylated to the aldehyde. Reaction with hydroxylamine gave the oxime, which was converted to the nitrile, then hydrolyzed to the desired acid. See U.S. Pat. No. 3,385,886.

An improved synthesis by BHC required only three steps. After a similar acetylation, hydrogenation with Raney nickel gave the alcohol, which underwent palladium-catalyzed carbonylation.

Valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen are monocarboxylate transporter inhibitors. One embodiment of the present application is a method to improve safety by monitoring the combination of these compounds with GHB.

Monocarboxylate Transporters

Monocarboxylate transporters, or MCTs, constitute a family of proton-linked plasma membrane transporters that carry molecules having one carboxylate group (monocarboxylates), such as lactate and pyruvate, across biological membranes. See Halestrap A P, Meredith D (2004). "The SLC16 gene family—from monocarboxylate transporters (MCTs) to aromatic amino acid transporters and beyond". *Pflugers Arch.* 447 (5): 619-28.

MCTs are a series of transporters which move chemicals in body tissues, such as kidneys, blood/brain barrier, intestines, etc. They can transport chemical compounds back from urine to create a higher concentration in the blood than the urine. They can be used to treat an overdose or to prevent excretion of a compound. They can also be used to prevent absorption or transport into the brain or gut, or excretion via the urine. Exemplary MCT inhibitors include valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

Concomitant Administration of GHB and Drug-Drug Interactions

In one embodiment of the present invention the concomitant administration of MCT inhibitors, such as either valproate, diclofenac, or ibuprofen with GHB can effect GHB levels or activity and alter the GHB safety and efficacy profile to create an unsafe condition. For example, valproate can increase or prolong GHB effects and diclofenac can reduce or shorten GHB effects. For example, if the effects are increased, then there could be an increase of adverse events associated with too much GHB. Also, the effect of GHB may be prolonged to cause side effects, such as excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS), to last into the daytime. Prolongation of the effect would counter the purpose for providing the GHB and could create an unsafe situation for patients who wish to be alert and who may be engaged in otherwise dangerous activity. This concomitant administration can transform an otherwise safe dose of GHB into one with safety concerns. It is a health risk to patients and a medical challenge to health care workers.

The drug-drug interaction could also reduce the effects of GHB by altering its blood levels or otherwise. Reduction in the GHB level may also provide an unsafe condition due to excessive daytime sleepiness. In each situation, where GHB is increased, decreased or excessively cleared, those drug-

18

drug interactions need to be identified to a health care worker to adjust the dose of GHB or discontinue the use of the other compound.

As recited on the product insert for Xyrem®[®], healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB.

In some embodiments in which diclofenac or valproate is discontinued to avoid an adverse drug interaction, they are discontinued within at least 3 days prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In various embodiments, diclofenac or valproate is discontinued within at least 4 days, or at least 5 days, or at least 6 days, or at least 7 days (or one week), or at least 8 days, or at least 9 days, or at least 10 days, or at least 11 days, or at least 12 days, or at least 13 days, or at least 14 days (or two weeks), or at least 15 days, or at least 16 days, or at least 17 days, or at least 18 days, or at least 19 days, or at least 20 days, or at least 21 days (or three weeks) prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In some embodiments, the diclofenac or valproate is discontinued no later than 2 weeks or 1 week before starting GHB therapy.

In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy when valproate is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient downward relative to a previously administered dosage in the patient, so the dose does not result in an increased exposure to GHB. In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy when diclofenac is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient upward relative to a previously administered dosage in the patient, so the dose results in an effective exposure to GHB.

Thus, the present invention includes a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB), wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate such additive effects.

In one embodiment of the present invention, a reduced amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with valproate. In another embodiment of the present invention, an increased amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with diclofenac.

When valproate is concomitantly administered with GHB, the amount of GHB can be reduced at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 9 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to reduce the normal dose by 15% is 7.65 g/day. The GHB dose reduction may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. A typical adult range of doses for GHB are between 4.5 or 6 g as a minimum and 8 or 10 g/day as a maximum divided into two doses. The dose recommended on the package insert and approved by the FDA is between 4.5 and 9.0 g/day. Typical exemplary paediatric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 6 g/day for pediatric patients aged 0-6 years. Typical exemplary paediat-

US 9,050,302 B2

19

ric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 9 g/day for pediatric patients aged 7-17 years. However, these ranges are not absolute and can be increased or decreased by 1-2 grams in either direction. One dose is typically administered prior to bed (night time sleep) and another dose administered 1-2 hours later. See the Xyrem® package insert (Xyrem® is a registered trademark of Jazz Pharmaceuticals plc or its subsidiaries). Either or both of the multiple doses may be reduced to present a safer administration profile. For example, the first dose may be reduced by the numbers referred to above or the second may be reduced by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day may be reduced at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary decrease in an adult dose would be to reduce the maximum dose to less than 8.5, 8, 7.5, 7, 6.5, 6, 5.5, 5, 4.5, 4, 3.5, 3 g/day and so on. The minimum dose will be reduced accordingly to 4, 3.5, 3, 2.5, 2, and so on.

In one embodiment of the present invention, diclofenac may dampen or delay the effect of GHB upon a patient during concomitant administration. In one embodiment, it may be useful to increase the amount of GHB that is administered to the patient. For example, GHB may be increased at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 10 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to increase the normal dose by 15% is 11.5 g/day. The GHB dose increase may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. Either, or both, of the multiple doses may be increased to present a safer administration profile. For example, the first dose may be increased by the numbers referred to above or the second may be increased by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day may be increased at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary decrease in an adult dose would be to increase the minimum dose to 5, 5.5, 6, 6.5, 7, 7.5, 8, 8.5 g/day and so on. An increase in the maximum dose would be at least 9.5, 10, 10.5, 11, 11.5, 12, 12.5, 13, 13.5, 14 g/day and so on.

In another aspect, a package or kit is provided comprising GHB, optionally in a container, and a package insert, package label, instructions or other labelling including any one, two, three or more of the following information or recommendations: (a) use of diclofenac or valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors, such as diclofenac or valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in exposure to GHB, (d) concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in a decrease in exposure to GHB, and/or (e) MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

Alternatively, diclofenac can be administered to counteract the effects of GHB toxicity using a reverse of the numerical relationships above. Similarly, valproate can be used to increase the effects of GHB in patients that cannot take higher amounts of GHB. In this regard, the present invention includes methods for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that potential toxic effects of GHB are reduced. The present invention also includes methods for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

20

The examples below, which show drug interaction studies in healthy adults, demonstrated those instances, test conditions or metrics which showed a distinction between GHB and either of the test compounds, diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen. Additionally, drug interaction studies in healthy adults demonstrated pharmacokinetic or clinically significant pharmacodynamic interactions between GHB and diclofenac or valproate.

10

Example 1

This study was designed to compare Pharmacokinetic (PK) and Pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® sodium oxysorbate (GHB) with and without concomitant administration of diclofenac. A crossover design was employed to allow within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with diclofenac. The PK and PD effects of Xyrem® upon those of diclofenac were also studied.

The PD parameters included a selection of automated tests of attention, information processing, working memory and skilled coordination from the CDR System. (Rapeport et al, 1996ab; Williams et al, 1996). (Wesnes et al, 1997). (Wesnes et al, 2000) (Modi et al, 2007).

Methods

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, three-period, crossover study in healthy subjects. 24 subjects were recruited to ensure that 18 completed the study. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eligible subjects were entered into the study and received one of the following treatments per period, in randomized order:

Diclofenac placebo administered as one capsule qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, one diclofenac placebo capsule administered at -1 h and 3 h, and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Diclofenac administered as 50 mg immediate-release (IR) tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Diclofenac administered as 50 mg IR tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and Xyrem® placebo (volume equivalent to 3 g of Xyrem® oral solution) administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Subjects were randomized to one of the above treatments on Day 1, crossed over to another treatment on Day 6, and crossed over again to the remaining treatment on Day 11 (Table 1). Subjects were dosed in groups of up to 12. A 2-day washout period followed each of the treatment periods. The treatments were as follows: A=Diclofenac placebo (qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® two 3 g doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. C=Diclofenac (50 mg qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® placebo two doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time

US 9,050,302 B2

21

(SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

Results

Power of attention-On this measure of focussed attention and information processing Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 0.5 h; while the smaller impairments with the combination narrowly missed significance at 1 and 4.5 h. Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac also resulted in impairments at two timepoints compared to diclofenac alone which at 6.5 h was significant and a trend at 8 h. See FIG. 1 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy-On this measure of focussed attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 2 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time-On this measure of focussed attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 3 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

Choice Reaction Time Mean-Impairments to this measure of attention and information processing were significantly smaller than with Xyrem® alone when co-dosed with diclofenac during the hour following the first dose of Xyrem®. See FIG. 4 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

While diclofenac alone had no effect on sleepiness or cognitive function, when co-dosed with Xyrem® it significantly reduced the effects of the compound on Power of Attention and two of the contributing scores, simple and choice reaction time; these effects being seen during the hour after the first dose of Xyrem®. On the other hand, there was no evidence on any measure of greater cognitive impairment or sleepiness when the two compounds were co-dosed.

The extent of the reductions in the impairments to the ability to focus attention and efficiently process information were quite notable, and likely to be of clinical relevance. It is interesting that protective effect of diclofenac was not seen on the subjects ratings of alertness, such a dissociation having been seen previously with haloperidol in healthy elderly volunteers (Beuzan et al, 1991).

In conclusion, evidence of an interaction was seen in this study over the hour following the first dose of Xyrem® on the study days, the impairments being notably smaller when diclofenac was co-dosed with Xyrem®. There was no interaction however on the feelings of sleepiness in the subjects.

Example 2

This study is designed to compare the pharmacokinetic (PK) and pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. The crossover design allows within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time (SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

22

The objectives of this study were to evaluate the PK and PD of Xyrem® co-administered with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets and to evaluate and compare the safety and tolerability of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets.

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, five-period, crossover study in healthy male subjects. The study was conducted in approximately 24 healthy subjects to ensure completion of 16 subjects. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eligible subjects were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 1 and 2; were dosed with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets for 10 consecutive days in Period 3; and while continuing to take divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 4 and 5 (Table 1).

Periods 1 and 2:

Subjects were randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo 4 hours apart in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 AM (first dose) and 1 PM (second dose) on Days 1 and 3. PK and PD parameters were evaluated during the 24 hours postdose.

Blood samples (4 mL) for sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at predose and at specified time-points up to 12 hours after the first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo on Days 1 and 3. A PD Battery including the Karolinska Sleepiness Scale, Simple Reaction Time task, Digit Vigilance task, Choice Reaction Time task, Tracking task, and Numeric Working Memory task was administered at planned timepoints up to X hours after first dose (X hours after second dose), and safety were monitored at specified timepoints on Days 1 and 3 as well as throughout the periods.

Period 3:

All subjects received divalproex sodium extended-release tablets 1250 mg at approximately 8 AM on Days 5 through 14. Blood samples (4 mL) for valproic acid concentrations were collected before the divalproex sodium dose (to determine trough concentration for assessment of steady state) on Days 13 and 14. Safety was monitored at specified timepoints as well as throughout the period.

Periods 4 and 5:

Subjects continued taking 1250 mg divalproex sodium extended-release tablets at approximately 8 AM on Days 15 through 18. Subjects were also randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 am (first dose) and 1 pm (second dose) on Days 15 and 18. The first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken approximately 1 hour after dosing with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, and the second dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken 4 hours after the first Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose.

Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at pre Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose and at specified timepoints after the first Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo dose on Days 15 and 18. Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma valproic acid concentrations were collected pre divalproex sodium dose and at specified timepoints after the dose of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets on Day 15 and 18.

The PD battery was administered on Day 15 and 18, and safety was monitored at specified times on Days 15 and 18 as well as throughout the periods.

The treatments were as follows: A=Xyrem®, two 3 g doses, 4 hours apart at approximately 9 AM (1st dose) and 1

US 9,050,302 B2

23

PM (2nd dose); B=Xyrem® placebo, two doses, 4 hours apart; and C=Divalproex sodium 1250 mg, once a day at approximately 8 AM.

Results

The results below show the tests in which GHB administration was affected by concomitant administration of any of three MCT inhibitors, such as valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

Continuity of Attention

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 hours and 8 hours. See FIG. 5 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population).

Simple Reaction Time Mean

At 1 hour and 4 hours, Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together produced statistically reliably greater impairments than Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 6, which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy

At 2.5 and 4 hours Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together were statistically reliably different greater impairment to Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 7, which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

Tracking Distance from Target

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a statistically significant difference by a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 and 8 hours. See FIG. 8 which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a difference at 4.5 through 8 hours. See FIG. 9, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed statistically significant differences at 2.5, 5 and 8 hours when the combination produced greater impairment. See FIG. 10, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

In addition, it was observed that renal excretion of GHB increase 30% upon co-administration of Valproate.

We also found pk changes which were consistent with the inhibition of GHB dehydrogenase. This effect will increase the exposure of GHB to the subject and increase Cmax and AUC about 15%.

The combination of Xyrem® dosed with divalproex sodium was compared to divalproex sodium alone, more consistent statistically significant impairments over time were seen with the combination, than when Xyrem® was compared to its placebo, indicating that the effects of co-administration, when they appeared, were in the direction of increased impairments.

As has been seen previously, Xyrem® induces sleepiness and produces impairments to attention, working memory and performance on a tracking task in healthy volunteers. Divalproex sodium alone showed no consistent or notable effects on cognitive function or sleepiness. There were occasions when co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex sodium produced greater deficits than Xyrem® alone. Further the

24

combination also produced more consistent impairments when compared with divalproex sodium alone, than did Xyrem® when compared to its placebo. Thus this study has found evidence that co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex produces greater impairments to cognitive function and sleepiness than were seen with Xyrem® alone.

Example 3

The effects of Ibuprofen were evaluated when combined with Xyrem® in a manner similar to the above. No differences were seen using the metrics above for Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), and the following CDR System tasks: Simple Reaction Time, Digit Vigilance, Choice Reaction Time, Tracking and Numeric Working Memory. However, it was observed that renal excretion of Xyrem® doubled upon concomitant administration of Ibuprofen and Xyrem®.

All publications and patent applications cited in this specification are herein incorporated by reference as if each individual publication or patent application were specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference. Although the foregoing has been described in some detail by way of illustration and example for purposes of clarity of understanding, it will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art in light of the teachings of the specification that certain changes and modifications may be made thereto without departing from the spirit or scope of the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient who is currently taking gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof comprising:

administering to the patient a dose of divalproex sodium concomitant to a dose of GHB or salt thereof; and reducing the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient by at least 20% wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is between 4.5 g to 9 g.

2. The method of claim 1 further comprising monitoring, patient response and adjusting the GHB dose to maintain the effect of the GHB.

3. The method of claim 1 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

4. The method of claim 3 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced to lower than 3.6 g.

5. The method of claim 1 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 6 g.

6. The method of claim 1 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 7.5 g.

7. The method of claim 1 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 9 g.

8. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient who is currently taking gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof comprising:

reducing the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient by at least 20% during concomitant administration of divalproex sodium, compared to the daily dosage amount of between 4.5 and 9 g of GHB or salt thereof currently used in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium.

US 9,050,302 B2

25

9. The method of claim **8**, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced by at least 20% compared to the manufacturer's, recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof.

10. The method of claim **8** further comprising monitoring patient response and adjusting the GHB dose to maintain the effect of the GHB.

11. The method of claim **8** wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

12. The method of claim **11** wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced to lower than 3.6 g.

13. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium comprising:

administering to the patient a starting daily dosage amount of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof that is 20% lower than a manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of between 4.5 and 9 g in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium.

14. The method of claim **13** wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 4.5 g.

15. The method of claim **14** wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is divided in two equal doses.

16. The method of claim **15** wherein the first dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

17. The method of claim **15** wherein the second dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

18. The method of claim **13** further comprising monitoring patient response and adjusting the GHB dose to treat the patient.

19. The method of claim **13** wherein the manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

20. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium comprising:

administering to the patient a starting daily dosage amount of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof that is 20% lower than the starting daily dosage amount of between 4.5 to 9 g GHB that would otherwise have been

26

recommended to the patient if the patient was not currently taking divalproex sodium.

21. The method of claim **20** wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium is lower than 4.5 g.

22. The method of claim **21** wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium is divided in two equal doses.

23. The method of claim **22** wherein the first dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

24. The method of claim **23** wherein the second dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

25. The method of claim **20** further comprising monitoring patient response and adjusting the GHB dose to treat the patient.

26. The method of claim **20** wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof that would otherwise have been recommended to the patient if the patient was not currently taking divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

27. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium comprising the steps of:

administering to the patient a daily dosage amount of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof that is lower than 4.5 g.

28. The method of claim **27** wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is divided in two equal doses.

29. The method of claim **28** wherein the first dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

30. The method of claim **28** wherein the second dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

31. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium comprising the steps of:

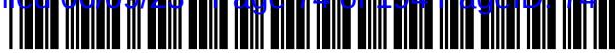
administering to the patient a dose of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof that is lower than 2.25 g;

and

administering to the patient a second dose of GHB or salt thereof that is lower than 2.25 g.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT C



US009486426B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Eller

(10) **Patent No.:** US 9,486,426 B2
(45) **Date of Patent:** *Nov. 8, 2016

(54) **METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS**

(71) Applicant: **Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited**, Dublin (IE)

(72) Inventor: **Mark Eller**, Redwood City, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited**, Dublin (IE)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **14/707,914**

(22) Filed: **May 8, 2015**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2016/0015662 A1 Jan. 21, 2016

5,990,162 A	11/1999	Scharf
6,014,631 A	1/2000	Teagarden et al.
6,067,524 A	5/2000	Byerly et al.
6,112,182 A	8/2000	Akers et al.
6,204,245 B1	3/2001	Siegel et al.
6,317,719 B1	11/2001	Schriger et al.
6,356,873 B1	3/2002	Teagarden et al.
6,472,431 B2	10/2002	Cook et al.
6,780,889 B2	8/2004	Cook et al.
7,015,200 B2	3/2006	Mamelak et al.
7,072,840 B1	7/2006	Mayaud
7,262,219 B2	8/2007	Cook et al.
7,572,605 B2	8/2009	Mamelak et al.
7,668,730 B2	2/2010	Reardan et al.
7,765,106 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.
7,765,107 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.
7,797,171 B2	9/2010	Reardan et al.
7,851,506 B2	12/2010	Cook et al.
7,895,059 B2	2/2011	Reardan et al.
8,263,650 B2	9/2012	Cook et al.
8,324,275 B2	12/2012	Cook et al.
8,591,922 B1	11/2013	Allphin et al.
8,772,306 B1	7/2014	Eller
8,952,029 B2	2/2015	Eller
9,050,302 B2	6/2015	Eller
2003/0171270 A1	9/2003	Civelli et al.
2006/0018933 A1	1/2006	Vaya et al.
2008/0293698 A1	11/2008	Johnson
2009/0137565 A1	5/2009	Frucht

(Continued)

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation of application No. 13/837,714, filed on Mar. 15, 2013, now Pat. No. 9,050,302.

(60) Provisional application No. 61/771,557, filed on Mar. 1, 2013, provisional application No. 61/777,873, filed on Mar. 12, 2013.

(51) **Int. Cl.**

A01N 37/36 (2006.01)
A61K 31/19 (2006.01)
A61K 31/616 (2006.01)
A61K 31/20 (2006.01)
A61K 31/33 (2006.01)
A61K 31/505 (2006.01)
A61K 31/55 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.**

CPC *A61K 31/19* (2013.01); *A61K 31/20* (2013.01); *A61K 31/33* (2013.01); *A61K 31/505* (2013.01); *A61K 31/55* (2013.01); *A61K 31/616* (2013.01)

(58) **Field of Classification Search**

USPC 514/188.3
IPC A61K 31/19
See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,051,619 A	8/1962	Laborit
3,325,361 A	6/1967	Meunier
3,385,886 A	5/1968	Nicholson et al.
4,155,929 A	5/1979	Chignac et al.
4,393,236 A	7/1983	Klosa
4,983,632 A	1/1991	Gessa et al.
5,380,937 A	1/1995	Koehler et al.
5,758,095 A	5/1998	Albaum et al.
5,833,599 A	11/1998	Schriger et al.
5,845,255 A	12/1998	Mayaud

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

DE	237 309	5/1985
GB	922 029	3/1963

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

U.S. Appl. No. 61/317,212, filed Mar. 24, 2010, Allphin et al.
“Disulfiram/sodium oxybate/valproate interaction,” *Reactions Weekly*, (Jul. 2011), p. 18, vol. 1361, No. 1.
“Xyrem: EPAR—Procedural steps taken before authorization,” (Aug. 9, 2006), 1 page. Available at http://www.ema.europa.eu/ema/index.jsp?cu_rl=pages/med_ici_nes/h_uma/n/medicines/000593/h_uman_medO01163.jsp&mid=WCOB01ac058001d124. Downloaded Jan. 28, 2015.
“Xyrem®,” The Pharmaceutical Journal, (Feb. 18, 2006). Available at: <http://www.pharmaceutical-journal.com/new-medicines/-/spec-changes/-/counter-products/-/discontinued-products/-/ordyct-miscellany/20016677.article#xyrem>. Downloaded Mar. 5, 2015.
“Xyrem®: Procedural steps taken and scientific information after the authorisation,” European Medicine Agency, (2014), pp. 1-9.

(Continued)

Primary Examiner — Shirley V Gembeh

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm* — Jones Day

(57) **ABSTRACT**

One embodiment of the present invention is to improve the safety and efficacy of the administration of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient. It has been discovered that the concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor, such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, will affect GHB administration. For example, it has been discovered that diclofenac lowers the effect of GHB in the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition. Furthermore, it has been discovered that valproate increases the effect of GHB on the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition.

US 9,486,426 B2

Page 2

(56)

References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

2010/0112056 A1	5/2010	Rourke et al.
2010/0160299 A1	6/2010	Baker, Jr. et al.
2011/0237664 A1	9/2011	Dalton et al.
2012/0076865 A1	3/2012	Allphin et al.
2014/0249222 A1	9/2014	Eller

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

GB	980 279	1/1965
GB	1 522 450	8/1978
RU	2232012	7/2004
WO	WO 2006/053186	5/2006
WO	WO 2010/053691	5/2010
WO	WO 2011/119839	9/2011
WO	WO 2011/139271	11/2011
WO	WO 2012/037457	3/2012

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Abbvie Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Depakote® (Divalproex Sodium) Tablets for Oral Use: FDA Approved Labeling Text," (Oct. 7, 2011).
- Arena et al., "Absorption of Sodium γ -Hydroxybutyrate and Its Prodrug γ -Butyrolactone: Relationship between in Vitro Transport and in Vivo Absorption," *J. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 69(3): 356-358, 1980.
- Auler et al., "Diclofenac Plasma Protein Binding: PK-PD Modelling in Cardiac Patients Submitted to Cardiopulmonary Bypass," *Braz. J. Med. Bio. Res.*, 30: 369-374, 1997.
- Banerjee et al., "Presynaptic Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB) and Gamma-Aminobutyric Acid_B (GABA_B) Receptor-Mediated Release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in Rat Thalamic Ventrobasal Nucleus (VB): A Possible Mechanism for the Generation of Absence-Like Seizures Induced by GHB," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 273 (3): 1534-1543, 1995.
- Bédard et al., "Nocturnal γ -Hydroxybutyrate Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients," *Clin. Neuropharmacol.*, 12(1): 29-36, 1989.
- Bhatiacharya et al., "GHB (γ -Hydroxybutyrate) Carrier-Mediated Transport across the Blood-Brain Barrier," *The Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, 311 (1): 92-98, 2004.
- Broughton et al., "The Treatment of Narcolepsy-Cataplexy with Nocturnal Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate," *Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques*, 6(1): 1-6, 1979.
- Cagnin et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid-Induced Psychosis and Seizures," *Epilepsy & Behavior*, 21:203-205, 2011.
- Cash et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Function Studied by the Modulation of Nitric Oxide Synthase Activity in Rat Frontal Cortex Punches," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 58 (11): 1815-1819, 1999.
- Chateauvieux et al., "Molecular and Therapeutic Potential and Toxicity of Valproic Acid," *Journal of Biomedicine and Biotechnology*, (2010), pp. 1-18.
- Notification Letter dated Aug. 19, 2014, from Ranbaxy Laboratories Limited to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: "Notice of Paragraph IV Certification Regarding NDA 021196 Xyrem® Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/mL Oral Solution with respect to U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,780,889; 7,262,219; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 7,851,605; 7,895,059; 8,263,650; 8,324,275; 8,457,988; 8,589,182; 8,731,963; and 8,772,306".
- Notification Letter dated Aug. 5, 2014, from Par Pharmaceutical, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution (XYREM®); U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; Notice of Paragraph IV Certification.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 16, 2015, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,731,963; 8,772,306; and 8,859,619, 22 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 9, 2015, from Roxane Laboratories to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Patent Notice Pursuant to Section 505U)(2)(B)(ii) [21 USC Section 355U)(2)(B)(ii)] for U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,731,963; 8,772,306; and 8,859,619, 32 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Oct. 29, 2014, from Watson Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: "Notification of Certification for U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,780,889; 7,262,219; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 7,851,605; 7,895,059; 8,263,650; 8,324,275; 8,457,988; 8,589,182; 8,731,963; and 8,772,306; Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(iv) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act".
- Dimitrijevic et al., "Drosophila GABA_B Receptors are Involved in Behavioral Effects of γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB)," *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 519 (3): 246-252, 2005.
- Fides, "Solutions of 4-hydroxybutyric acid salts for injection," Chem Abstract ES302338, Laboratorio M. Cuatescases, SA (2011), 2 pages.
- Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Clinical Pharmacology Division; "Guidance for Industry: Drug Interaction Studies—Study Design, Data Analysis, and Implications for Dosing and Labeling" (Feb. 2012).
- Fuller et al., "From Club Drug to Orphan Drug: Sodium Oxybate (Xyrem) for the Treatment of Cataplexy," *Pharmacotherapy*, 23(9): 1205-1209, 2003.
- Gallimberti et al., "Clinical Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal," *Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci*, 244: 113-114, 1994.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Alcohol Withdrawal Syndrome," *The Lancet*, Sep. 30: 787-789, 1989.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal Syndrome," *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 9(1): 77-81, 1993.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence: A Double-Blind Study," *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, 16(4): 673-676, 1992.
- Gerra et al., "Flumazenil Effects on Growth Hormone Response to Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid," *Internat. Clin. Psychopharm.*, 9: 211-215, 1994.
- Gessa et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence," *Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement*, 15 (Suppl. 1, Pt. A): 303A-304A, 1992.
- Gonzalez et al., "Drug Metabolism," in *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* (11th ed.), Brunton et al. (eds.), New York: McGraw-Hill. pp. 71-91, 2006.
- Halestrap et al., "The SLC16 Gene Family—From Monocarboxylate Transporters (MCTs) to Aromatic Amino Acid Transporters and Beyond," *Pflugers Arch.*, 447 (5): 619-628, 2004.
- Hasan et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Diclofenac Sodium in Normal Man," *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 18(1): 18-24, 2005.
- Hasenbos et al., "Anaesthesia for bullectomy," *Anaesthesia*, 40: 977-980, 1985.
- Hechler et al., "Extracellular Events Induced by γ -Hydroxybutyrate in Striatum: A Microdialysis Study," *J. Neurochem.*, 56 (3): 938-944, 1991.
- Hechler et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyrate Conversion into GABA Induces Displacement of GABAa Binding that is Blocked by Valproate and Ethosuximide," *The Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, 281(2): 753-760, 1997.
- Henry, Thomas R., "The History of Divalproex in Clinical Neuroscience," *Psychopharmacology Bulletin*, 37 (Suppl 2): 5-16, 2003.
- International Searching Authority, "International Search Report, mailed Jun. 24, 2014 in International Patent Application No. PCT/US2014/019217."
- International Searching Authority, "Written Opinion, mailed Jun. 24, 2014 in International Patent Application No. PCT/US2014/019217."
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," Xyrem®, 30 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_product_Information/buman/000593/WC500057103.pdf. Downloaded Mar. 6, 2015.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "XYREM® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text" (Nov. 18, 2005).
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Xyrem® FDA Approved Label (Jul. 17, 2002), 95 pages.

US 9,486,426 B2

Page 3

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," XYREM® SmPC European Package Insert available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Product_Information/human/000593/WC500057103.pdf (downloaded May 3, 2013).
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "XYREM® (sodium oxybate) oral solution Prescribing Information," XYREM® US Package Insert available at <http://www.xyrem.com/xyrem-pi.pdf> (downloaded May 3, 2013).
- Kuriyama et al., "Blood-Brain Barrier to H³-γ-Aminobutyric Acid in Normal and Amino Oxyacetic Acid-Treated Animals," *Neuropharmacology*, 10: 103-108, 1971.
- Laborit, H., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semialdehyde and Sleep," Laboratoire d'Eutonologie, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France, pp. 257-274, 1973.
- Ladinsky et al., Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System, *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacol.*, 322: 42-48, 1983.
- Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and Narcolepsy: A Double-Blind Placebo-Controlled Study," *Sleep*, 16(3): 216-220, 1993.
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep-Triggering Mechanisms," *Sleep*, 13(1): 24-30, 1990.
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate: A Double-Blind Study of Normal Subjects," *Sleep Research*, 17: 99, 1988 (abstract).
- Lee, C.R., "Evidence for the β-Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans," *Biochem. Med.*, 17, 284-291: 1977.
- Lettieri et al., "Improved Pharmacological Activity via Pro-Drug Modification: Comparative Pharmacokinetics of Sodium γ-Hydroxybutyrate and γ-Butyrolactone," *Research Communications in Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology*, 22(1): 107-118, 1978.
- Lyng, "Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB): Mechanisms of Central Nervous System Toxicity," Baylor University, *ProQuest*, UMI Dissertations Publishing, 2006, 3213445.
- Maitre et al., "A Specific γ-Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Ligand Possesses both Antagonistic and Anticonvulsant Properties," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 255 (2): 657-663, 1990.
- Maitre et al., "Mécanismes d'action d'un medicament détourné: le γ-hydroxybutyrate" ('Amechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse') (in French), *Med Sci (Paris)*, 21 (3): 284-9, 2005.
- Mamelak et al., "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," *The Lancet*, 302 (7824): 328-329, 1973.
- Mamelak et al., "The Effects of γ-Hydroxybutyrate on Sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 12(2): 273-288, 1977.
- Mamelak et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy and Sleep Apnea with Gammahydroxybutyrate: A Clinical and Polysomnographic Case Study," *Sleep*, 4(1): 105-111, 1981.
- Mamelak et al., "Narcolepsy: A Family Study," *Biological Psychiatry*, 14: 821-834, 1979.
- Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," *Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews*, 13: 187-198, 1989.
- Modi et al., "Dapoxetine has no Pharmacokinetic or Cognitive Interactions with Ethanol in Healthy Male Volunteers," *J. Clin. Pharmac.*, 47(3): 315-322, 2007.
- Nema et al., "Excipients and Their Use in Injectable Products," *PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol.*, 51(4): 166-171, 1997.
- Orphan Medical, Inc., NDA 21196, Major Amendment, filed Mar. 26, 2001, "Review and Evaluation of Clinical Data," http://www.fda.gov/ohrms/dockets/ac/01/briefing/3754b1_02_section%204.PDF (as downloaded on Mar. 4, 2014).
- Palatini et al., "Dose-Dependent Absorption and Elimination of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Healthy Volunteers," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 45: 353-356, 1993.
- Physicians' Desk Reference, 65th ed. (2011), pp. 1698-1703 (Xyrem).
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on Digoxin Pharmacokinetics and Electrocardiographic Findings," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 16-19, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Carbamazepine," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 20-23, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Phenytoin," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 24-28, 1996.
- Rosenberg, G., "The Mechanisms of Action of Valproate in Neuropsychiatric Disorders: Can We See the Forest for the Trees?" *Cel. Mol. Life Sci.*, 64 (16): 2090-2103, 2007.
- Roth et al., "γ-Butyrolactone and γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid—I Distribution and Metabolism," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 15: 1333-1348, 1966.
- Roth et al., "γ-Butyrolactone and γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid—II The Pharmacologically Active Form," *Int. J. Neuropharmacol.*, 5: 421-428, 1966.
- Sanofi Aventis, "Prescribing Information for EPILIM," (Sep. 12, 2011), pp. 1-18.
- Scharf et al., "The Effects and Effectiveness of γ-Hydroxybutyrate in Patients with Narcolepsy," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 46(6): 222-225, 1985.
- Scrima et al., "Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate versus Placebo in Treating Narcolepsy-Cataplexy: Double-Blind Subjective Measured," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 26: 331-343, 1989.
- Scrima et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate Effects on Cataplexy and Sleep Attacks in Narcoleptics," *Sleep Res.*, 16: 134, 1987, Abstract.
- Scrima et al., "The Effects of γ-Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," *Sleep*, 13(6): 479-490, 1990.
- Sériès et al., "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 1378-1383, 1992.
- Smolders et al., "Tonic GABA-ergic Modulation of Striatal Dopamine Release Studied by in Vivo Microdialysis in the Freely Moving Rat," *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 284 (1-2): 83-91, 1995.
- Snead et al., "Effect of Acute and Chronic Anticonvulsant Administration of Endogenous γ-Hydroxybutyrate in a Rat Brain," *Neuropharmacology*, (1980), pp. 47-52, vol. 19.
- Strong, "γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid and Intracranial Pressure," *The Lancet*, vol. 1: No. 8389, 1984.
- Thorpy et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy with Cataplexy an Overview of the Disease and a Report on Sodium Oxybate Dosage and Prescribing Information," *European Neurological Review*, 3(1): 84-88, 2008.
- United States Patent and Trademark Office, Report on the filing or determination of an action regarding a patent; documents filed Sep. 18, 2014, Oct. 2, 2014, and Oct. 7, 2014, in U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 5 pages.
- Van Den Bogert et al., "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man," *Anesthesiology and Intensive Care Medicine*, 110: 55-64, 1978.
- Vickers, M.D., "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," *Int. Anesth. Clinic*, 7: 75-89, 1969.
- Waszkielewicz et al., "γ-Hydrobutyric Acid (GHB) and its Chemical Modifications: A Review of the GHergic System," *Pol. J. Pharmacol.*, 56 (1): 43-49, 2004.
- Weiss et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate (GHB) and Topiramate-Clinically Relevant Drug Interaction Suggested by 4 Case of Coma and Increased Plasma GHB Concentration," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, (2012), pp. 1193-1194, vol. 69.
- Wellendorph et al., "Phenylacetic Acids and the Structurally Related Non-Steroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drug Diclofenac Bind to Specific γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid Sites in Rat Brain," *Fundamental & Clinical Pharmacology*, 23:207-213, 2009.

US 9,486,426 B2

Page 4

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Wesnes et al., "Moxonidine and Cognitive Function: Interactions with Moclobemide and Lorazepam," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 52: 351-358, 1997.
- Wesnes et al., "The Memory Enhancing Effects of a Ginkgo biloba/Panax ginseng Combination in Healthy Middle-Aged Volunteers," *Psychopharmacology*, 152: 353-361, 2000.
- Williams et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on Time-Based Sensitization of Cognitive Impairment with Haloperidol," *J. Clinic. Psych.*, 57, 7-11, 1996.
- Wu et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and γ -aminobutyric acid_B receptor (GABA_BR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence," *Neuropharmacology*, 47 (8): 1146-56, 2004.
- Yamada et al., "Effect of Butyrolactone and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," *Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol.*, 22: 558-562, 1967.
- PTAB decision entered Apr. 12, 2016, denying institution for IPR by Par Pharmaceutical, Inc., IPR2016-00002, re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 17 pages.
- PTAB decision entered Apr. 12, 2016, partially denying institution for IPR by Ranbaxy Inc., IPR2016-00024, re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 21 pages.
- Bernasconi et al., "Experimental Absence Seizures: Potential Roles of γ -Hydroxybutyrate and GABAB Receptors," *J. Neural Transm.*, 35:155-177, 1992.
- Broughton and Mamelak, "Effects of Nocturnal Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Sleep/Waking Patterns in Narcolepsy-Cataplexy," *Can J. Neural. Sci.*, 7(1):23-31, 1980.
- Cash, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Overview of the Pros and Cons for it Being a Neurotransmitter and/or a Useful Therapeutic Agent," *Neurosci. Biobehavioral Rev.*, 18(2):291-304, 1994.
- Notification Letter dated Jun. 5, 2015, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,780,889; 7,262,219; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 7,851,506; 7,895,059; 8,263,650; 8,324,275; 8,457,988; 8,589,182; 8,731,963; 8,772,306; 8,859,619; 8,952,062," 140 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jul. 21, 2015, from Lupin Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd., and Jazz Pharmaceuticals plc re: "Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution, 500 mg/ml: Notification of Certifications for U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,780,889 B2, 7,262,219 B2, 7,668,730 B2, 7,765,106 B2, 7,765,107 B2, 7,851,506 B2, 7,895,059 B2, 8,263,650 B2, 8,324,275 B2, 8,457,988 B2, 8,589,182 B2, 8,731,963 B2, 8,772,306 B2, 8,859,619 B2, 8,952,062 B2, and 9,050,302 B2 Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act," 454 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jul. 22, 2015, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302, Concerning ANDA 203631 for Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution, 500 mg/mL," 14 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Sep. 1, 2015, from Par Pharmaceutical, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution (XYREM®) U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 Notice of Paragraph IV Certification," 51 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Oct. 9, 2015, from Ranbaxy Inc., a Sun Pharma company, to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: "Supplemental Notice of Paragraph IV Certification Regarding NDA 021196 Xyrem® Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution With Respect to U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302," 50 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Nov. 24, 2015, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. Nos. 9,050,302 and 8,772,306," 45 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Feb. 3, 2016, from Watson Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Notification of Certification for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act," 16 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Par Pharmaceutical, Inc., IPR2016-00002, filed Oct. 6, 2015, 65 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Ranbaxy, Inc., IPR2016-00024, filed Oct. 7, 2015, 63 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC, IPR2016-00546, filed Feb. 2, 2016, 66 pages.
- Dekkate (divalproex sodium) Tablets for Oral Use, FDA Labeling Text (Oct. 7, 2011).
- Kaufman and Nelson, "Evidence for the Participation of Cystathione NADP-Dependent Oxidoreductase in Catabolism of γ -Hydroxybutyrate in Vivo," *J. Neurochemistry*, 48:1935-1941, 1987.
- Kaufman and Nelson, "An Overview of γ -hydroxybutyrate Catabolism: The Role of the Cytosolic NADP+-Dependent Oxidoreductase EC 1.1.1.19 and of a Mitochondrial Hydroxyacid-Oxacid Transhydrogenase in the Initial, Rate-limiting Step in this Pathway," *Neurochem. Res.*, 16(9):965-974, 1991.
- Knerr et al., "Therapeutic Concepts in Succinate Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase (SSADH; ALDH5a1) Deficiency (γ -hydroxybutyric aciduria). Hypothesis Evolved from 25 Years of Patient Evaluation, Studies in Aldh5a1-/- Mice and Characterization of γ -hydroxybutyric acid Pharmacology," *J. Inherit. Metab. Dis.*, 30(3):279-294, 2007.
- Löscher, "Valproate: A Reappraisal of Its Pharmacodynamic Properties and Mechanisms of Action," *Progress in Neurobiol.*, 58(1):31-59, 1998.
- Löscher, "Basic Pharmacology of Valproate: A Review After 35 Years of Clinical Use for the Treatment of Epilepsy," *CNS Drugs*, 16(10):669-694, 2002.
- Maitre, "The γ -hydroxybutyrate Signalling System in Brain Organization and Functional Implications," *Progress in Neurobiology*, 51:337-361, 1997.
- Mamalek et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy with γ -Hydroxybutyrate. A Review of Clinical and Sleep Laboratory Findings," *Sleep*, 9(1):285-289, 1986.
- Okun, "HGB: An Important Pharmacological and Clinical Update," *J. Pharm. Pharmaceut. Sci.*, 4(2):167-175, 2001.
- Ruminy et al., "Specific and Non-Specific Succinic Semialdehyde Reductases from Rat Brain: Isolation and Properties," *177 FEBS Letters*, 117(1):111-116, 1980.
- Sandson et al., "An Interaction Between Aspirin and Valproate: The Relevance of Plasma Protein Displacement Drug-Drug Interactions," *Am. J. Psychiatry*, 163:1891-1896, 2006.
- Scharf et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Gammahydroxybutyrate (GHB) in Narcoleptic Patients," *Sleep*, 21(5):507-514, 1998.
- Shinka et al., "Effect of Valproic Acid on the Urinary Metabolic Profile of a Patient with Succinic Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase Deficiency," *J. Chromatography*, 792:99-106, 2003.
- Vayer et al., "3'-5' Cyclic-Guanosine Monophosphate Increase in Rat Brain Hippocampus after Gamma-hydroxybutyrate Administration. Prevention by Valproate and Naloxone," *Life Sci.*, 41(5):605-610, 1987.
- Vayer et al., "Is the Anticonvulsant Mechanism of Valproate Linked to Its Interaction with the Cerebral γ -hydroxybutyrate System?" *TIPS*, 9(4):127-129, 1988.
- Wedin et al., "The Clinical Development of γ -Hydroxybutyrate (GHB)," *Current Drug Safety*, 1(1):99-106, 2006.
- Xyrem Labeling Text, Nov. 18, 2015.
- Xyrem Monograph in the Physician's Desk Reference 65th Edition, 1698-1703, 2011.
- Yilmaz et al., "Diagnostic Pitfalls in Children with Sleep Disorders: Two Cases with Hypersomnia," *Acta Paediatrica*, 97:1749-1757, 2008.
- Notification Letter received Dec. 14, 2015, from Roxane Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: Paragraph IV Certification for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302.
- Petition for IPR by Ranbaxy, Inc., IPR2016-00738, filed Mar. 10, 2016, 73 pages.

US 9,486,426 B2

Page 5

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

Lamictal (lamotrigine) labeling.
Wellbutrin (bupropion HCl) labeling.
Seroquel (quetiapine) labeling.

Valproate Monograph in the Complete Drug Reference, 33rd Edition, 366-370, 2002.

Xyrem Package Insert entry in the Physician's Desk Reference Edition, 1688-1692, 2007.

Xyrem Prescribing Information, approved labeling 2002.

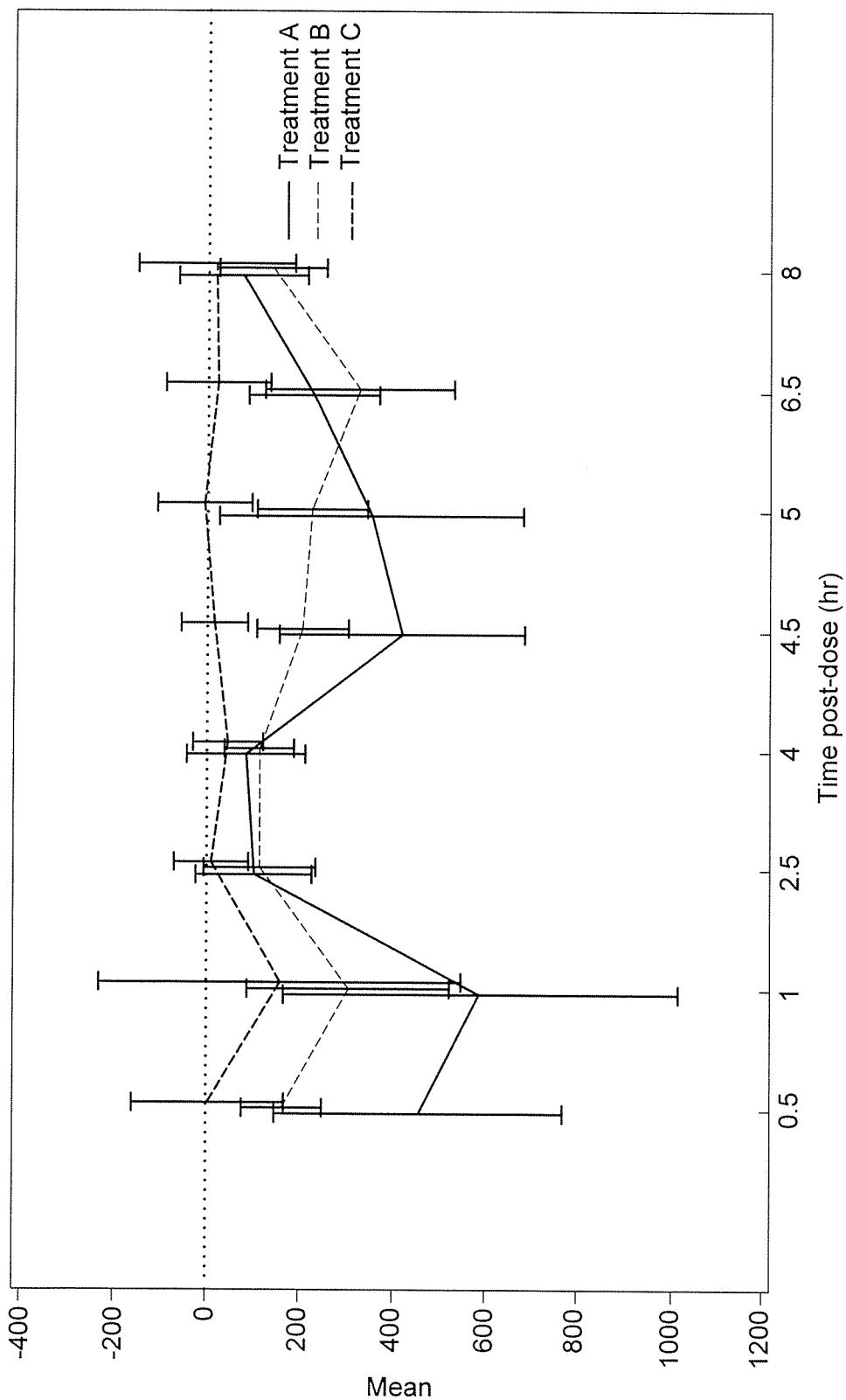
Xyrem Prescribing Information, 2005.

Xyrem Titration Schedule, 2008.

U.S. Patent

Nov. 8, 2016

Sheet 1 of 10

US 9,486,426 B2**FIG. 1**

U.S. Patent

Nov. 8, 2016

Sheet 2 of 10

US 9,486,426 B2

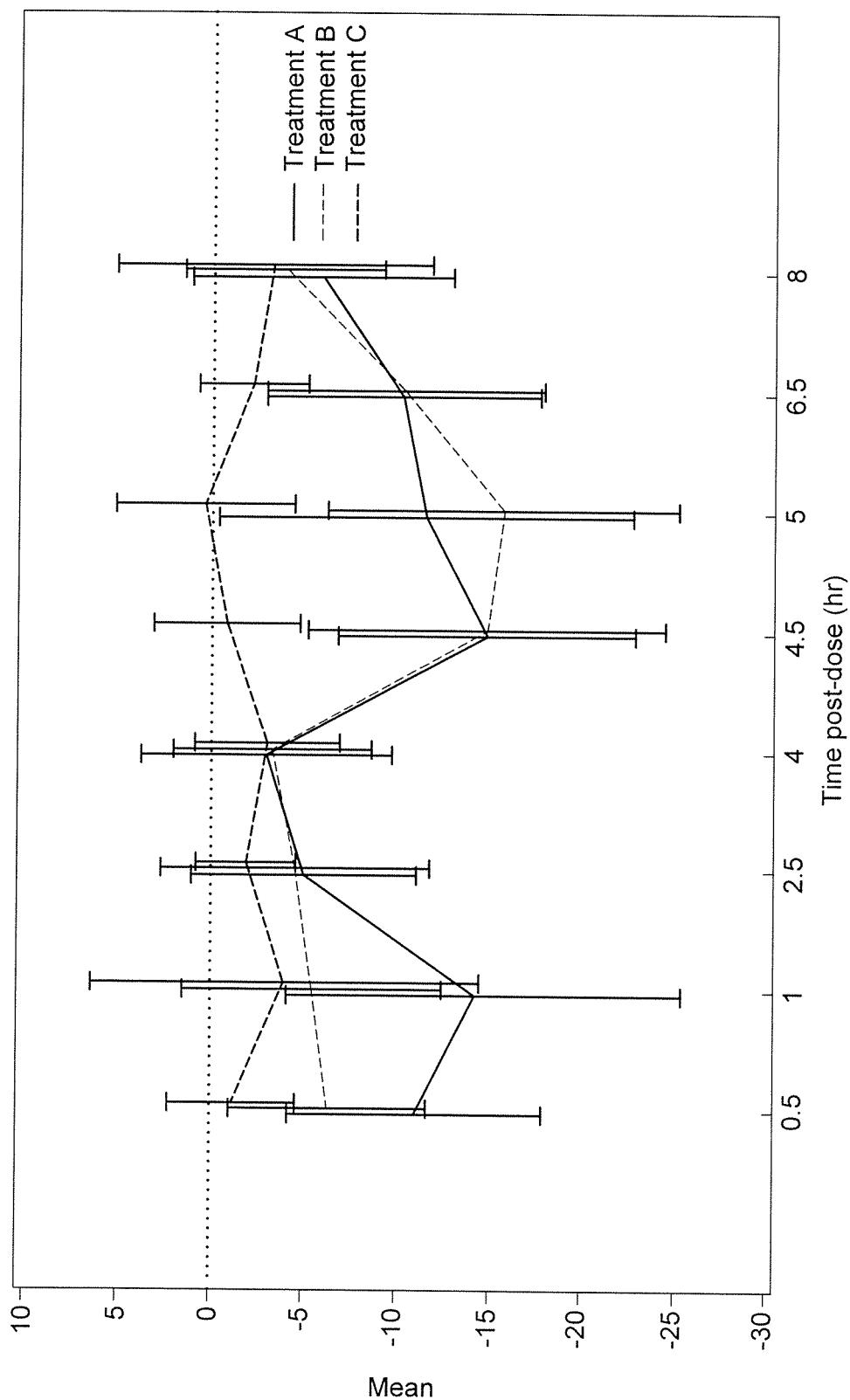


FIG. 2

U.S. Patent

Nov. 8, 2016

Sheet 3 of 10

US 9,486,426 B2

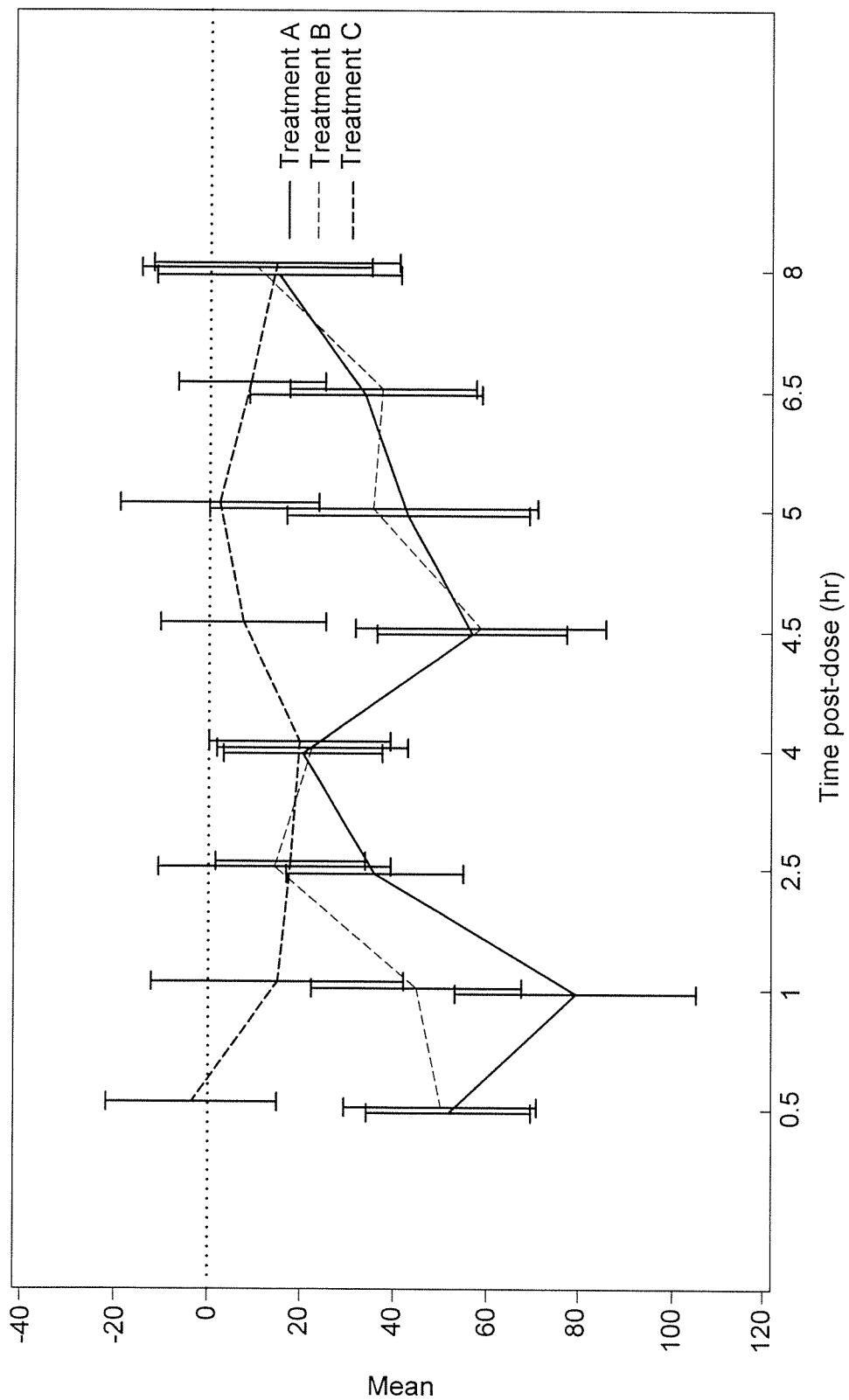


FIG. 3

U.S. Patent

Nov. 8, 2016

Sheet 4 of 10

US 9,486,426 B2

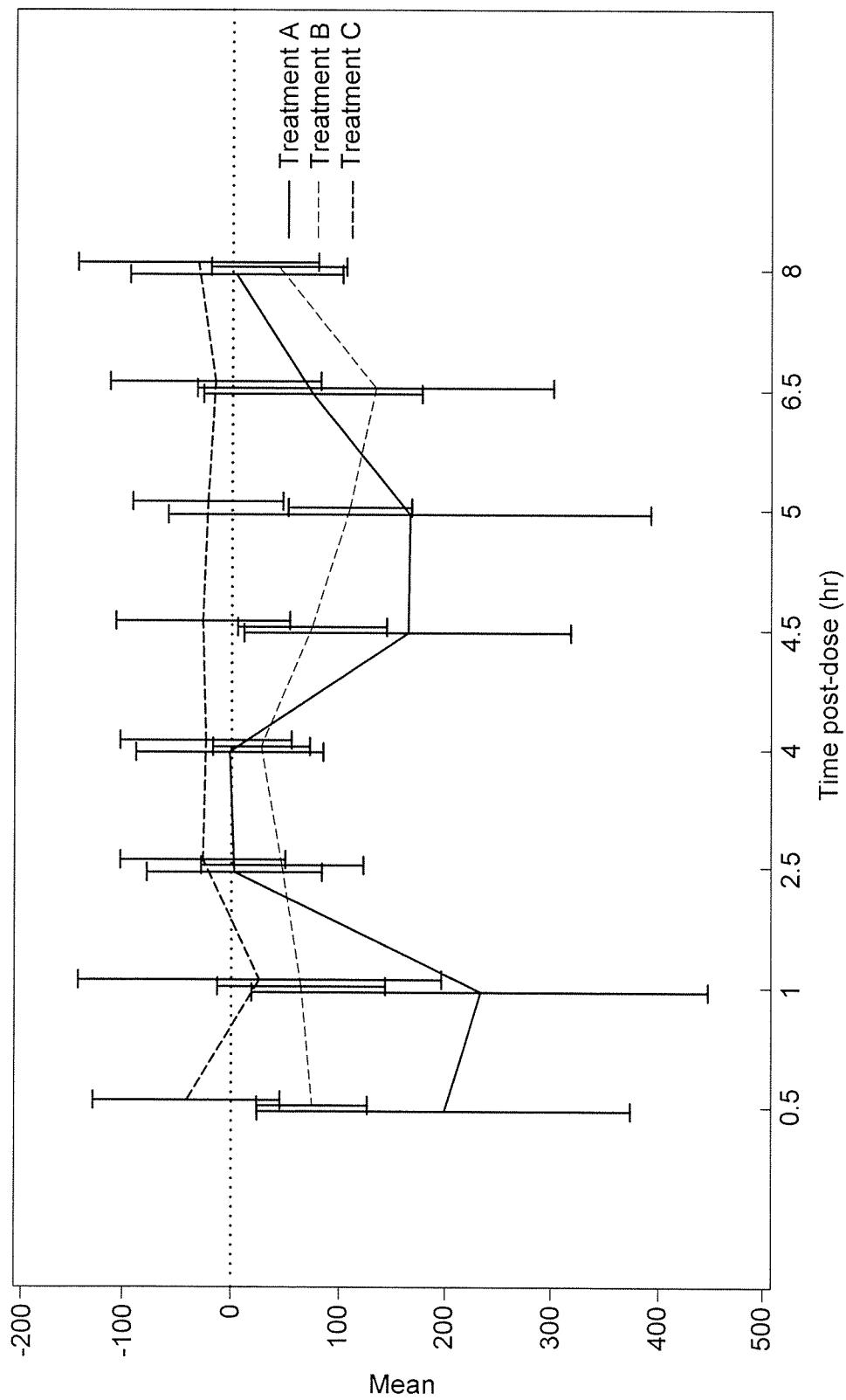


FIG. 4

U.S. Patent

Nov. 8, 2016

Sheet 5 of 10

US 9,486,426 B2

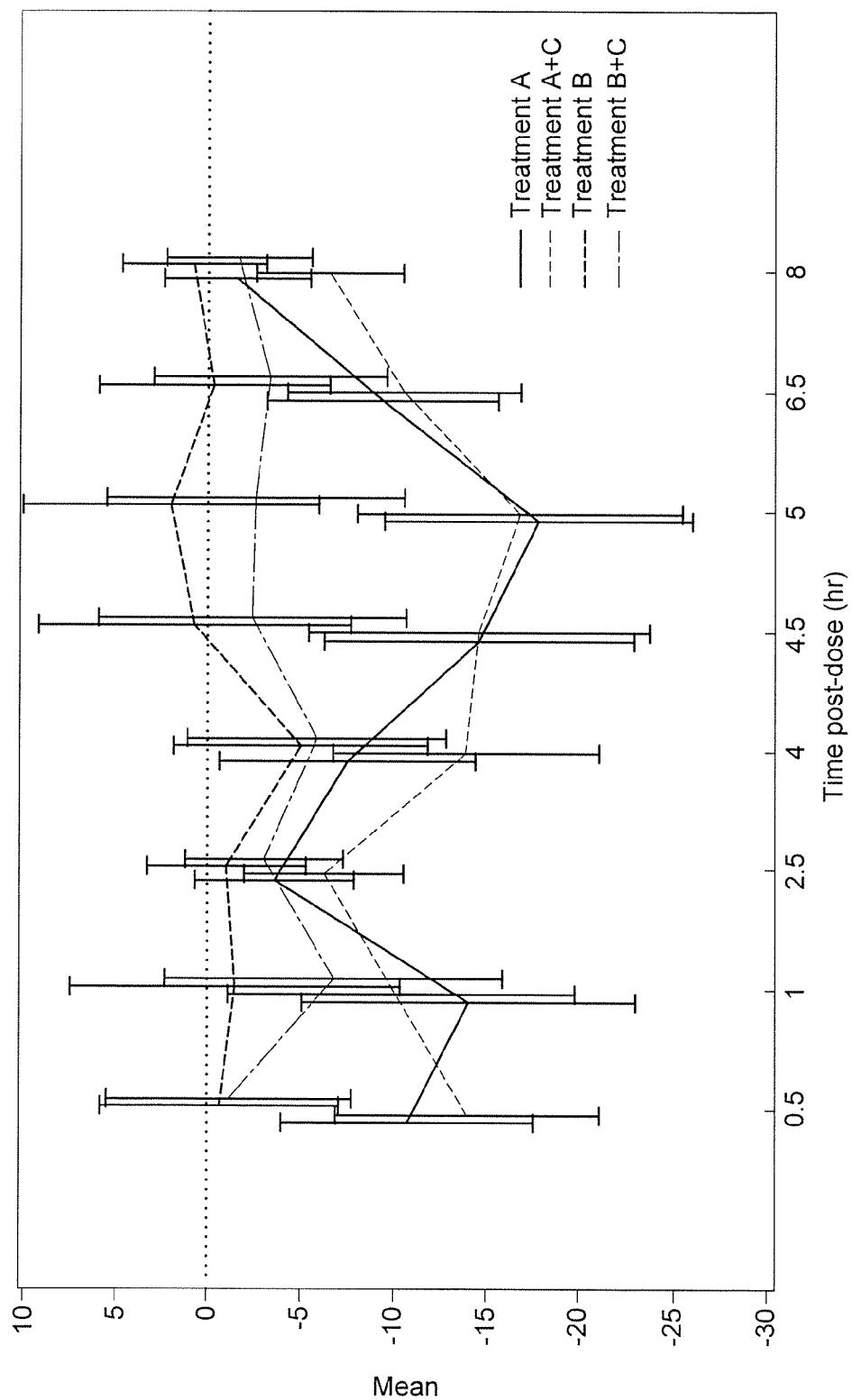


FIG. 5

U.S. Patent

Nov. 8, 2016

Sheet 6 of 10

US 9,486,426 B2

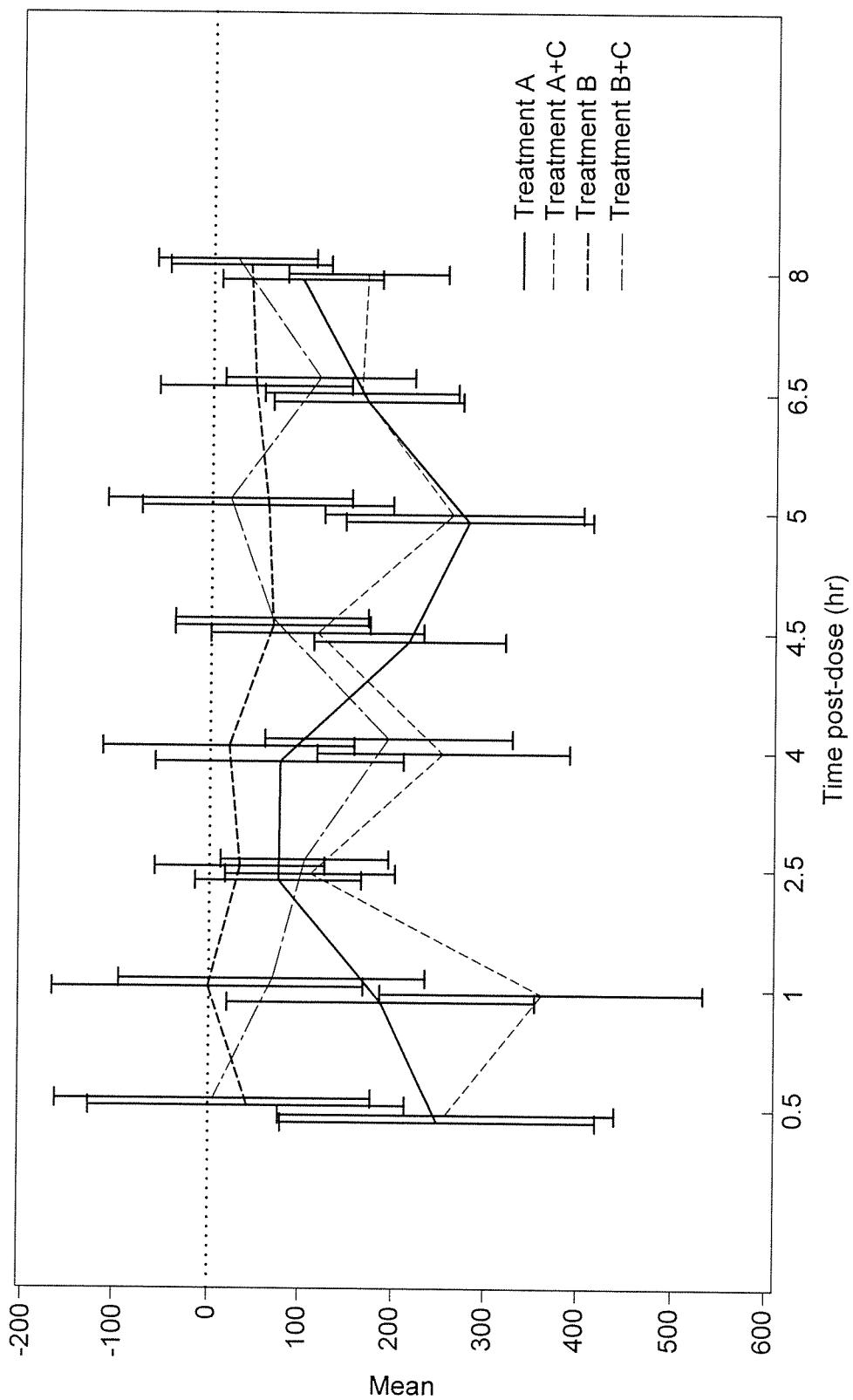


FIG. 6

U.S. Patent

Nov. 8, 2016

Sheet 7 of 10

US 9,486,426 B2

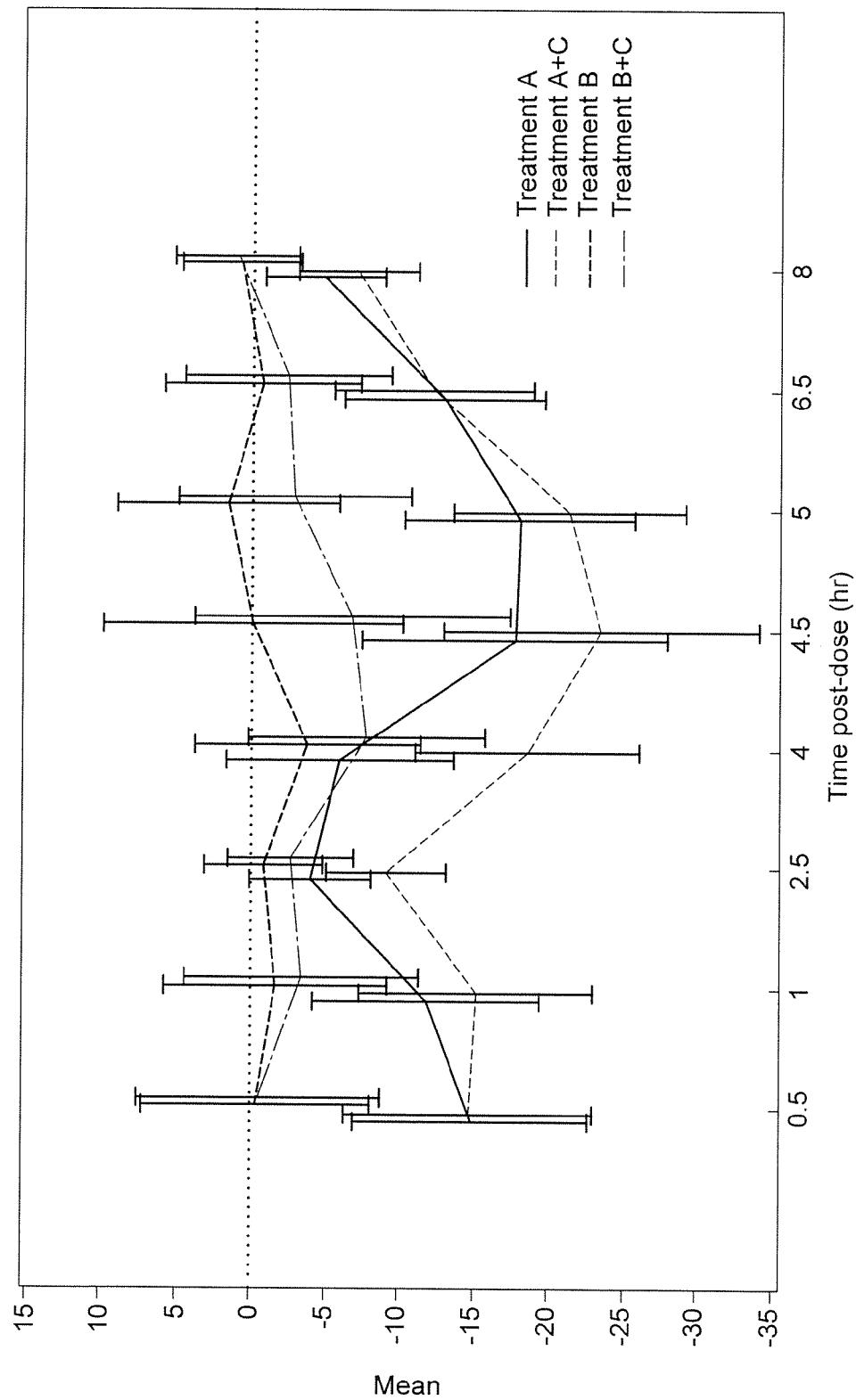


FIG. 7

U.S. Patent

Nov. 8, 2016

Sheet 8 of 10

US 9,486,426 B2

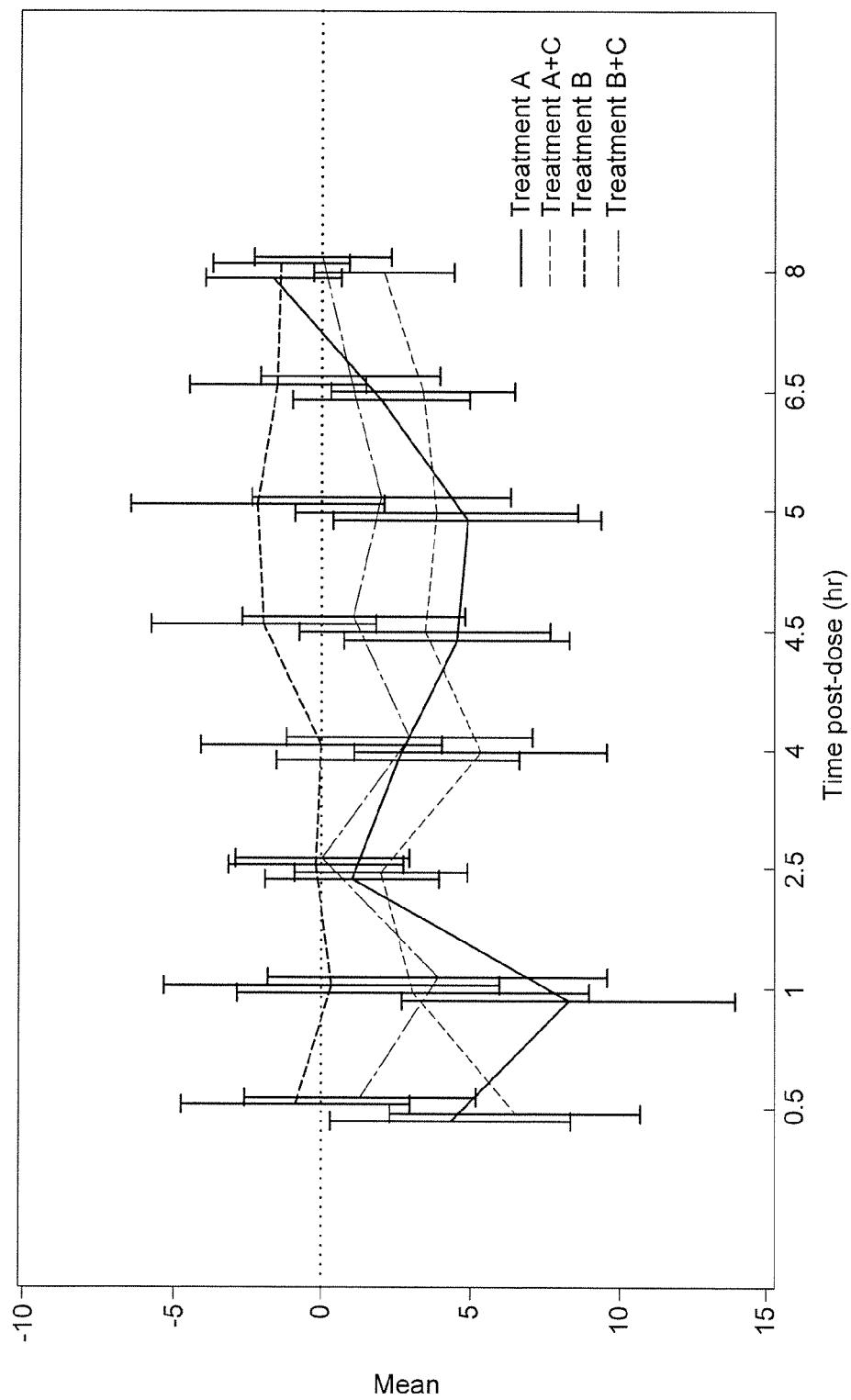


FIG. 8

U.S. Patent

Nov. 8, 2016

Sheet 9 of 10

US 9,486,426 B2

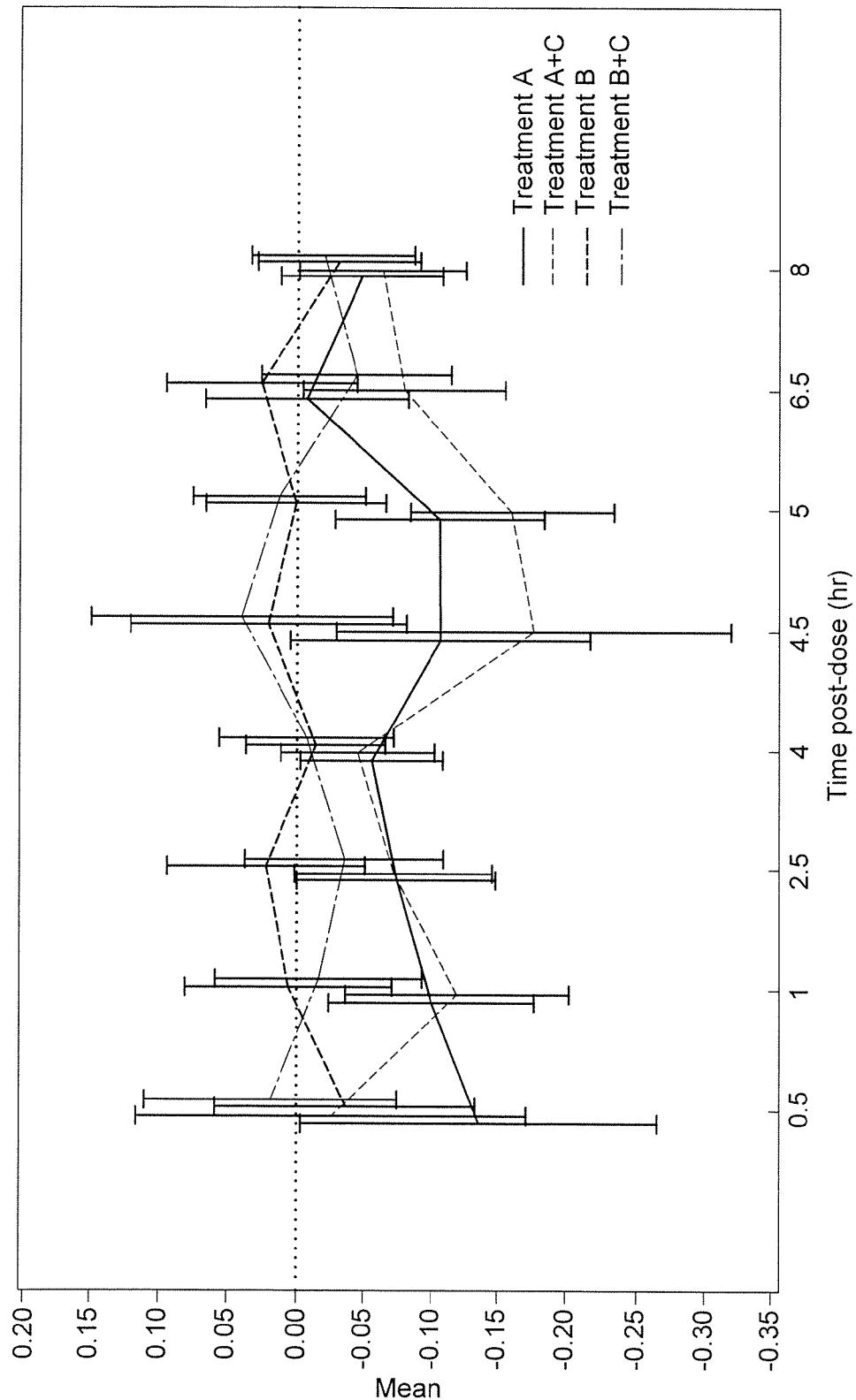


FIG. 9

U.S. Patent

Nov. 8, 2016

Sheet 10 of 10

US 9,486,426 B2

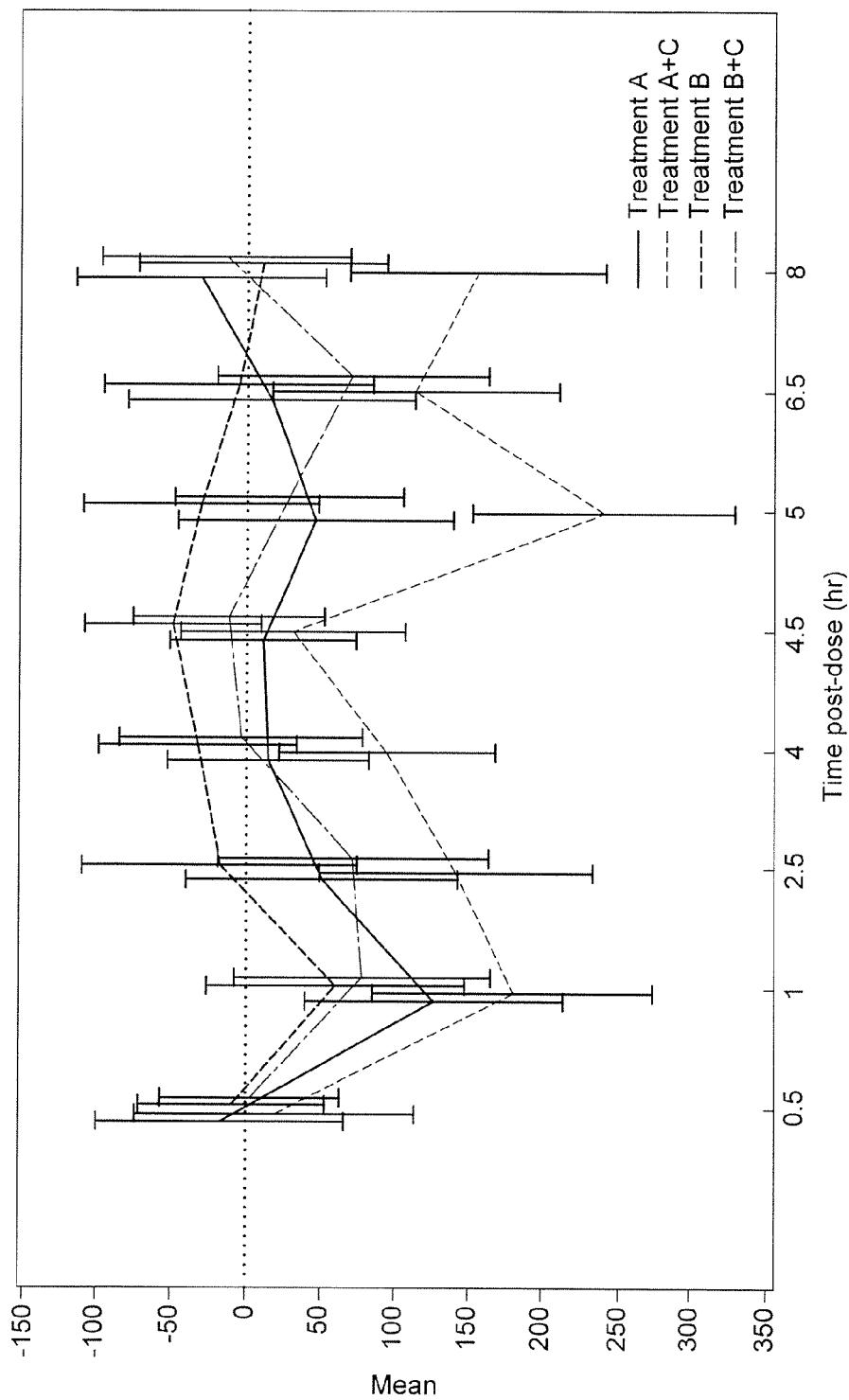


FIG. 10

US 9,486,426 B2

1

**METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF
GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH
MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS**

This application is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/837,714, filed Mar. 15, 2013, which claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/771,557, filed Mar. 1, 2013, and U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/777,873, filed Mar. 12, 2013, all of which applications are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

BACKGROUND

This application relates to methods for safely administering gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB) together with one or more other monocarboxylate transporter (MCT) inhibitors for therapeutic purposes. Example transporter inhibitors are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof, comprising: orally administering to the patient in need of treatment, an adjusted dosage amount of the salt of GHB when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of valproate. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced at least about 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the amount of GHB is reduced at least about 10% and about 30% of the normal administration and the daily administration of the GHB salt is between 1 gram and 10 grams. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the ranges of about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 45%, or about 45% or 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the range of about 1% to 50%, about 1% to 45%, about 1% to 40%, about 1% to 35%, about 1% to 30%, about 1% to 25%, about 1% to 20%, about 1% to 15%, about 1% to 10%, about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 50%, about 5% to 45%, about 5% to 40%, about 5% to 35%, about 5% to 30%, about 5% to 25%, about 5% to 20%, about 5% to 15%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 50%, about 10% to 45%, about 10% to 40%, about 10% to 35%, about 10% to 30%, about 10% to 25%, about 10% to 20%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to 45%, about 15% to 40%, about 15% to 35%, about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 50%, about 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient.

2

Another embodiment of the invention is a method of safely administering GHB a salt thereof for excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising: determining if the patient has taken, or will take a concomitant dose of valproate; orally administering a reduced amount of the GHB or GHB salt to the patient compared to the normal dose so as to diminish the additive effects of the GHB or GHB salt when administered with valproate. The amount of GHB is reduced at least 10% to 30%, or at least +15% of the normal administration.

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with GHB or a salt thereof, comprising: orally administering to the patient in need of treatment, an adjusted dosage amount of the salt of GHB when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of diclofenac. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is at least about 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% higher than the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the increased amount of GHB is at least about 15% more than the normal administration and the daily administration of the GHB salt is between 1 gram and 10 grams. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is increased between the range of about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 45%, or about 45% or 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is increased between the range of about 1% to 50%, about 1% to 45%, about 1% to 40%, about 1% to 35%, about 1% to 30%, about 1% to 25%, about 1% to 20%, about 1% to 15%, about 1% to 10%, about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 50%, about 5% to 45%, about 5% to 40%, about 5% to 35%, about 5% to 30%, about 5% to 25%, about 5% to 20%, about 5% to 15%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 50%, about 10% to 45%, about 10% to 40%, about 10% to 35%, about 10% to 30%, about 10% to 25%, about 10% to 20%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to 45%, about 15% to 40%, about 15% to 35%, about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 50%, about 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. See the product insert for normal dose ranges of GHB as sold by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. GHB is commercially known as Xyrem®.

In another embodiment, the invention is a method of safely administering a GHB salt for excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising: determining if the patient has taken, or will take a concomitant dose of diclofenac; orally administering an increased amount of a GHB salt to the patient so as to compensate for the effects of diclofenac on the GHB salt when concomitantly administered.

US 9,486,426 B2

3

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy wherein said patient is currently taking or has been prescribed GHB or a salt thereof, comprising determining if the patient is taking or has also been prescribed valproate or diclofenac; and adjusting the dose of the GHB or GHB salt to compensate for the effect caused by valproate or diclofenac. In certain embodiments, the method additionally comprises administering the adjusted dose to the patient.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma GHB, wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate additive effects.

The embodiments of the present invention can administer the GHB at a level of between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day. The concentration of the formulation can be between 350-750 mg/ml or 450-550 mg/ml and a pH between 6-10 or 6.5-8.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a salt of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient or determining whether the patient is currently on a GHB drug regimen; determining if the patient is also being administered ibuprofen; and advising a patient to cease or ceasing the administration of ibuprofen. In some embodiments, patients benefiting from this directive when the patient has will have a renal impairment.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered valproate; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of valproate and GHB; and reducing the dose of the GHB or GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by valproate. Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered diclofenac; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of diclofenac and the GHB salt; and increasing the dose of the GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by diclofenac.

In each of the embodiments of the invention the method includes administering GHB at between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day and at a concentration of between 350-750 or 450-550 mg/ml, and a pH between 6-10 or between 6.5-8. In further embodiments the valproate or diclofenac is administered within three days, one or two weeks (before or after) of GHB administration. In another embodiment, the present invention is a method wherein aspirin is also administered to the patient, especially with valproate.

4

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB as a single salt or a mixture of salts of GHB selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂).

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB to a patient suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to the patient; determining if the patient has concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor; and adjusting the GHB dose or ceasing administering of the MCT inhibitor to maintain the effect of the GHB.

In any of the versions of the invention, the methods optionally further include administering aspirin to the patient.

In a further embodiment the method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof comprises administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while avoiding concomitant of a diclofenac or valproate.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a method of administering GHB or a salt thereof (GHB) to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of diclofenac, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB or a GHB salt per day while avoiding diclofenac concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that diclofenac should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with diclofenac can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being treated with diclofenac is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in an decrease in exposure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a administering GHB to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of valproate, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB per day while avoiding valproate concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being treated with valproate is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in exposure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient that MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

In another embodiment, the present invention is a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management system to dispense information concerning the risks associated with ingesting a MCT inhibitor concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; providing said

US 9,486,426 B2

5

pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and authorizing distribution of said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The method may also comprise including an electronic or written alert, which can explain the risks, to employees to dispense said information with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Also, the information can be dispensed when a subject refills said prescription. The warnings would be as recited above.

The methods of the present invention may include a warning for patients not to operate hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely and not to engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Any information dispensed with said drug advises patients of the potential for enhanced potency of said drug if said patients also take valproate or advises patients of the potential for decreased potency of said drug if said patients also take diclofenac.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while avoiding concomitant administration of diclofenac or valproate.

The invention may also comprise a method for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that the toxic effects of GHB are reduced. It may also comprise a method for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows change from baseline figure (LS mean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population). Treatment A=diclofenac placebo+Xyrem®. Treatment B=diclofenac+Xyrem®. Treatment C=diclofenac+Xyrem® placebo.

FIG. 2 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 3 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 4 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 5 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population). Treatment A=Xyrem®. Treatment B=Xyrem® placebo. Treatment C=valproate.

FIG. 6 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

FIG. 7 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

FIG. 8 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

6

FIG. 9 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

FIG. 10 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

10

The following patents and applications are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties for all purposes: U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,472,431, 6,780,889, 7,262,219, 7,851,506, 8,263,650, 8,324,275; 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 61/317,212, Ser. Nos. 13/071,369, 13/739,886, 12/264,709, PCT/US2010/033572, PCT/US2009/061312, 2009/0137565; and 2012/0076865. The following patents are also incorporated by reference: U.S. Pat. No. 5,380,937; U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236 German Patent DD 237,309 A1; and British Pat. No. 922,029.

Objects, features and advantages of the methods and compositions described herein will become apparent from the following detailed description. It should be understood, however, that the detailed description and the specific examples, while indicating specific embodiments, are given by way of illustration only, since various changes and modifications within the spirit and scope of the invention will become apparent to those skilled in the art from this detailed description.

The following references, to the extent that they provide exemplary procedural or other details supplementary to those set forth herein, are specifically incorporated herein by reference.

- 35 Arena and Fung, "Absorption of sodium .gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and its prodrug .gamma.-butyrolactone: relationship between in vitro transport and in vivo absorption," *J. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 69(3):356-358, 1980.
- Bedard, Montplaisir, Godbout, Lapierre, "Nocturnal .gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate—Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients," 12(1):29-36, 1989.
- Broughton and Mamelak, "The treatment of narcolepsy-cataplexy with nocturnal gamma-hydroxybutyrate," *Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques*. 6(1):1-6, 1979.
- Ferrara, Zotti, Tedeschi, Frison, Castagna, Gessa and Galamberti, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in the treatment of alcohol dependent," *Clin. Neuropharm.*, 15(1, PtA): 303A-304A, 1992.
- Gessa, Diana, Fadda, Colombo, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) for treatment of ethanol dependence," *Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement*, 1992. Gessa et al., *Clin. Neuropharm.*, 15(suppl.):303A-304A, 1992.
- 55 Gessa et al., *Internat. Clin. Psychopharm.*, 1994.
- Hasenbos and Gieien, "Anaesthesia for bullectomy," *Anaesthesia*, 40:977-980, 1985.
- Laborit, "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semi aldehyde and Sleep," *Laboratoire d'Eutonologie*, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France, 1973.
- Ladinsky, Consolo, Zatta, Vezzani. "Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System, Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacal., 322:42-48, 1983.
- 60 Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and narcolepsy: a double-blind placebo-controlled study," *Sleep*, 16(3); 216-220, 1993.

US 9,486,426 B2

7

Lapierre, Montplaisir, Lamarre, Bedard, "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep-Triggering Mechanisms," *Sleep*. 13(1):24-30, 1990.

Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1988. Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1990. Lee, C. R. "Evidence for the .beta.-Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans" *Biochem. Medicine* 17, 284-291, 1977.

Lettieri and Fung, "Improved pharmacological activity via pro-drug modification: comparative pharmacokinetics of sodium .gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and .gamma.-butyrolactone," *Research Communications In Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology*. 22(1):107-118. 1978.

Mamelak, 1977; "Effects Of Gamma Hydroxybutyrate On Sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry* 12, 273-288. Mamelak, "Gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB): An endogenous regulator of energy metabolism," *Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews*, 13: 189-198, 1989.

Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," *Neuro. & Biobehav. Rev.*, 13 187-198, 1989.

Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak, Escriu, Stokan "The effects of gamma-hydroxybutyrate on sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 12(2):273-288. 1977.

Mamelak, Escriu, Stokan, "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," *The Lance*, p. 328-329. 1973.

Nema, et al., "Excipients and their use in injectable products," *PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol.*, 51(4):166-171, 1997.

Palatini, Tedeschi, Frison, Padrini, Zordan, Orlando, Gal- limberti, Gessa, Ferrara, "Dose dependent absorption and elimination of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in healthy volunteers," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 45:353-356, 1993.

Roth and Giarman, ".gamma.-Butyrolactone and .gamma.-Hydroxybutyric Acid-I, Distribution and Metabolism," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 15:1333-1348, 1966.

Scharf, Brown, Woods, Brown, Hirschowitz, "The effects and effectiveness of gammahydroxybutyrate In patients with narcolepsy," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 46(6)222-225, 1985.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "Efficacy of gamma-hydroxybutyrate versus placebo in treating narcolepsy-cataplexy: Double-blind subjective measured," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 26:331-343, 1989.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "The Effects of .gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," *Sleep*, 13(6):479-490, 1990.

Scrima, et al, "Sleep Res. 16, 134, 1987, Abstract. Series, Series, Cormier, "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 1378-1383, 1992.

Strong, ".gamma.-Hydroxybutyric acid and Intracranial Pressure," *The Lancet*, Vol. 1: No. 8389, 1984. van den Bogert, Vree, van der Kleijn, Damsma, "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man."

Vickers, "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," *Int. Anesth. Clinic*, 7:75.89, 1969.

Lee, *Biochem. Med.* 17:234-291, 1977. Yamada, Yamamoto, Fujiki, Hishikawa, Kaneko, "Effect of Butyrolactone and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," *Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol.*, 22:558-562, 1967.

Yamada et al., 1967. Wu, Ying; Ali, Saima; Ahmadian, Gholamreza; Liu, Chun Che; Wang, Yu Tian; Gibson, K. Michael; Calver, Andrew R.; Francis, Joseph et al. (2004). "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-amin-

8

obutyric acidB receptor (GABABR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence". *Neuropharmacology* 47 (8): 1146-56.

Cash, C; Gobaille, S; Kemmel, V; Andriamanampandry, C; Maitre, M (1999). ".gamma.-hydroxybutyrate receptor function studied by the modulation of nitric oxide synthase activity in rat frontal cortex punches". *Biochemical Pharmacology* 58 (11): 1815-9.

Maitre M, Humbert J P, Kemmel V, Aunis D, Andriamanampandry C (2005). "A mechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse" (in French). *Med Sci (Paris)* 21 (3): 284-9. Waszkielewicz A, Bojarski J (2004). "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and its chemical modifications: a review of the GHergic system" (PDF). *Pol J Pharmacol* 56 (1): 43-9.

Kuriyama K, Sze P Y (1971). "Blood-brain barrier to H3-gamma-aminobutyric acid in normal and amino oxy-acetic acid-treated animals". *Neuropharmacology* 10 (1): 103-8.

Dimitrijevic N, Dzitoyeva S, Satta R, Imbesi M, Yildiz S, Manev H (2005). "Drosophila GABA(B) receptors are involved in behavioral effects of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB)". *Eur. J. Pharmacol.* 519 (3): 246-52.

Banerjee P K, Snead O C (1995). "Presynaptic gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-aminobutyric acidB (GABAB) receptor-mediated release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in rat thalamic ventrobasal nucleus (VB): a possible mechanism for the generation of absence-like seizures induced by GHB". *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.* 273 (3): 1534-43.

Hechler V, Gobaille S, Bourguignon J J, Maitre M (1991). "Extracellular events induced by gamma-hydroxybutyrate in striatum: a microdialysis study". *J. Neurochem.* 56 (3): 938-44. Maitre, M; Hechler, V; Vayer, P; Gobaille, S; Cash, C D; Schmitt, M; Bourguignon, J J (1990). "A specific gamma-hydroxybutyrate receptor ligand possesses both antagonistic and anticonvulsant properties". *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.* 255 (2): 657-63.

Smolders I, De Klippe N, Sarre S, Ebinger G, Michotte Y (1995). "Tonic GABAergic modulation of striatal dopamine release studied by in vivo microdialysis in the freely moving rat". *Eur. J. Pharmacol.* 284 (1-2): 83-91. In the specification and claims that follow, references will be made to a number of terms which shall be defined to have the following meaning.

The terms "a" and "an" do not denote a limitation of quantity, but rather denote the presence of at least one of the referenced item. The term "or" means "and/or". The terms "comprising", "having", "including", and "containing" are to be construed as open-ended terms (i.e., meaning "including, but not limited to").

"Concomitant" and "concomitantly" as used herein refer to the administration of at least two drugs to a patient either subsequently, simultaneously, or consequently within a time period during which the effects of the first administered drug are still operative in the patient. Thus, if the first drug is, e.g., Xyrem®, or GHB, and the second drug is valproate, the concomitant administration of the second drug occurs within two weeks, preferably within one week or even three days, before or after the administration of the first drug.

"Dosage amount" means an amount of a drug suitable to be taken during a fixed period, usually during one day (i.e., daily).

"Dosage amount adapted for oral administration" means a dosage amount that is of an amount deemed safe and effective for the particular patient under the conditions specified. As used herein and in the claims, this dosage

US 9,486,426 B2

9

amount is determined by following the recommendations of the drug manufacturer's Prescribing Information as approved by the US Food and Drug Administration.

"Dosing regimen" means the dose of a drug taken at a first time by a patient and the interval (time or symptomatic) and dosage amounts at which any subsequent doses of the drug are taken by the patient. Each dose may be of the same or a different dosage amount.

A "dose" means the measured quantity of a drug to be taken at one time by a patient.

A "patient" means a human in need of medical treatment. In one embodiment medical treatment can include treatment of an existing condition, such as a disease or disorder, prophylactic or preventative treatment, or diagnostic treatment. In another embodiment, medical treatment also includes administration to treat excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus.

"Providing" means giving, administering, selling, distributing, transferring (for profit or not), manufacturing, compounding, or dispensing.

The terms "therapeutically effective amount," as used herein, refer to an amount of a compound sufficient to treat, ameliorate, or prevent the identified disease or condition, or to exhibit a detectable therapeutic, prophylactic, or inhibitory effect. The effect can be detected by, for example, an improvement in clinical condition, or reduction in symptoms. The precise effective amount for a subject will depend upon the subject's body weight, size, and health; the nature and extent of the condition; and the therapeutic or combination of therapeutics selected for administration. Where a drug has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), a "therapeutically effective amount" refers to the dosage approved by the FDA or its counterpart foreign agency for treatment of the identified disease or condition.

"Side effect" means a secondary effect resulting from taking a drug. The secondary effect can be a negative (unfavorable) effect (i.e., an adverse side effect) or a positive (favorable) effect.

Pharmacokinetic parameters referred to herein describe the in vivo characteristics of drug (or a metabolite or a surrogate marker for the drug) over time. These include plasma concentration (C), as well as C_{max} , C_n , C_{24} , T_{max} , and AUC. The term " T_{max} " refers to the time from drug administration until C_{max} is reached. "AUC" is the area under the curve of a graph of the measured plasma concentration of an active agent vs. time, measured from one time point to another time point. For example AUC_{0-t} is the area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time t , where time 0 is the time of initial administration of the drug. Time t can be the last time point with measurable plasma concentration for an individual formulation. The $AUC_{0-\text{min}}$ or $AUC_{0-\infty}$ is the calculated area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time infinity. In steady-state studies, $AUC_{0-\tau}$ is the area under the curve of plasma concentration over the dosing interval (i.e., from time 0 to time τ). (τ), where τ is the length of the dosing interval.

It may be advantageous to incorporate a pharmacy management system into the method of the present invention. Pharmacy management systems are computer-based systems that are used by commercial pharmacies to manage prescriptions and to provide pharmacy and medical personnel with warnings and guidance regarding drugs being administered to patients. Such systems typically provide alerts warning either or both of health care providers and

10

patients when a drug that may be harmful to the particular patient is prescribed. For example, such systems can provide alerts warning that a patient has an allergy to a prescribed drug, or is receiving concomitant administration of a drug that can have a dangerous interaction with a prescribed drug. U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 5,758,095, 5,833,599, 5,845,255, 6,014,631, 6,067,524, 6,112,182, 6,317,719, 6,356,873, and 7,072,840, each of which is incorporated herein by reference, disclose various pharmacy management systems and aspects thereof. Example pharmacy management systems are now commercially available, e.g., CENTRICITY Pharmacy from BDM Information Systems Ltd., General Electric Healthcare, Waukesha, Wis., Rx30 Pharmacy Systems from Transaction Data Systems, Inc., Ocoee, Fla., SPEED SCRIPT from Digital Simplistics, Inc., Lenexa, Kans., and various pharmacy management systems from OPUS-ISM, Hauppauge, N.Y.

In some embodiments, a pharmacy management system may be required or preferred as part of a drug distribution program. For example, the present invention includes a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: (1) Identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management system to dispense information concerning the risks associated with ingesting a MCT inhibitors concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; (2) Providing said pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and (3) Authorizing distribution of said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The established management system may include an electronic alert to employees to dispense said information with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Such information may be dispensed in written form, for example in a brochure explaining the risks of concomitant ingestion of GHB and an MCT inhibitor such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen or combinations thereof. For example, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for enhanced potency of GHB if the patient also takes valproate. Alternatively, or in addition thereto, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for decreased potency of GHB if the patient also takes diclofenac. Such information may also be dispensed in verbal form. Distributors may maintain a directory of approved pharmacies, for example in a computer readable storage medium, to further ensure that GHB is dispensed only to patients who are advised of the additive effects.

In addition, the system can prevent the dispensing of GHB or salt thereof until proper testing or confirmation is obtained that the patient is not taking or going to take valproate or diclofenac concomitantly with GHB. Alternatively, the patient can be warned of the adverse effect and instructed to modify the dose of GHB to accommodate the increased or reduced effects of GHB due to valproate or diclofenac.

A pharmacy management system of the present invention can be a REMS system as shown in U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,059; 7,797,171; and 7,668,730 and also include monitoring for concomitant use of diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, or combinations thereof. Warnings may be administered through the existing pharmacy management system as described in the patents above.

One embodiment of the present invention, without being limited by theory, is the discovery of drug interactions that change either, or both, the efficacy or safety profile of GHB.

US 9,486,426 B2

11

The three compounds are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen or combinations thereof. To achieve the above benefits, GHB of the present invention can be administered in a reduced amount when a second compound, such as valproate, is concomitantly administered with GHB. It can also be administered in an increased amount to overcome any effects of diclofenac. The compounds can also be avoided or discontinued to prevent unsafe concomitant administration.

In one embodiment of the present invention, concomitant administration of GHB with other agents is monitored and potential changes to the doses of GHB are made, or changes in the administration of other compounds are made. In one embodiment of the present invention, when GHB was concomitantly administered with ibuprofen, there were pharmacokinetic (PK) changes consistent with monocarboxylic transporter (MCT) inhibition and renal excretion of GHB doubled (statistically significant). Plasma levels were about ~5% lower, which was statistically significant. In another embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and Diclofenac are concomitantly administered, PD effects were significantly reduced. In another embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and divalproate were concomitantly administered, PK showed both MCT and GHB dehydrogenase inhibition, with the latter predominating. MCT inhibition caused renal clearance to be increased 30% (statistically significant). GHB dehydrogenase inhibition caused systemic exposure (plasma AUC) to be increased 26%. Both measures are statistically significant and outside FDA "equivalence window". PD shows more pronounced effects with concomitant administration.

One embodiment is a method of administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to a patient in need of treatment, such as with narcolepsy, the invention provides an improvement that comprises avoiding or discontinuing administration of a compound that affects GHB potency and administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB. The compound can be diclofenac or valproate and they can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB.

Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB)

GHB (also called oxysorbate or oxybate) is approved in the United States (US) for the treatment of excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS) and for the treatment of cataplexy, both in patients with narcolepsy. GHB is commercially sold as Xyrem® sodium oxybate by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. Sodium oxybate is the sodium salt of the endogenous neurotransmitter gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB), which is found in many tissues of the body. "GHB", oxybate, a GHB salt or Xyrem® will be used to refer to these active forms. It can be used as a sodium, calcium, potassium, or magnesium salt. See U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886.

GHB is present, for example, in the mammalian brain and other tissues. In the brain, the highest GHB concentration is found in the hypothalamus and basal ganglia and GHB is postulated to function as a neurotransmitter. The neuropharmacologic effects of GHB include increases in brain acetylcholine, increases in brain dopamine, inhibition of GABA-ketoglutarate transaminase and depression of glucose utilization but not oxygen consumption in the brain. GHB is converted to succinate and then metabolized via the Krebs cycle. Clinical trials have shown that GHB increases delta sleep and improves the continuity of sleep (Laborit, 1973; Lapierre et al., 1988; Lapierre et al., 1990; Yamada et al., 1967; Scharf, 1985).

GHB treatment substantially reduces the signs and symptoms of narcolepsy, i.e. excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time distur-

12

bances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus. In addition, GHB increases total sleep time and REM sleep, and it decreases REM latency (Mamelak et al., 1973; Yamada et al., 1967; Bedard et al., 1989), reduces sleep apnea (Scrima et al., 1987), and improves general anesthesia (Hasenbos and Gielen, 1985).

GHB has several clinical applications other than narcolepsy and sleep disorders. GHB has been reported to reduce alcohol craving, the number of daily drinks consumed, and 10 the symptoms of alcohol withdrawal in patients (Gallimberti et al., 1989; Gallimberti et al., 1992; Gessa et al., 1992). GHB has been used to decrease the symptoms of opiate withdrawal, including both heroin and methadone withdrawal (Gallimberti et al., 1994; Gallimberti et al., 1993). It 15 has analgesic effects that make it suitable as a pain reliever (U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236). Intravenous administration of GHB has been reported to reduce intracranial pressure in patients (Strong, A. 1984). Also, administration of GHB was reported to increase growth hormone levels in patients 20 (Gessa et al., 1994).

A good safety profile for GHB consumption, when used long term for treatment of narcolepsy has been reported. Patients have been safely treated for many years with GHB without development of tolerance (Scharf, 1985). Clinical 25 laboratory tests carried out periodically on many patients have not indicated organ or other toxicities (Lammers, 1993; Scrima, 1990; Scharf, 1985; Mamelack, 1977; Mamelak, 1979; Gessa, 1992). The side effects of GHB treatment have been minimal in incidence and degree of severity, though 30 they include sleepwalking, enuresis, headache, nausea and dizziness (Broughton and Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak et al., 1981; Mamelak et al., 1977; Scrima et al., 1989; Scrima et al., 1990; Scharf et al., 1985). Therefore, it is critical to 35 identify adverse drug-drug interactions to maintain the positive safety profile for GHB.

GHB Pharmacology

GHB has at least two distinct binding sites (See Wu, et al., 2004) in the central nervous system. GHB is an agonist at the GHB receptor, which is excitatory, (Cash et al., 2009) and it 40 is a weak agonist at the GABAB receptor, which is inhibitory. GHB acts in a similar fashion to some neurotransmitters in the mammalian brain and is probably synthesized from GABA in GABAergic neurons, and released when the neurons fire. If taken orally, GABA itself does not effectively 45 cross the blood-brain-barrier. (See Kuriyama et al., 2005).

GHB induces the accumulation of either a derivative of tryptophan or tryptophan itself in the extracellular space, possibly by increasing tryptophan transport across the blood-brain barrier. The blood content of certain neutral 50 amino-acids, including tryptophan, is also increased by peripheral GHB administration. GHB-induced stimulation of tissue serotonin turnover may be due to an increase in tryptophan transport to the brain and in its uptake by serotonergic cells. As the serotonergic system may be 55 involved in the regulation of sleep, mood, and anxiety, the stimulation of this system by high doses of GHB may be involved in certain neuropharmacological events induced by GHB administration.

However, at therapeutic doses, GHB reaches much higher 60 concentrations in the brain and activates GABAB receptors, which are primarily responsible for its sedative effects. (See Dimitrijevic et al., 2005). GHB's sedative effects are blocked by GABAB antagonists.

The role of the GHB receptor in the behavioral effects 65 induced by GHB is more complex. GHB receptors are densely expressed in many areas of the brain, including the cortex and hippocampus, and these are the receptors that

US 9,486,426 B2

13

GHB displays the highest affinity for. There has been somewhat limited research into the GHB receptor; however, there is evidence that activation of the GHB receptor in some brain areas results in the release of glutamate, the principal excitatory neurotransmitter. Drugs that selectively activate the GHB receptor cause absence seizures in high doses, as do GHB and GABA(B) agonists. (See Banerjee et al., 1995.)

Activation of both the GHB receptor and GABA(B) is responsible for the addictive profile of GHB. GHB's effect on dopamine release is biphasic. (See Hechler et al., 1991). Low concentrations stimulate dopamine release via the GHB receptor. (See Maitre et al., 1990). Higher concentrations inhibit dopamine release via GABA(B) receptors as do other GABA(B) agonists such as baclofen and phenibut. (See Smolders et al., 1995). After an initial phase of inhibition, dopamine release is then increased via the GHB receptor. Both the inhibition and increase of dopamine release by GHB are inhibited by opioid antagonists such as naloxone and naltrexone. Dynorphin may play a role in the inhibition of dopamine release via kappa opioid receptors. (See Mamalak 1989).

This may explain the paradoxical mix of sedative and stimulatory properties of GHB, as well as the so-called "rebound" effect, experienced by individuals using GHB as a sleeping agent, wherein they awake suddenly after several hours of GHB-induced deep sleep. That is to say that, over time, the concentration of GHB in the system decreases below the threshold for significant GABAB receptor activation and activates predominantly the GHB receptor, leading to wakefulness. However, one embodiment of the present invention is the unexpected discovery that drugs change the PD profile of GHB to alter its effects and its safety profile. Example drugs are include valproate and diclofenac. It is important for efficacy safety purposes that the effect of GHB be maintained consistently and not subject to variation due to the effects of other drugs.

Both of the metabolic breakdown pathways shown for GHB can run in either direction, depending on the concentrations of the substances involved, so the body can make its own GHB either from GABA or from succinic semialdehyde. Under normal physiological conditions, the concentration of GHB in the body is rather low, and the pathways would run in the reverse direction to what is shown here to produce endogenous GHB. However, when GHB is consumed for recreational or health promotion purposes, its concentration in the body is much higher than normal, which changes the enzyme kinetics so that these pathways operate to metabolize GHB rather than produce it.

The pharmacokinetics of GHB have been investigated in alcohol dependent patients (Ferrara et al., 1992) and in normal healthy males (Palatini et al., 1993) after oral administration. GHB possesses a rapid onset and short pharmacological effect (Ferrara et al., 1992; Palatine et al., 1993; Lettieri and Fung, 1978; Arena and Fung, 1980; Roth and Giarman, 1966; Vickers, 1969; Lee, 1977). In alcohol dependent patients, GHB absorption into and elimination from the systemic circulation were fast processes. Virtually no unchanged drug could be recovered in the urine. There were preliminary indications that the pharmacokinetics of GHB might be non-linear or dose-dependent (Ferrara et al., 1992). In the healthy volunteers study, the pharmacokinetics of three rising GHB doses (12.5, 25, and 50 mg/kg) were investigated. These findings indicate that both the oral absorption and elimination processes of GHB were capacity-limited though the degree of dose dependency was moderate (Palatini et al., 1993).

14

Methods of making GHB salts are described, for example, in U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236, and U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886 which are incorporated herein by reference.

It has been discovered that there are unexpected drug-drug interactions (DDI) between GHB and common drugs frequently prescribed for other ailments. It is one goal of the present invention to warn when those interactions may affect the safety profile of GHB. In one embodiment of the present invention, drugs that may affect GHB administration include 10 valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

GHB is a central nervous system (CNS) depressant. Alcohol and sedative hypnotics are contraindicated in patients who are using GHB. The concurrent use of GHB 15 with other CNS depressants, including but not limited to opioid analgesics, benzodiazepines, sedating antidepressants or antipsychotics, general anesthetics, muscle relaxants, and/or illicit CNS depressants, may increase the risk of respiratory depression, hypotension, profound sedation, syncope, and death. If use of these CNS depressants in combination with GHB is required, dose reduction or discontinuation of one or more CNS depressants (including GHB) 20 should be considered. In addition, if short-term use of an opioid (e.g. post- or perioperative) is required, interruption of treatment with GHB should be considered. See the package insert for Xyrem®.

GHB may impair respiratory drive, especially with overdoses associated with interactions with other drugs and alcohol. Since valproate may potentiate the effect of GHB, 25 a warning should accompany any use of valproate and GHB as stated herein. The warning should address the use of additional drugs that may further enhance the effect of GHB, such as alcohol or aspirin, for example.

Healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness 35 or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Patients should be queried about potential adverse events, such as excessive daytime sleepiness, CNS depression related 40 events, etc. upon initiation of GHB therapy and periodically thereafter. These queries should include info regarding additional medication such as diclofenac and valproate for example. See the Xyrem® package insert.

In one embodiment described herein, patients are warned 50 that combination of GHB with valproate can increase plasma levels and potentiate the activity of GHB and exacerbate all the effects and adverse event associated with GHB. These effects include the intended effects of drowsiness, sedation, and sleep and typically unintended events such as 55 depressed respiration, CNS depression, excessive drowsiness, hepatic impairment, and depression, among other things.

In another embodiment, diclofenac mitigates and protects 60 against the pharmacodynamic effects the effects of GHB. However, the mixture of GHB and diclofenac does not affect sleepiness and does not make a patient more attentive. Without wishing to be bound by theory, the effects may be due to the interaction between diclofenac and the GHB receptor in lieu of the MCT inhibitor activity.

Typical concentrations of GHB formulations are shown in 65 U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,263,650 and 8,324,275, for example. They include minimum concentrations starting from 150 mg/ml to

US 9,486,426 B2

15

450 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) and increasing to 600 mg/ml to 750 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) as a maximum. So, a broad range would include 150-750 mg/ml and any range within the broad range using 10 mg/ml increments. One embodiment of the invention is a range of 350-750 mg/ml and another is 450-550 mg/ml GHB. One embodiment of the present invention uses a GHB formulation with a pH range of 6-10, another uses a pH range of between 6.5-8. For example, a minimum concentration includes 350, 360, 370, 380 mg/ml, and so on up to at least 730, 740, and 750 mg/ml and all concentrations (measured in 10 mg/ml increments in between).

pH adjusting agents can include acids, bases and many of the compounds found in U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650. In some embodiments the pH adjusting agent is an acid selected from the group of: acetic, acetylsalicylic, barbital, barbituric, benzoic, benzyl penicillin, boric, caffeine, carbonic, citric, dichloroacetic, ethylenediaminetetra-acetic acid (EDTA), formic, glycerophosphoric, glycine, lactic, malic, mandelic, monochloroacetic, oxalic, phenobarbital, phenol, picric, propionic, saccharin, salicylic, sodium dihydrogen phosphate, succinic, sulfadiazine, sulfamerazine, sulfapyridine, sulfathiazole, tartaric, trichloroacetic, and the like, or inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, nitric, phosphoric or sulfuric, and the like.

GHB is commercially available as a sodium salt, however, it can also be formulated as a mixture of salts as shown in U.S. Ser. No. 13/739,886, which is incorporated by reference as stated above. For example, the mixture comprises one, two, or three or more salts selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂). The different salts may be present in different percentages. For example, in certain embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 5% to about 40%, the K.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 10% to about 40%, and the Ca.(GHB)₂ salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 20% to about 80%. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂ salts are present in a wt/wt % ratio of about 11%:39%:50%, respectively.

Valproic Acid

Valproic acid (VPA, also called valproate or divalproex), an acidic chemical compound, has found clinical use as an anticonvulsant and mood-stabilizing drug, primarily in the treatment of epilepsy, bipolar disorder, and, less commonly, major depression. See G. Rosenberg, *Cell. Mol. Life Sci.* 64 (2007) 2090-2103. It is also used to treat migraine headaches and schizophrenia. A typical dose of valproate varies by indication. Dosages for seizures are between 10 to 15 mg/kg/day, with potential increases of 5 to 10 mg/kg/day. VPA is a liquid at room temperature, but it can be reacted with a base such as sodium hydroxide to form the salt sodium valproate, which is a solid. The acid, salt, or a mixture of the two (valproate semisodium, divalproate) are marketed under the various brand names Depakote, Depakote ER, Depakene, Depakene Crono (extended release in Spain), Depacon, Depakine, Valparin and Stavzor.

Valproate is believed to affect the function of the neurotransmitter GABA in the human brain, making it an alternative to lithium salts in treatment of bipolar disorder. Its mechanism of action includes enhanced neurotransmission of GABA (by inhibiting GABA transaminase, which breaks down GABA). However, several other mechanisms

16

of action in neuropsychiatric disorders have been proposed for valproic acid in recent years. See Rosenberg G (2007). "The mechanisms of action of valproate in neuropsychiatric disorders: can we see the forest for the trees?". *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences* 64 (16): 2090-103.

Valproic acid also blocks the voltage-gated sodium channels and T-type calcium channels. These mechanisms make valproic acid a broad-spectrum anticonvulsant drug. Valproic acid is an inhibitor of the enzyme histone deacetylase 1 (HDAC1), hence it is a histone deacetylase inhibitor. Valproic acid may interact with carbamazepine, as valproates inhibit microsomal epoxide hydrolase (mEH), the enzyme responsible for the breakdown of carbamazepine-10,11 epoxide (the main active metabolite of carbamazepine) into inactive metabolites. (See Gonzalez, Frank J.; Robert H. Tukey (2006). "Drug Metabolism". In Laurence Brunton, John Lazo, Keith Parker (eds.). *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* (11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill. pp. 79.) By inhibiting mEH, valproic acid causes a buildup of the active metabolite, prolonging the effects of carbamazepine and delaying its excretion. Valproic acid also decreases the clearance of amitriptyline and nortriptyline.

Aspirin may decrease the clearance of valproic acid, leading to higher-than-intended serum levels of the anticonvulsant. Also, combining valproic acid with the benzodiazepine clonazepam can lead to profound sedation and increases the risk of absence seizures in patients susceptible to them.

Valproic acid and sodium valproate reduce the apparent clearance of lamotrigine (lamictal). In most patients, the lamotrigine dosage for coadministration with valproate must be reduced to half the monotherapy dosage.

Valproic acid is contraindicated in pregnancy, as it decreases the intestinal reabsorption of folate (folic acid), which leads to neural tube defects. Because of a decrease in folate, megaloblastic anemia may also result. Phenytoin also decreases folate absorption, which may lead to the same adverse effects as valproic acid.

Valproic acid, 2-propylvaleric acid, is synthesized by the alkylation of cyanoacetic ester with two moles of propylbromide, to give dipropylecyanoacetic ester. Hydrolysis and decarboxylation of the carboethoxy group gives dipropylacetonitrile, which is hydrolyzed into valproic acid. See U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,325,361 and 4,155,929 and GB Pat. Nos. 980279 and 1522450. See also, T. R. Henry, "The History of Valproate in Clinical Neuroscience." *Psychopharmacology bulletin* (2003) 37 (Suppl 2):5-16.

Diclofenac

Diclofenac is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) taken to reduce inflammation and as an analgesic reducing pain in certain conditions. Diclofenac is used to treat pain, inflammatory disorders, and dysmenorrhea and is a commonly used NSAID. See Auler et al., *Brazilian Jour. Med. Bio. Res.*, (1977) 30:369-374 and Hasan, et al., and *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, vol. 18, No. 1, January 2005, pp 18-24 both are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

The name is derived from its chemical name: 2-(2,6-dichloranilino) phenylacetic acid, it may be supplied as either the sodium or potassium salt. Diclofenac is available as a generic drug in a number of formulations; including Diclofenac diethylammonium applied topically to joints. Over-the-counter (OTC) use is approved in some countries for minor aches and pains and fever associated with common infections.

US 9,486,426 B2

17

Diclofenac is typically absorbed readily, but absorption is delayed upon administration with food. Its half-life varies from 1 to 3 hours with mean peak plasma levels of about 0.5 ug/ml to 1.0 ug/ml after 2 hours of a single dose of 25 mg. Diclofenac binds to human serum proteins, specifically albumin. See Hasan et al 2005.

Ibuprofen

Ibuprofen (from iso-butyl-propanoic-phenolic acid) is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) widely prescribed for pain relief, fever reduction, and swelling. Ibuprofen was derived from propanoic acid. Originally marketed as Brufen, ibuprofen is available under a variety of popular trademarks, including Motrin, Nurofen, Advil, and Nuprin. Ibuprofen is used primarily for fever, pain, dysmenorrhea and inflammatory diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis. It is also used for pericarditis and patent ductus arteriosus. It is a commonly used drug commercially available over the counter.

Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as ibuprofen work by inhibiting the enzyme cyclooxygenase (COX), which converts arachidonic acid to prostaglandin H2 (PGH2). PGH2, in turn, is converted by other enzymes to several other prostaglandins (which are mediators of pain, inflammation, and fever) and to thromboxane A2 (which stimulates platelet aggregation, leading to the formation of blood clots).

Like aspirin and indomethacin, ibuprofen is a nonselective COX inhibitor, in that it inhibits two isoforms of cyclooxygenase, COX-1 and COX-2. The analgesic, anti-pyretic, and anti-inflammatory activity of NSAIDs appears to operate mainly through inhibition of COX-2, whereas inhibition of COX-1 would be responsible for unwanted effects on the gastrointestinal tract. However, the role of the individual COX isoforms in the analgesic, anti-inflammatory, and gastric damage effects of NSAIDs is uncertain and different compounds cause different degrees of analgesia and gastric damage.

The synthesis of this compound consisted of six steps, started with the Friedel-Crafts acetylation of isobutylbenzene. Reaction with ethyl chloroacetate (Darzens reaction) gave the α,β -epoxy ester, which was hydrolyzed and decarboxylated to the aldehyde. Reaction with hydroxylamine gave the oxime, which was converted to the nitrile, then hydrolyzed to the desired acid. See U.S. Pat. No. 3,385,886.

An improved synthesis by BHC required only three steps. After a similar acetylation, hydrogenation with Raney nickel gave the alcohol, which underwent palladium-catalyzed carbonylation.

Valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen are monocarboxylate transporter inhibitors. One embodiment of the present application is a method to improve safety by monitoring the combination of these compounds with GHB.

Monocarboxylate Transporters

Monocarboxylate transporters, or MCTs, constitute a family of proton-linked plasma membrane transporters that carry molecules having one carboxylate group (monocarboxylates), such as lactate and pyruvate, across biological membranes. See Halestrap A P, Meredith D (2004). "The SLC16 gene family—from monocarboxylate transporters (MCTs) to aromatic amino acid transporters and beyond". Pflugers Arch. 447 (5): 619-28.

MCTs are a series of transporters which move chemicals in body tissues, such as kidneys, blood/brain barrier, intestines, etc. They can transport chemical compounds back from urine to create a higher concentration in the blood than the urine. They can be used to treat an overdose or to prevent excretion of a compound. They can also be used to prevent

18

absorption or transport into the brain or gut, or excretion via the urine. Exemplary MCT inhibitors include valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

Concomitant Administration of GHB and Drug-Drug Interactions

In one embodiment of the present invention the concomitant administration of MCT inhibitors, such as either valproate, diclofenac, or ibuprofen with GHB can effect GHB levels or activity and alter the GHB safety and efficacy profile to create an unsafe condition. For example, valproate can increase or prolong GHB effects and diclofenac can reduce or shorten GHB effects. For example, if the effects are increased, then there could be an increase of adverse events associated with too much GHB. Also, the effect of GHB may be prolonged to cause side effects, such as excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS), to last into the daytime. Prolongation of the effect would counter the purpose for providing the GHB and could create an unsafe situation for patients who wish to be alert and who may be engaged in otherwise dangerous activity. This concomitant administration can transform an otherwise safe dose of GHB into one with safety concerns. It is a health risk to patients and a medical challenge to health care workers.

The drug-drug interaction could also reduce the effects of GHB by altering its blood levels or otherwise. Reduction in the GHB level may also provide an unsafe condition due to excessive daytime sleepiness. In each situation, where GHB is increased, decreased or excessively cleared, those drug-drug interactions need to be identified to a health care worker to adjust the dose of GHB or discontinue the use of the other compound.

As recited on the product insert for Xyrem®, healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB.

In some embodiments in which diclofenac or valproate is discontinued to avoid an adverse drug interaction, they are discontinued within at least 3 days prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In various embodiments, diclofenac or valproate is discontinued within at least 4 days, or at least 5 days, or at least 6 days, or at least 7 days (or one week), or at least 8 days, or at least 9 days, or at least 10 days, or at least 11 days, or at least 12 days, or at least 13 days, or at least 14 days (or two weeks), or at least 15 days, or at least 16 days, or at least 17 days, or at least 18 days, or at least 19 days, or at least 20 days, or at least 21 days (or three weeks) prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In some embodiments, the diclofenac or valproate is discontinued no later than 2 weeks or 1 week before starting GHB therapy.

In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy when valproate is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient downward relative to a previously administered dosage in the patient, so the dose does not result in an increased exposure to GHB. In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy when diclofenac is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient upward relative to a previously administered dosage in the patient, so the dose results in an effective exposure to GHB.

Thus, the present invention includes a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness,

US 9,486,426 B2

19

cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB), wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate such additive effects.

In one embodiment of the present invention, a reduced amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with valproate. In another embodiment of the present invention, an increased amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with diclofenac.

When valproate is concomitantly administered with GHB, The amount of GHB can be reduced at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 9 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to reduce the normal dose by 15% is 7.65 g/day. The GHB dose reduction may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. A typical adult range of doses for GHB are between 4.5 or 6 g as a minimum and 8 or 10 g/day as a maximum divided into two doses. The dose recommended on the package insert and approved by the FDA is between 4.5 and 9.0 g/day. Typical exemplary pediatric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 6 g/day for pediatric patients aged 0-6 years. Typical exemplary pediatric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 9 g/day for pediatric patients aged 7-17 years. However, these ranges are not absolute and can be increased or decreased by 1-2 grams in either direction. One dose is typically administered prior to bed (night time sleep) and another dose administered 1-2 hours later. See the Xyrem® package insert (Xyrem® is a registered trademark of Jazz Pharmaceuticals plc or its subsidiaries.). Either or both of the multiple doses may be reduced to present a safer administration profile. For example, the first dose may be reduced by the numbers referred to above or the second may be reduced by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day may be reduced at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary decrease in an adult dose would be to reduce the maximum dose to less than 8.5, 8, 7.5, 7, 6.5, 6, 5.5, 5, 4.5, 4, 3.5, 3 g/day and so on. The minimum dose will be reduced accordingly to 4, 3.5, 3, 2.5, 2, and so on.

In one embodiment of the present invention, diclofenac may dampen or delay the effect of GHB upon a patient during concomitant administration. In one embodiment, it may be useful to increase the amount of GHB that is administered to the patient. For example, GHB may be increased at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 10 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to increase the normal dose by 15% is 11.5 g/day. The GHB dose increase may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. Either, or both, of the multiple doses may be increased to present a safer administration profile. For example, the first dose may be increased by the numbers referred to above or the second may be increased by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day may be increased at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary decrease in an adult dose would be to increase the minimum dose to 5, 5.5, 6, 6.5, 7,

20

7.5, 8, 8.5 g/day and so on. An increase in the maximum dose would be at least 9.5, 10, 10.5, 11, 11.5, 12, 12.5, 13, 13.5, 14 g/day and so on.

In another aspect, a package or kit is provided comprising GHB, optionally in a container, and a package insert, package label, instructions or other labelling including any one, two, three or more of the following information or recommendations: (a) use of diclofenac or valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors, such as diclofenac or valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in exposure to GHB, (d) concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in a decrease in exposure to GHB, and/or (e) MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

Alternatively, diclofenac can be administered to counteract the effects of GHB toxicity using a reverse of the numerical relationships above. Similarly, valproate can be used to increase the effects of GHB in patients that cannot take higher amounts of GHB. In this regard, the present invention includes methods for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that potential toxic effects of GHB are reduced. The present invention also includes methods for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

The examples below, which show drug interaction studies in healthy adults, demonstrated those instances, test conditions or metrics which showed a distinction between GHB and either of the test compounds, diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen. Additionally, drug interaction studies in healthy adults demonstrated pharmacokinetic or clinically significant pharmacodynamic interactions between GHB and diclofenac or valproate.

Example 1

This study was designed to compare Pharmacokinetic (PK) and Pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® sodium oxybate (GHB) with and without concomitant administration of diclofenac. A crossover design was employed to allow within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with diclofenac. The PK and PD effects of Xyrem® upon those of diclofenac were also studied.

The PD parameters included a selection of automated tests of attention, information processing, working memory and skilled coordination from the CDR System. (Rapeport et al, 1996ab; Williams et al, 1996). (Wesnes et al, 1997). (Wesnes et al, 2000) (Modi et al, 2007).

Methods

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, three-period, crossover study in healthy subjects. 60 24 subjects were recruited to ensure that 18 completed the study. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eligible subjects were entered into the study and received one of the following treatments per period, in randomized order:

Diclofenac placebo administered as one capsule qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant adminis-

US 9,486,426 B2

21

tration day, one diclofenac placebo capsule administered at -1 h and 3 h, and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Diclofenac administered as 50 mg immediate-release (IR) tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Diclofenac administered as 50 mg IR tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and Xyrem® placebo (volume equivalent to 3 g of Xyrem® oral solution) administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Subjects were randomized to one of the above treatments on Day 1, crossed over to another treatment on Day 6, and crossed over again to the remaining treatment on Day 11 (Table 1). Subjects were dosed in groups of up to 12. A 2-day washout period followed each of the treatment periods. The treatments were as follows: A=Diclofenac placebo (qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® two 3 g doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. B=Diclofenac (50 mg qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® two 3 g doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. C=Diclofenac (50 mg qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® placebo two doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time (SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

Results

Power of attention-On this measure of focussed attention and information processing Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 0.5 h; while the smaller impairments with the combination narrowly missed significance at 1 and 4.5 h. Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac also resulted in impairments at two timepoints compared to diclofenac alone which at 6.5 h was significant and a trend at 8 h. See FIG. 1 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy-On this measure of focussed attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 2 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time-On this measure of focussed attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 3 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

Choice Reaction Time Mean-Impairments to this measure of attention and information processing were significantly smaller than with Xyrem® alone when co-dosed with diclofenac during the hour following the first dose of Xyrem®. See FIG. 4 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

22

While diclofenac alone had no effect on sleepiness or cognitive function, when co-dosed with Xyrem® it significantly reduced the effects of the compound on Power of Attention and two of the contributing scores, simple and choice reaction time; these effects being seen during the hour after the first dose of Xyrem®. On the other hand, there was no evidence on any measure of greater cognitive impairment or sleepiness when the two compounds were co-dosed.

The extent of the reductions in the impairments to the ability to focus attention and efficiently process information were quite notable, and likely to be of clinical relevance. It is interesting that protective effect of diclofenac was not seen on the subjects ratings of alertness, such a dissociation having been seen previously with haloperidol in healthy elderly volunteers (Beuzan et al, 1991).

In conclusion, evidence of an interaction was seen in this study over the hour following the first dose of Xyrem® on the study days, the impairments being notably smaller when diclofenac was co-dosed with Xyrem®. There was no interaction however on the feelings of sleepiness in the subjects.

Example 2

This study is designed to compare the pharmacokinetic (PK) and pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. The crossover design allows within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time (SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

The objectives of this study were to evaluate the PK and PD of Xyrem® co-administered with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets and to evaluate and compare the safety and tolerability of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets.

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, five-period, crossover study in healthy male subjects. The study was conducted in approximately 24 healthy subjects to ensure completion of 16 subjects. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eligible subjects were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 1 and 2; were dosed with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets for 10 consecutive days in Period 3; and while continuing to take divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 4 and 5 (Table 1).

Periods 1 and 2:

Subjects were randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo 4 hours apart in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 AM (first dose) and 1 PM (second dose) on Days 1 and 3. PK and PD parameters were evaluated during the 24 hours postdose.

Blood samples (4 mL) for sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at predose and at specified time-points up to 12 hours after the first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo on Days 1 and 3. A PD Battery including the Karolinska Sleepiness Scale, Simple Reaction Time task, Digit Vigilance task, Choice Reaction Time task, Tracking task, and Numeric Working Memory task was administered at planned timepoints up to X hours after first dose (X hours after second dose), and safety were monitored at specified timepoints on Days 1 and 3 as well as throughout the periods.

US 9,486,426 B2

23

Period 3:

All subjects received divalproex sodium extended-release tablets 1250 mg at approximately 8 AM on Days 5 through 14. Blood samples (4 mL) for valproic acid concentrations were collected before the divalproex sodium dose (to determine trough concentration for assessment of steady state) on Days 13 and 14. Safety was monitored at specified time-points as well as throughout the period.

Periods 4 and 5:

Subjects continued taking 1250 mg divalproex sodium extended-release tablets at approximately 8 AM on Days 15 through 18. Subjects were also randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 am (first dose) and 1 pm (second dose) on Days 15 and 18. The first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken approximately 1 hour after dosing with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, and the second dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken 4 hours after the first Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose.

Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at pre Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose and at specified timepoints after the first Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo dose on Days 15 and 18. Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma valproic acid concentrations were collected pre divalproex sodium dose and at specified timepoints after the dose of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets on Day 15 and 18.

The PD battery was administered on Day 15 and 18, and safety was monitored at specified times on Days 15 and 18 as well as throughout the periods.

The treatments were as follows: A=Xyrem®, two 3 g doses, 4 hours apart at approximately 9 AM (1st dose) and 1 PM (2nd dose); B=Xyrem® placebo, two doses, 4 hours apart; and C=Divalproex sodium 1250 mg, once a day at approximately 8 AM.

Results

The results below show the tests in which GHB administration was affected by concomitant administration of any of three MCT inhibitors, such as valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

Continuity of Attention

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 hours and 8 hours. See FIG. 5 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population).

Simple Reaction Time Mean

At 1 hour and 4 hours, Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together produced statistically reliably greater impairments than Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 6, which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy

At 2.5 and 4 hours Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together were statistically reliably different greater impairment to Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 7, which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

Tracking Distance from Target

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a statistically significant difference by a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 and 8 hours. See FIG. 8 which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

24

Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a difference at 4.5 through 8 hours. See FIG. 9, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed statistically significant differences at 2.5, 5 and 8 hours when the combination produced greater impairment. See FIG. 10, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

In addition, it was observed that renal excretion of GHB increase 30% upon co-administration of Valproate.

We also found pk changes which were consistent with the inhibition of GHB dehydrogenase. This effect will increase the exposure of GHB to the subject and increase Cmax and AUC about 15%.

The combination of Xyrem® dosed with divalproex sodium was compared to divalproex sodium alone, more consistent statistically significant impairments over time were seen with the combination, than when Xyrem® was compared to its placebo, indicating that the effects of co-administration, when they appeared, were in the direction of increased impairments.

As has been seen previously, Xyrem® induces sleepiness and produces impairments to attention, working memory and performance on a tracking task in healthy volunteers. Divalproex sodium alone showed no consistent or notable effects on cognitive function or sleepiness. There were occasions when co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex sodium produced greater deficits than Xyrem® alone. Further the combination also produced more consistent impairments when compared with divalproex sodium alone, than did Xyrem® when compared to its placebo. Thus this study has found evidence that co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex produces greater impairments to cognitive function and sleepiness than were seen with Xyrem® alone.

Example 3

The effects of Ibuprofen were evaluated when combined with Xyrem® in a manner similar to the above. No differences were seen using the metrics above for Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), and the following CDR System tasks: Simple Reaction Time, Digit Vigilance, Choice Reaction Time, Tracking and Numeric Working Memory. However, it was observed that renal excretion of Xyrem® doubled upon concomitant administration of Ibuprofen and Xyrem®.

All publications and patent applications cited in this specification are herein incorporated by reference as if each individual publication or patent application were specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference.

Although the foregoing has been described in some detail by way of illustration and example for purposes of clarity of understanding, it will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art in light of the teachings of the specification that certain changes and modifications may be made thereto without departing from the spirit or scope of the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient who is currently taking gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof comprising: administering to the patient a dose of divalproex sodium concomitant to a dose of GHB or salt

US 9,486,426 B2

25

thereof; and reducing the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient between about 5% and about 50% wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is between 4.5 g to 9 g.

2. The method of claim 1 further comprising monitoring patient response and adjusting the GHB dose to maintain the effect of the GHB.

3. The method of claim 1 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

4. The method of claim 1 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 6 g.

5. The method of claim 1 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 7.5 g.

6. The method of claim 1 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 9 g.

7. The method of claim 1 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced between about 15% and about 50%.

8. The method of claim 1 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced by between about 20% and about 50%.

9. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient who is currently taking gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof comprising: reducing the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient between about 5% and about 50% during concomitant administration of divalproex sodium, compared to the daily dosage amount of between 4.5 g and 9 g of GHB or salt thereof currently used in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium.

10. The method of claim 9, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced by between about 15% and about 50% compared to the manufacturer's recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof.

11. The method of claim 9 further comprising monitoring patient response and adjusting the GHB dose to maintain the effect of the GHB.

12. The method of claim 9 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

13. The method of claim 12 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced by between about 15% and about 50%.

14. The method of claim 13 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced at least 20%.

15. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium comprising: administering to the patient a starting daily dosage amount of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof that is between about 15% and about 25% lower than a manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of between 4.5 g and 9 g in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium.

26

16. The method of claim 15 wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 4.5 g.

17. The method of claim 16 wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is divided into two equal doses.

18. The method of claim 17 wherein the first or second dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

19. The method of claim 15 wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or a salt thereof is reduced by between about 20% and about 25%.

20. The method of claim 15 further comprising monitoring patient response and adjusting the GHB dose to treat the patient.

21. The method of claim 15 wherein the manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

22. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium comprising: administering to the patient a starting daily dosage amount of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof that is between about 15% and about 30% lower than the starting daily dosage amount of between 4.5 g and 9 g GHB that would otherwise have been recommended to the patient if the patient was not currently taking divalproex sodium.

23. The method of claim 22 wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium is lower than 4.5 g.

24. The method of claim 23 wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium is divided into two equal doses.

25. The method of claim 24 wherein the first or second dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

26. The method of claim 22 further comprising monitoring patient response and adjusting the GHB dose to treat the patient.

27. The method of claim 22 wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or a salt thereof is reduced by between about 20% and about 30%.

28. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium comprising the steps of: administering to the patient a daily dosage amount of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof that is between about 15% and about 30% lower than 4.5 g.

29. The method of claim 28 wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is divided into two equal doses.

30. The method of claim 29 wherein the first dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

31. The method of claim 29 wherein the second dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT D



US010213400B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Eller

(10) **Patent No.:** US 10,213,400 B2
(b5) **Date of Patent:** *Feb. 26, 2019

(54) **METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS**(71) Applicant: **JAZZ PHARMACEUTICALS IRELAND LIMITED**, Dublin (IE)(72) Inventor: **Mark Eller**, Redwood City, CA (US)(73) Assignee: **JAZZ PHARMACEUTICALS IRELAND LIMITED**, Dublin (IE)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **15/869,792**(22) Filed: **Jan. 12, 2018**(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2018/0200210 A1 Jul. 19, 2018

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation of application No. 15/343,806, filed on Nov. 4, 2016, now abandoned, which is a continuation of application No. 14/707,914, filed on May 8, 2015, now Pat. No. 9,486,426, which is a continuation of application No. 13/837,714, filed on Mar. 15, 2013, now Pat. No. 9,050,302.

(60) Provisional application No. 61/771,557, filed on Mar. 1, 2013, provisional application No. 61/777,873, filed on Mar. 12, 2013.

(51) **Int. Cl.**

A61K 31/19 (2006.01)
A61K 31/20 (2006.01)
A61K 31/33 (2006.01)
A61K 31/55 (2006.01)
A61P 11/00 (2006.01)
A61P 25/20 (2006.01)
A61P 43/00 (2006.01)
A61K 31/196 (2006.01)
A61K 31/505 (2006.01)
A61K 31/616 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.**

CPC *A61K 31/19* (2013.01); *A61K 31/20* (2013.01); *A61K 31/33* (2013.01); *A61K 31/505* (2013.01); *A61K 31/55* (2013.01); *A61K 31/616* (2013.01); *A61P 11/00* (2018.01); *A61P 25/20* (2018.01); *A61P 43/00* (2018.01)

(58) **Field of Classification Search**

CPC A61K 31/19; A61K 31/616; A61K 31/20; A61K 31/33; A61K 31/55

USPC 514/188.3

See application file for complete search history.

(56)

References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,051,619 A	8/1962	Laborit
3,325,361 A	6/1967	Meunier
3,385,886 A	5/1968	Nicholson et al.
4,155,929 A	5/1979	Chignac et al.
4,393,236 A	7/1983	Klosa
4,983,612 A	1/1991	Gessa et al.
5,380,937 A	1/1995	Koehler et al.
5,758,095 A	5/1998	Albaum et al.
5,833,599 A	11/1998	Schriger et al.
5,845,255 A	12/1998	Mayaud
5,990,162 A	11/1999	Scharf
6,014,631 A	1/2000	Teagarden et al.
6,067,524 A	5/2000	Byerly et al.
6,112,182 A	8/2000	Akers et al.
6,204,245 B1	3/2001	Siegel et al.
6,317,719 B1	11/2001	Schriger et al.
6,356,873 B1	3/2002	Teagarden et al.
6,472,431 B2	11/2002	Cook et al.
6,780,889 B2	8/2004	Cook et al.
7,015,200 B2	3/2006	Mamelak et al.
7,072,840 B1	7/2006	Mayaud
7,262,219 B2	8/2007	Cook et al.
7,572,605 B2	8/2009	Mamelak et al.
7,668,730 B2	2/2010	Reardan et al.
7,765,106 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.
7,765,107 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.
7,797,171 B2	9/2010	Reardan et al.
7,851,506 B2	12/2010	Cook et al.
7,895,059 B2	2/2011	Reardan et al.
8,263,650 B2	9/2012	Cook et al.
8,324,275 B2	12/2012	Cook et al.
8,591,922 B1	11/2013	Allphin et al.
8,772,306 B1	7/2014	Eller

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

DE	237 309	5/1985
EP	0616804	5/1985

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

U.S. Appl. No. 61/317,212, filed Mar. 24, 2010, Allphin et al.
“Disulfiram/sodium oxybate/valproate interaction,” *Reactions Weekly*, (Jul. 2011), p. 18, vol. 1361, No. 1.
“Xyrem: EPAR—Procedural steps taken before authorization,” (Aug. 9, 2006), 1 page. Available at http://www.ema.europa.eu/ema/index.jsp?curl=pages/med/ici/nes/huma/n/medicines/000593/human_medOO_1163.jsp&mid=WCOB01_ac058001_d124. Downloaded Jan. 28, 2015.

(Continued)

Primary Examiner — Shirley V Gembeh

(74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm — Jones Day

(57)

ABSTRACT

One embodiment of the present invention is to improve the safety and efficacy of the administration of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient. It has been discovered that the concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor, such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, will affect GHB administration. For example, it has been discovered that diclofenac lowers the effect of GHB in the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition. Furthermore, it has been discovered that valproate increases the effect of GHB on the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition.

US 10,213,400 B2

Page 2

(56)

References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

8,952,029	B2	2/2015	Eller
9,050,302	B2	6/2015	Eller
2003/0125385	A1	7/2003	Cook et al.
2003/0171270	A1	9/2003	Civelli et al.
2006/0018933	A1	1/2006	Vaya et al.
2008/0293698	A1	11/2008	Johnson
2009/0137565	A1	5/2009	Frucht
2010/0112056	A1	5/2010	Rourke et al.
2010/0160299	A1	6/2010	Baker, Jr. et al.
2011/0237664	A1	9/2011	Dalton et al.
2012/0076865	A1	3/2012	Allphin et al.
2014/0249222	A1	9/2014	Eller

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

GB	922 029	3/1963
GB	980 279	1/1965
GB	1 522 450	8/1978
RU	2232012	7/2004
WO	WO 2006053186	5/2006
WO	WO 2010053691	5/2010
WO	WO 2011119839	9/2011
WO	WO 2011139271	11/2011
WO	WO 2012037457	3/2012
WO	WO 2014134380 A1	9/2014

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- “Xyrem®,” The Pharmaceutical Journal, (Feb. 18, 2006). Available at: <http://www.pharmaceutical-journal.com/new-medicines/-/spc-changes/-/counter-products/-/discontinued-products/-/oridycyt-miscellany/20016677.article#xyrem>. Downloaded Mar. 5, 2015.
- “Xyrem®: Procedural steps taken and scientific information after the authorisation,” European Medicine Agency, (2014), pp. 1-9.
- “Guidance for Industry: Drug Interaction Studies—Study Design, Data Analysis, and Implications for Dosing and Labeling,” Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Clinical Pharmacology Division, (Feb. 2012), pp. 1-79. Available at: <https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm292362.pdf>.
- “Scientific Discussion” European Medicine Agency, (2014), pp. 1-30. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Scientific_Discussion/human/000593/WC500057101.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 17, 2017.
- AbbVie Pharmaceuticals, Inc., “Depakote® (Divalproex Sodium) Tablets for Oral Use: FDA Approved Labeling Text,” (Oct. 7, 2011).
- Arena et al., “Absorption of Sodium γ -Hydroxybutyrate and Its Prodrug γ -Butyrolactone: Relationship between In Vitro Transport and In Vivo Absorption,” *J. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 69(3): 356-358, 1980.
- Auler et al., “Diclofenac Plasma Protein Binding: PK-PD Modelling in Cardiac Patients Submitted to Cardiopulmonary Bypass,” *Braz. J. Med. Bio. Res.*, 30: 369-374, 1997.
- Banerjee et al., “Presynaptic Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB) and Gamma-Aminobutyric Acid_B (GABA_B) Receptor-Mediated Release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in Rat Thalamic Ventrobasal Nucleus (VB): A Possible Mechanism for the Generation of Absence-Like Seizures Induced by GHB,” *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 273 (3): 1534-1543, 1995.
- Bédard et al., “Nocturnal γ -Hydroxybutyrate. Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients,” *Clin. Neuropharmacol.*, 12(1): 29-36, 1989.
- Bernasconi et al., “Experimental Absence Seizures: Potential Roles of γ -Hydroxybutyrate and GABA_B Receptors,” *J. Neural Transm.*, 35:155-177, 1992.
- Bhattacharya et al., “GHB (γ -Hydroxybutyrate) Carrier-Mediated Transport across the Blood-Brain Barrier,” *The Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, 311 (1): 92-98. 2004.
- Broughton and Mamelak, “Effects of Nocturnal Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Sleep/Waking Patterns in Narcolepsy-Cataplexy,” *Can J. Neural. Sci.*, 7(1):23-31, 1980.
- Broughton et al., “The Treatment of Narcolepsy-Cataplexy with Nocturnal Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate,” *Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques*, 6(1): 1-6, 1979.
- Cagnin et al., “ γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid-Induced Psychosis and Seizures,” *Epilepsy & Behavior*, 21:203-205, 2011.
- Cash et al., “ γ -Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Function Studied by the Modulation of Nitric Oxide Synthase Activity in Rat Frontal Cortex Punches,” *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 58 (11): 1815-1819, 1999.
- Cash, “Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Overview of the Pros and Cons for it Being a Neurotransmitter and/or a Useful Therapeutic Agent,” *Neurosci. Biobehavioral Rev.*, 18(2):291-304, 1994.
- Chateauvieux et al., “Molecular and Therapeutic Potential and Toxicity of Valproic Acid,” *Journal of Biomedicine and Biotechnology*, (2010), pp. 1-18.
- Defendant Par Pharmaceutical, Inc.’s Initial Invalidity Contentions for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302, filed Jun. 23, 2017, 68 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Aug. 19, 2014, from Ranbaxy Laboratories Limited to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: “Notice of Paragraph IV Certification Regarding NDA 021196 Xyrem® Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/mL Oral Solution with respect to U.S. Pat. No. 6,780,889; U.S. Pat. No. 7,262,219; U.S. Pat. No. 7,668,730; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,106; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,107; U.S. Pat. No. 7,851,605; U.S. Pat. No. 7,895,059; U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650; U.S. Pat. No. 8,324,275; U.S. Pat. No. 8,457,988; U.S. Pat. No. 8,589,182; U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963; and U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306.”
- Notification Letter dated Aug. 5, 2014, from Par Pharmaceutical, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution (XYREM®); U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; Notice of Paragraph IV Certification.
- Notification Letter dated Feb. 15, 2017, from Ohm Laboratories Inc., Sun Pharmaceutical Industries Ltd., and Ranbaxy Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Supplemental Notice of Certification Under 21 U.S.C. § 355(j)(2)(B)(ii) (§ 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act) and 21 C.F.R. § 314.95, 5 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Feb. 16, 2017, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. Re: Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426 and U.S. Pat. No. 9,539,330, 15 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Feb. 3, 2016, from Watson Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: “Notification of Certification for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act,” 16 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 13, 2017, from Ohm Laboratories Inc., Sun Pharmaceutical Industries Ltd., and Ranbaxy Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Supplemental Notice of Certification Under 21 U.S.C. § 355(j)(2)(B)(ii) (§ 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act) and 21 C.F.R. § 314.95, 5 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 13, 2017, from Roxane Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Notification Pursuant to the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. § 355(j)(2)(B)(ii) and 21 C.F.R. § 314.95(c)(1)) for Roxane Laboratories, Inc.’s ANDA No. 202090 re U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426 (Our Ref: Xyrem®/Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution), 16 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 16, 2015, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963; U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; and U.S. Pat. No. 8,859,619, 22 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 16, 2017, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals, LLC to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426, Concerning ANDA 203631 for Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution, 500 mg/mL, 14 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 9, 2015, from Roxane Laboratories to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Patent Notice Pursuant to Section 505U(2)(B)(ii) [21 USC Section 355U(2)(B)(ii)] for U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963; U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; and U.S. Pat. No. 8,859,619, 32 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jul. 21, 2015, from Lupin Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd., and Jazz Pharmaceuticals plc re: “Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution, 500 mg/ml: Notification of Certifications for U.S. Pat. No. 6,780,889 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,262,219 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,668,730 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,106 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,107 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,851,506

US 10,213,400 B2

Page 3

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,895,059 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,324,275 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,457,988 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,589,182 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,859,619 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,952,062 B2, and U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 B2 Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act,” 454 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jul. 22, 2015, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: “Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302, Concerning ANDA 203631 for Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution, 500 mg/mL.” 14 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jun. 14, 2017, from Ascent Pharmaceuticals, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Certification of non-Infringement and/or Invalidity of U.S. Pat. No. 6,780,889; U.S. Pat. No. 7,262,219; U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650; U.S. Pat. No. 8,859,619; U.S. Pat. No. 9,539,330; U.S. Pat. No. 8,324,275; U.S. Pat. No. 7,851,506; U.S. Pat. No. 8,952,062; U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302; U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426; U.S. Pat. No. 7,668,730; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,106; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,107; U.S. Pat. No. 7,895,059; U.S. Pat. No. 8,457,988; U.S. Pat. No. 8,589,182; U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963, 97 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jun. 5, 2015, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: “Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. No. 6,780,889; U.S. Pat. No. 7,262,219; U.S. Pat. No. 7,668,730; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,106; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,107; U.S. Pat. No. 7,851,506; U.S. Pat. No. 7,895,059; U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650; U.S. Pat. No. 8,324,275; U.S. Pat. No. 8,457,988; U.S. Pat. No. 8,589,182; U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963; U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; U.S. Pat. No. 8,859,619; U.S. Pat. No. 8,952,062,” 140 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Nov. 24, 2015, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: “Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 and U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306,” 45 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Oct. 29, 2014, from Watson Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: “Notification of Certification for U.S. Pat. No. 6,780,889; U.S. Pat. No. 7,262,219; U.S. Pat. No. 7,668,730; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,106; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,107; U.S. Pat. No. 7,851,605; U.S. Pat. No. 7,895,059; U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650; U.S. Pat. No. 8,324,275; U.S. Pat. No. 8,457,988; U.S. Pat. No. 8,589,182; U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963; and U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(iv) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.”
- Notification Letter dated Oct. 9, 2015, from Ranbaxy Inc., a Sun Pharma company, to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: “Supplemental Notice of Paragraph IV Certification Regarding NDA 021196 Xyrem® Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution With Respect to U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302,” 50 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Sep. 1, 2015, from Par Pharmaceutical, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: “Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution (XYREM®) U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 Notice of Paragraph IV Certification,” 51 pages.
- Notification Letter received Dec. 14, 2015, from Roxane Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: Paragraph IV Certification for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302. Petition for IPR by Ranbaxy, Inc., IPR2016-00738, filed Mar. 10, 2016, 73 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC, IPR2016-00546, filed Feb. 2, 2016, 66 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Par Pharmaceutical, Inc., IPR2016-00002, filed Oct. 6, 2015, 65 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Ranbaxy, Inc., IPR2016-00024, filed Oct. 7, 2015, 63 pages.
- PTAB decision entered Apr. 12, 2016, denying institution for IPR by Par Pharmaceutical, Inc., IPR2016-00002, re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 17 pages.
- PTAB decision entered Apr. 12, 2016, partially denying institution for IPR by Ranbaxy Inc., IPR2016-00024, re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 21 pages.
- PTAB decision entered Jul. 28, 2016, denying institution for IPR by Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC, IPR2016-00546, re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 16 pages.
- Depakote (divalproex sodium) Tablets for Oral Use, FDA Labeling Text (Oct. 7, 2011).
- Dimitrijevic et al., “*Drosophila GABA_A Receptors are Involved in Behavioral Effects of γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB)*,” *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 519 (3): 246-252, 2005.
- Ferrara et al., “*Pharmacokinetics of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Alcohol Dependent Patients after Single and Repeated Oral Doses*,” *Br. J. Clin. Pharmac.*, 34: 231-235, 1992.
- Fides, “*Solutions of 4-hydroxybutyric acid salts for injection*,” Chem Abstract ES302338, Laboratorio M. Cuatescates, SA (2011), 2 pages.
- Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Clinical Pharmacology Division; “*Guidance for Industry: Drug Interaction Studies—Study Design, Data Analysis, and Implications for Dosing and Labeling*” (Feb. 2012).
- Fuller et al., “From Club Drug to Orphan Drug: Sodium Oxybate (Xyrem) for the Treatment of Cataplexy,” *Pharmacotherapy*, 23(9): 1205-1209, 2003.
- Gallimberti et al., “*Clinical Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal*,” *Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci*, 244: 113-114, 1994.
- Gallimberti et al., “*Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Alcohol Withdrawal Syndrome*,” *The Lancet*, Sep. 30: 787-789, 1989.
- Gallimberti et al., “*Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal Syndrome*,” *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 9(1): 77-81, 1993.
- Gallimberti et al., “*Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence: A Double-Blind Study*,” *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, 16(4): 673-676, 1992.
- Gerra et al., “*Flumazenil Effects on Growth Hormone Response to Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid*,” *Internat. Clin. Psychopharm.*, 9: 211-215, 1994.
- Gessa et al., “*Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence*,” *Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement*, 15 (Suppl. 1, Pt. A): 303A-304A, 1992.
- Gonzalez et al., “*Drug Metabolism*,” in *Goodman & Gilman’s The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* (11th ed.), Brunton et al. (eds.), New York: McGraw-Hill. pp. 71-91, 2006.
- Halestrap et al., “*The SLC16 Gene Family—From Monocarboxylate Transporters (MCTs) to Aromatic Amino Acid Transporters and Beyond*,” *Pflugers Arch.*, 447 (5): 619-628, 2004.
- Harvey et al., “*The Inhibitory Effect of Sodium n-Dipropyl Acetate on the Degradative Enzymes of the GABA Shunt*,” *FEBS Ltrs*, 52 (2): 251-254, 1975.
- Hasan et al., “*Pharmacokinetics of Diclofenac Sodium in Normal Man*,” *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 18(1): 18-24, 2005.
- Hasenbos et al., “*Anaesthesia for bullectomy*,” *Anaesthesia*, 40: 977-980, 1985.
- Hechler et al., “*Extracellular Events Induced by γ-Hydroxybutyrate in Striatum: A Microdialysis Study*,” *J. Neurochem.*, 56 (3): 938-944, 1991.
- Hechler et al., “*γ-Hydroxybutyrate Conversion into GABA Induces Displacement of GABA_A Binding that is Blocked by Valproate and Ethosuximide*,” *The Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, 281(2): 753-760, 1997.
- Henry, Thomas R., “*The History of Divalproex in Clinical Neuroscience*,” *Psychopharmacology Bulletin*, 37 (Suppl 2): 5-16, 2003.
- International Searching Authority, “*International Search Report*, dated Jun. 24, 2014 in International Patent Application No. PCT/US2014/019217.”
- International Searching Authority, “*Written Opinion*, dated Jun. 24, 2014 in International Patent Application No. PCT/US2014/019217.”
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., “*Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics*,” Xyrem®, 30 pages. Available at: <http://www.ema.europa.eu>.

US 10,213,400 B2

Page 4

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_product_Information/buman /000593/WC5000571 03.pdf. Downloaded Mar. 6, 2015.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text" (Nov. 18, 2005).
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Xyrem® FDA Approved Label (Jul. 17, 2002), 95 pages.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," XYREM® SmPC European Package Insert available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-Product_Information/human/000593/WC500057103.pdf (downloaded May 3, 2013).
- Kaufman and Nelson, "An Overview of γ -hydroxybutyrate Catabolism: The Role of the Cytosolic NADP+-Dependent Oxidoreductase EC 1.1.1.19 and of a Mitochondrial Hydroxyacid-Oxoacid Transhydrogenase in the Initial, Rate-limiting Step in this Pathway," *Neurochem. Res.*, 16(9):965-974, 1991.
- Kaufman and Nelson, "Evidence for the Participation of Cystasolic NADP—Dependent Oxidoreductase in Catabolism of γ -Hydroxybutyrate In Vivo," *J. Neurochemistry*, 48:1935-1941, 1987.
- Knerr et al., "Therapeutic Concepts in Succinate Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase (SSADH; ALDH5a1) Deficiency (γ -hydroxybutyric aciduria). Hypothesis Evolved from 25 Years of Patient Evaluation, Studies in Aldh5a1-/- Mice and Characterization of γ -hydroxybutyric acid Pharmacology," *J. Inher. Metab. Dis.*, 30(3):279-294, 2007.
- Kuriyama et al., "Blood—Brain Barrier to H³- γ -Aminobutyric Acid in Normal and Amino Oxyacetic Acid-Treated Animals," *Neuropharmacology*, 10: 103-108, 1971.
- Laborit, H., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semialdehyde and Sleep," Laboratoire d'Eutonologie, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France, pp. 257-274, 1973.
- Ladinsky et al., Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System, *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacol.*, 322: 42-48, 1983.
- LAMICTAL (lamotrigine) labeling.
- Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and Narcolepsy: A Double-Blind Placebo-Controlled Study," *Sleep*, 16(3): 216-220, 1993.
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep-Triggering Mechanisms," *Sleep*, 13(1): 24-30, 1990.
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate: A Double-Blind Study of Normal Subjects," *Sleep Research*, 17: 99, 1988 (abstract).
- Lee, C.R., "Evidence for the β -Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans," *Biochem. Med.*, 17, 284-291: 1977.
- Lettieri et al., "Improved Pharmacological Activity via Pro-Drug Modification: Comparative Pharmacokinetics of Sodium γ -Hydroxybutyrate and γ -Butyrolactone," *Research Communications in Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology*, 22(1): 107-118, 1978.
- Löscher, "Basic Pharmacology of Valproate: A Review After 35 Years of Clinical Use for the Treatment of Epilepsy," *CNS Drugs*, 16(10):669-694, 2002.
- Löscher, "Valproate: A Reappraisal of Its Pharmacodynamic Properties and Mechanisms of Action," *Progress in Neurobiol.*, 58(1):31-59, 1998.
- Lyng, "Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB): Mechanisms of Central Nervous System Toxicity," Baylor University, *ProQuest*, UMI Dissertations Publishing, 2006, 3213445.
- Maitre et al., "A Specific γ -Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Ligand Possesses both Antagonistic and Anticonvulsant Properties," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 255 (2): 657-663, 1990.
- Maitre et al., "Mécanismes d'action d'un medicament détourné: le γ -hydroxybutyrate" ("A mechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse") (in French), *Med Sci (Paris)*, 21 (3): 284-9, 2005.
- Maitre, "The γ -hydroxybutyrate Signalling System in Brain Organization and Functional Implications," *Progress in Neurobiology*, 51:337-361, 1997.
- Mamalek et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy with γ -Hydroxybutyrate. A Review of Clinical and Sleep Laboratory Findings," *Sleep*, 9(1):285-289, 1986.
- Mamelak et al., "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," *The Lancet*, 302 (7824): 328-329, 1973.
- Mamelak et al., "The Effects of γ -Hydroxybutyrate on Sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 12(2): 273-288, 1977.
- Mamelak et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy and Sleep Apnea with Gammahydroxybutyrate: A Clinical and Polysomnographic Case Study," *Sleep*, 4(1): 105-111, 1981.
- Mamelak et al., "Narcolepsy: A Family Study," *Biological Psychiatry*, 14: 821-834, 1979.
- Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," *Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews*, 13: 187-198, 1989.
- Modi et al., "Dapoxetine has no Pharmacokinetic or Cognitive Interactions with Ethanol in Healthy Male Volunteers," *J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 47(3): 315-322, 2007.
- Nema et al., "Excipients and Their Use in Injectable Products," *PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol.*, 51(4): 166-171, 1997.
- Okun, "HGB: An Important Pharmacological and Clinical Update," *J. Pharm. Pharmaceut. Sci.*, 4(2):167-175, 2001.
- Orphan Medical, Inc., NDA 21196, Major Amendment, filed Mar. 26, 2001, "Review and Evaluation of Clinical Data," http://www.fda.gov/ohrms/dockets/ac/01/briefing/3754b1_02_section%204.PDF (as downloaded on Mar. 4, 2014).
- Palatini et al., "Dose-Dependent Absorption and Elimination of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Healthy Volunteers," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 45: 353-356, 1993.
- Physicians' Desk Reference, 65th ed. (2011), pp. 1698-1703 (Xyrem).
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on Digoxin Pharmacokinetics and Electrocardiographic Findings," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 16-19, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Carbamazepine," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 20-23, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Phenytoin," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 24-28, 1996.
- Ren et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyrate Reduces Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase Phosphorylation via GABAB Receptor Activation in Mouse Frontal Cortex and Hippocampus," *J. Biol. Chem.*, 278 (43): 42006-42011, 2003.
- Rosenberg, G., "The Mechanisms of Action of Valproate in Neuropsychiatric Disorders: Can We See the Forest for the Trees?" *Cel. Mol. Life Sci.*, 64 (16): 2090-2103, 2007.
- Roth et al., " γ -Butyrolactone and γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid—I Distribution and Metabolism," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 15: 1333-1348, 1966.
- Roth et al., " γ -Butyrolactone and γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid—II The Pharmacologically Active Form," *Int. J. Neropharmacol.*, 5: 421-428, 1966.
- Rumigny et al., "Specific and Non-Specific Succinic Semialdehyde Reductases from Rat Brain: Isolation and Properties," *FEBS Ltrs.*, 117 (1-2): 111-116, 1980.
- Rumigny et al., "Specific and Non-Specific Succinic Semialdehyde Reductases from Rat Brain: Isolation and Properties," 177 FEBS Letters, 117(1):111-116, 1980.
- Sandson et al., "An interaction Between Aspirin and Valproate: The Relevance of Plasma Protein Displacement Drug-Drug Interactions," *Am. J. Psychiatry*, 163:1891-1896, 2006.
- Sanofi Aventis, "Prescribing Information for EPILIM," (Sep. 12, 2011), pp. 1-18.
- Scharf et al., "The Effects and Effectiveness of γ -Hydroxybutyrate in Patients with Narcolepsy," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 46(6): 222-225, 1985.

US 10,213,400 B2

Page 5

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Scharf et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Gammahydroxybutyrate (GHB) in Narcoleptic Patients," *Sleep*, 21(5):507-514, 1998.
- Scrima et al., "Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate versus Placebo in Treating Narcolepsy—Cataplexy: Double-Blind Subjective Measured," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 26: 331-343, 1989.
- Scrima et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate Effects on Cataplexy and Sleep Attacks in Narcoleptics," *Sleep Res.*, 16: 134, 1987, Abstract.
- Scrima et al., "The Effects of γ -Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," *Sleep*, 13(6): 479-490, 1990..
- Sériès et al., "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 1378-1383, 1992.
- SEROQUEL (quetiapine) labeling.
- Shinka et al., "Effect of Valproic Acid on the Urinary Metabolic Profile of a Patient with Succinic Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase Deficiency," *J. Chromatography*, 792:99-106, 2003.
- Smolders et al., "Tonic GABAergic Modulation of Striatal Dopamine Release Studied by In Vivo Microdialysis in the Freely Moving Rat," *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 284 (1-2): 83-91, 1995.
- Snead et al., "Effect of Acute and Chronic Anticonvulsant Administration of Endogenous γ -Hydroxybutyrate in a Rat Brain," *Neuropharmacology*, (1980), pp. 47-52, vol. 19.
- Strong, " γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid and Intracranial Pressure," *The Lancet*, vol. I: No. 8389, 1984.
- Thorpy et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy with Cataplexy An Overview of the Disease and a Report on Sodium Oxybate Dosage and Prescribing Information," *European Neurological Review*, 3(1):84-88, 2008.
- United States Patent and Trademark Office, Report on the filing or determination of an action regarding a patent; documents filed Sep. 18, 2014, Oct. 2, 2014, and Oct. 7, 2014, in U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 5 pages.
- Valproate Monograph in the Complete Drug Reference, 33rd Edition, 366-370, 2002.
- Van Den Bogert et al., "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man," *Anesthesiology and Intensive Care Medicine*, 110: 55-64, 1978.
- Van Der Laan et al., "Di-n-Propylacetate and GABA Degradation. Preferential Inhibition of Succinic Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase and Indirect Inhibition of GABA-Transaminase," *J. Neurochem.* 32: 1769-1780, 1979.
- Vayer et al., "3'-5' Cyclic-Guanosine Monophosphate Increase in Rat Brain Hippocampus after Gamma-hydroxybutyrate Administration. Prevention by Valproate and Naloxone," *Life Sci.*, 41(5):605-610, 1987.
- Vayer et al., "Is the Anticonvulsant Mechanism of Valproate Linked to Its Interaction with the Cerebral γ -hydroxybutyrate System?" *TIPS*, 9(4):127-129, 1988.
- Vickers, M.D., "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," *Int. Anesth. Clin.*, 7: 75-89, 1969.
- Waszkielewicz et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB) and its Chemical Modifications: A Review of the GHBERGIC System," *Pol J Pharmacol.*, 56 (1): 43-49, 2004.
- Wedin et al., The Clinical Development of γ -Hydroxybutyrate (GHB), *Current Drug Safety*, 1(1):99-106, 2006.
- Weiss et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate (GHB) and Topiramate-Clinically Relevant Drug Interaction Suggested by 4 Case of Coma and Increased Plasma GHB Concentration," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, (2012), pp. 1193-1194, vol. 69.
- WELLBUTRIN (bupropion HCl) labeling.
- Wellendorph et al., "Phenylacetic Acids and the Structurally Related Non-Steroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drug Diclofenac Bind to Specific γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid Sites in Rat Brain," *Fundamental & Clinical Pharmacology*, 23:207-213, 2009.
- Wesnes et al., "Moxonidine and Cognitive Function: Interactions with Moclobemide and Lorazepam," *Eur. J. Clinic. Pharmacol.*, 52: 351-358, 1997.
- Wesnes et al., "The Memory Enhancing Effects of a Ginkgo biloba/Panax ginseng Combination in Healthy Middle-Aged Volunteers," *Psychopharmacology*, 152: 353-361, 2000.
- Williams et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on Time-Based Sensitization of Cognitive Impairment with Haloperidol," *J. Clinic. Psych.*, 57, 7-11, 1996.
- Wu et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and γ -aminobutyric acid_B receptor (GABA_BR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence," *Neuropharmacology*, 47 (8): 1146-56, 2004.
- Xyrem Labeling Text, Nov. 18, 2015.
- Xyrem Monograph in the Physician's Desk Reference 65th Edition, 1698-1703, 2011.
- Xyrem Package Insert entry in the Physician's Desk Reference Edition, 1688-1692, 2007.
- Xyrem Prescribing Information, 2005.
- Xyrem Prescribing Information, approved labeling 2002.
- Xyrem Success ProgramsSM 2005 (now Xyrem REMS Program).
- Xyrem Titration Schedule, 2008.
- Yamada et al., "Effect of Butyrolactone and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," *Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol.*, 22: 558-562, 1967.
- Yilmaz et al., "Diagnostic Pitfalls in Children with Sleep Disorders: Two Cases with Hypersomnia," *Acta Paediatrica*, 97:1749-1757, 2008.
- "Annex I List of the Names, Pharmaceutical Forms, Strengths of the Medicinal Products, Route of Administration, Marketing Authorization Holders in the Member States," Valproic acid/Valproate, 107 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Referrals_document/valproate_31/WC500105842.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 23, 2018.
- "Annex II Scientific Conclusions and Grounds for Amendment of the Summaries of Product Characteristics and Package Leaflets Presented by the European Medicine Agency," Valproic acid/Valproate, 6 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Referrals_document/valproate_31/WC500105843.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 23, 2018.
- "Opening Expert report of Daniel R Wynn, MD, FACNS, FAASM," *Jazz pharmaceuticals, Inc. v Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC*, Jun. 29, 2018, pp. 1-77.
- "Opening Expert report of John R. Horn, Pharm.D., FCCP," *Jazz pharmaceuticals, Inc. v. Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC*, Jun. 28, 2018, pp. 1-100.
- "Scientific Discussion" European Medicine Agency, Aug. 9, 2006, pp. 1-30. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Scientific_Discussion/human/000593/WC500057101.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 23, 2018.
- Bhattacharya et al., "Potential γ -Hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) Drug Interactions Through Blood-Brain Barrier Transport Inhibition: A Pharmacokinetic Simulation-Based Evaluation," *J. Pharmacokinetic Pharmacodyn.*, 33(5): 657-681, 2006.
- Billiard et al., "EFNS guidelines on management of narcolepsy," *Eur. J. Neurol.*, 13: 1035-1048, 2006.
- Borgen et al., "The Influence of Gender and Food on the Pharmacokinetics of Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution in Healthy Subjects," *J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 43: 59-65, 2003, Abstract only.
- Busardo et al., "GHB Pharmacology and Toxicology: Acute Intoxication, Concentrations in Blood and urine in Forensic Cases and Treatment of the Withdrawal Syndrome," *Current Neuropharmacology*, 13: 47-70, 2015.
- Chiu et al., "Therapeutic Potential of Mood Stabilizers Lithium and Valproic Acid: Beyond Bipolar Disorder," *Pharmacol. Rev.*, 65(1): 105-142, 2003.
- Crosby et al., "Severe Mania Complicating Treatment of Narcolepsy with Cataplexy," *J. Clin. Sleep Med.*, 7(2): 214-216, 2011.
- Cui et al., "The Drug of Abuse γ -Hydroxybutyrate Is a Substrate for Sodium-Coupled Monocarboxylate Transport (SMCT) 1 (SLC5A8): Characterization of SMCT-Mediated Update and Inhibition," *Drug Metab. Dispos.*, 37(7):1404-1410, 2009.
- Divry et al., "A New Patient with 4-Hydroxybutyric Aciduria, a Possible Defect of 4-Aminobutyrate metabolism," *Clinica Chmica Acta*, 129: 303-309, 1983, Abstract only.

US 10,213,400 B2

Page 6

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

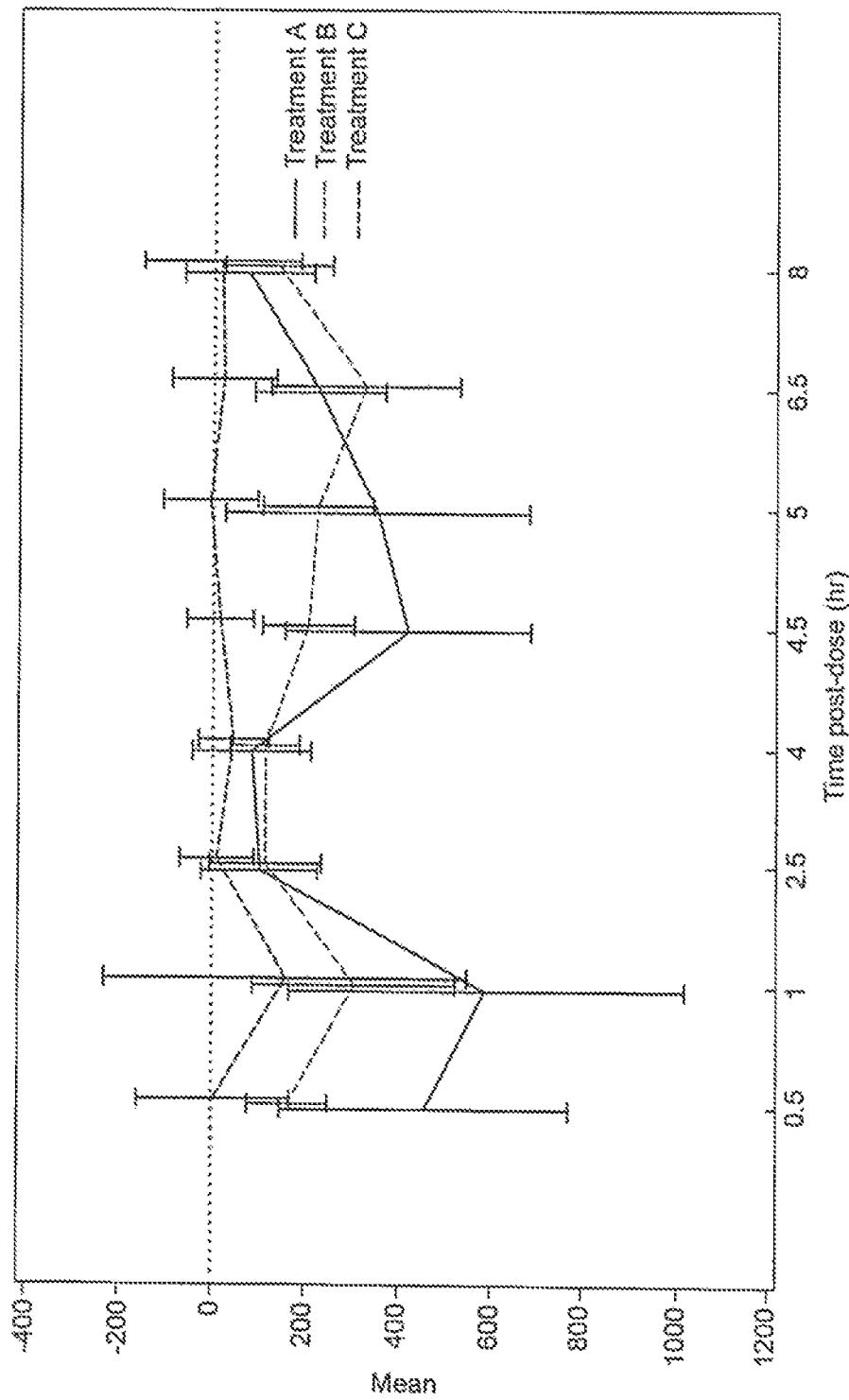
- druglib.com, "Xyrem (Sodium Oxybate)—Mania—Suspected Cause—Side Effect Reports," 4 pages, Available at: https://www.druglib.com/reported-side-effects/xyrem/reaction_mania/.
- Eli et al., "Endogenous γ -Hydroxybutyrate in Rat Brain Areas: Postmortem Changes and Effects of Drugs Interfering with γ -Aminobutyric Acid Metabolism," *J. Neurochem.*, 41(2): 524-530, 1983.
- Eller et al., "Evaluation of Drug-Drug Interactions of Sodium Oxybate with Divalproex: Results from a Pharmacokinetic/Pharmacodynamic Study," *Sleep Medicine*, 14(Suppl. 1): e302-e303, 2013.
- Excerpt from Kyoto Encyclopedia of Genes and Genomes database, Jul. 12, 2018. Available at: https://www.genome.jp/dbget-bin/www_bget?ec:1.1.1.19.
- Excerpt from Wikipedia, "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric acid." Feb. 25, 2013.
- Feldman et al., "Sleep Architecture Effects of Sodium Oxybate Treatment in Subjects with Sleep-Disordered Breathing," *Chest*, 20: 130, 2006, Abstract only.
- Gibson et al., "The Clinical Phenotype of Succinic Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase Deficiency (4-Hydroxybutyric Aciduria): Case Reports of 23 New Patients," *Pediatrics*, 99(4), 567-574, 1997.
- Highlights of Prescribing Information—Depakene®, Feb. 2013.
- Horsely, W. (North East Treatment Advisory Group), "Sodium oxybate (Xyrem®) in the management of narcolepsy with cataplexy," Dec. 2009 (18 pages).
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," Xyrem®, 31 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Product_Information/human/000593/WC500057103.pdf. Downloaded Sep. 5, 2018.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text," Nov. 2017.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text," Dec. 2012.
- Kothare et al., "Pharmacotherapy of Narcolepsy: Focus on Sodium Oxybate," *Clinical Medicine Insights: Therapeutics*, 2: 37-52, 2010.
- Liechti et al., "Clinical Features of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate and Gamma-Butyrolactone Toxicity and Concomitant Drug and Alcohol Use," *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, 81: 323-326, 2006, Abstract only.
- Morris et al., "Monocarboxylate Transporter Inhibition with Osmotic Diuresis Increases γ -Hydroxybutyrate Renal Elimination in Humans: A Proof-of-Concept Study," *J. Clin. Toxicol.*, 1(2): 1000105, 2011 (11 pages).
- Morris et al., "Overview of the Proton-Couple MCT (SLC16A) Family of Transporters: Characterization, Function and Role in the Transport of the Drug of Abuse—Hydroxybutyric Acid," *AAPS J.*, 10(2): 311-321, 2008.
- Opposition against EP 2,961,399 (filed by Hexal AG), filed Aug. 14, 2018 (27 pages).
- Opposition against EP 2,961,399 (filed by Hoffmann Eitle Patent—und Rechtsanwälte PartmbB), filed Jul. 23, 2018 (24 pages).
- Opposition against EP 2,961,399 (filed by Ter Meer Steinmeister & Partner Patentanwälte mbB), filed Aug. 14, 2018 (21 pages).
- Orr et al., "Interaction Between Valproic Acid and Aspirin in Epileptic Children: Serum Protein Binding and Metabolic Effects," *Clinical Pharmacol. Ther.*, 31(5): 642-649, 1982.
- Pardi et al. " γ -Hydroxybutyrate/Sodium Oxybate: neurobiology, and impact on Sleep and Wakefulness," *CNS Drugs*, 20(12): 993-1018, 2006.
- Peacock et al., "Narcolepsy: Clinical features, co-morbidities & treatment," *Indian J. Med. Res.*, 131: 338-349, 2010.
- Roxane Laboratories, Inc., "Lithium Carbonate Tablets USP; Lithium Carbonate Capsules USP; Lithium Oral Solution USP," Oct. 2011.
- Schep et al., "The Clinical Toxicology of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Gamma-Butyrolactone and 1,4-Butanediol," *Clinical Toxicology*, 50: 458-470, 2012.
- Snead et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid," *New England J. Med.*, 352: 2721-2732, 2005.
- WHO Expert Committee on Drug Dependence, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB), Critical Review Report," Thirty-fifth Meeting, Jun. 4-8, 2012 (57 pages).

U.S. Patent

Feb. 26, 2019

Sheet 1 of 10

US 10,213,400 B2

**FIG. 1**

U.S. Patent

Feb. 26, 2019

Sheet 2 of 10

US 10,213,400 B2

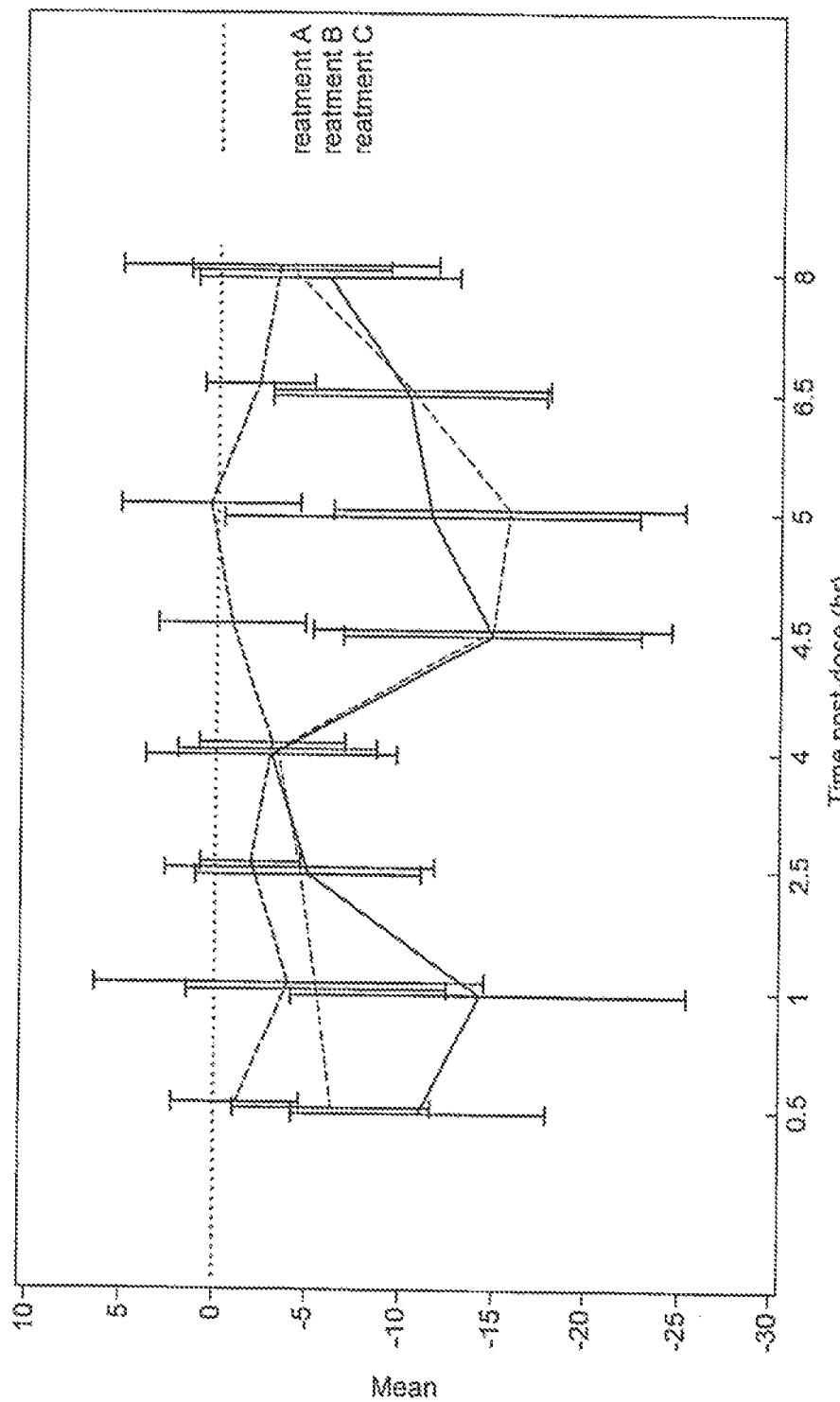


FIG. 2

U.S. Patent

Feb. 26, 2019

Sheet 3 of 10

US 10,213,400 B2

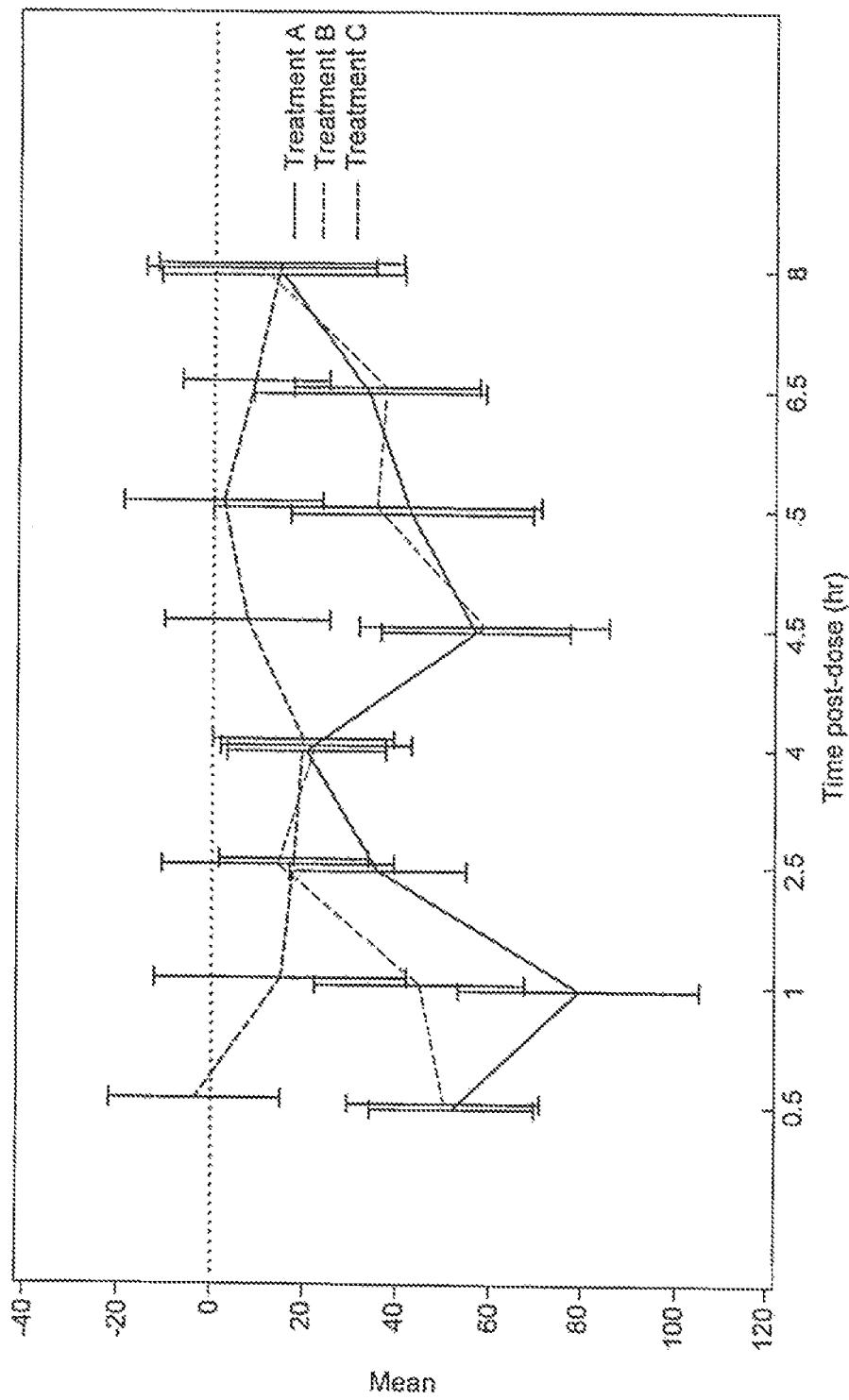


FIG. 3

U.S. Patent

Feb. 26, 2019

Sheet 4 of 10

US 10,213,400 B2

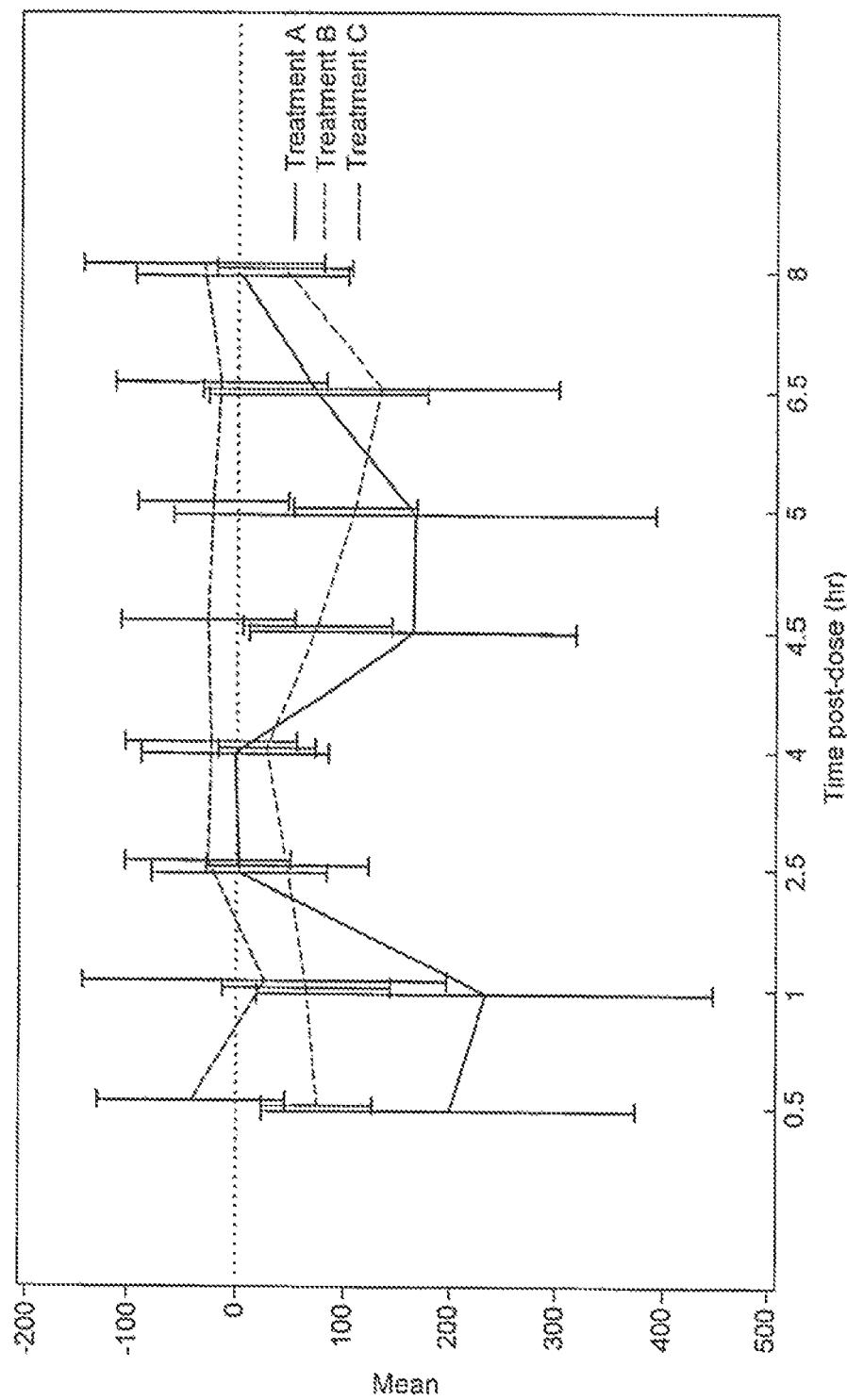


FIG. 4

U.S. Patent

Feb. 26, 2019

Sheet 5 of 10

US 10,213,400 B2

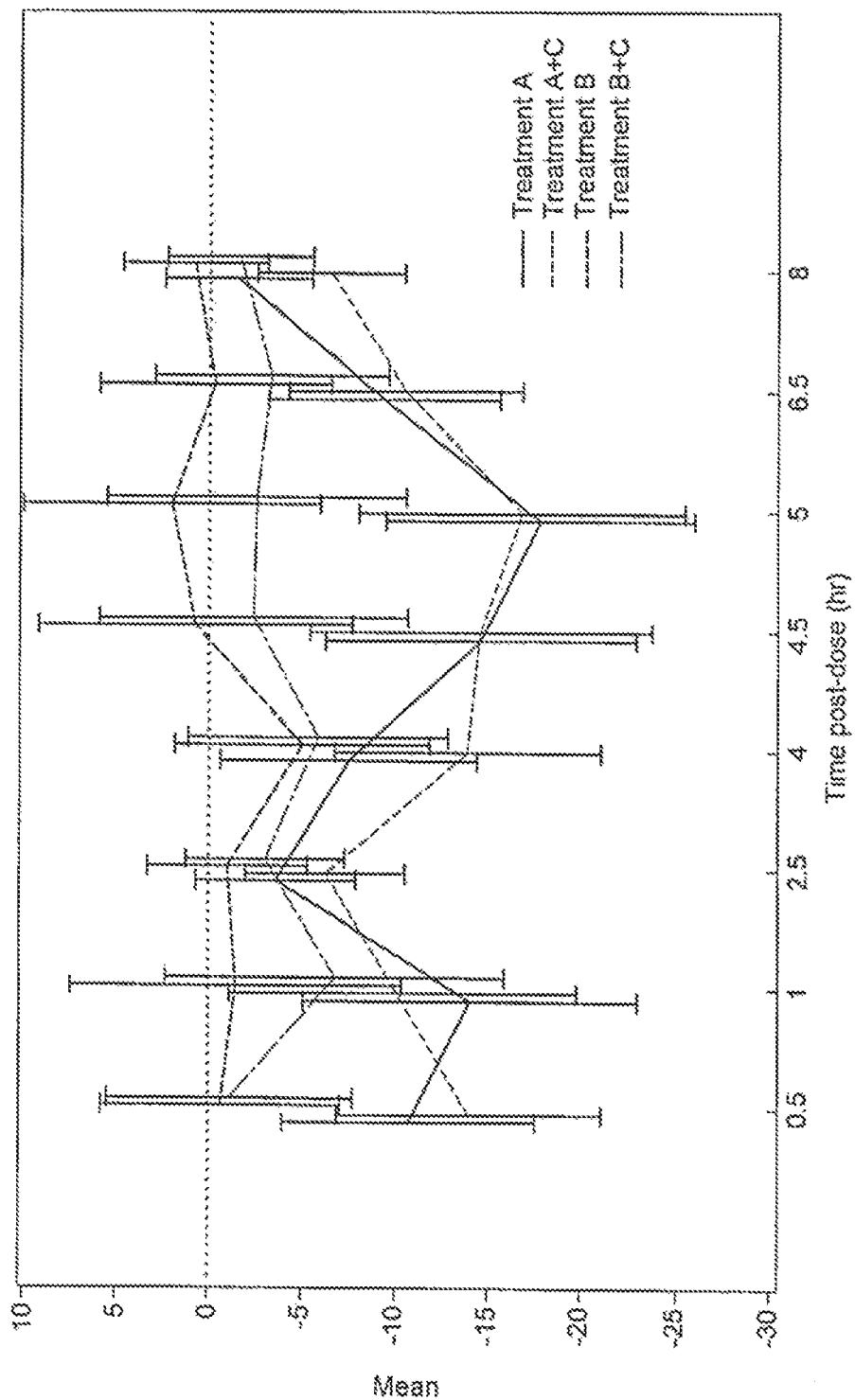


FIG. 5

U.S. Patent

Feb. 26, 2019

Sheet 6 of 10

US 10,213,400 B2

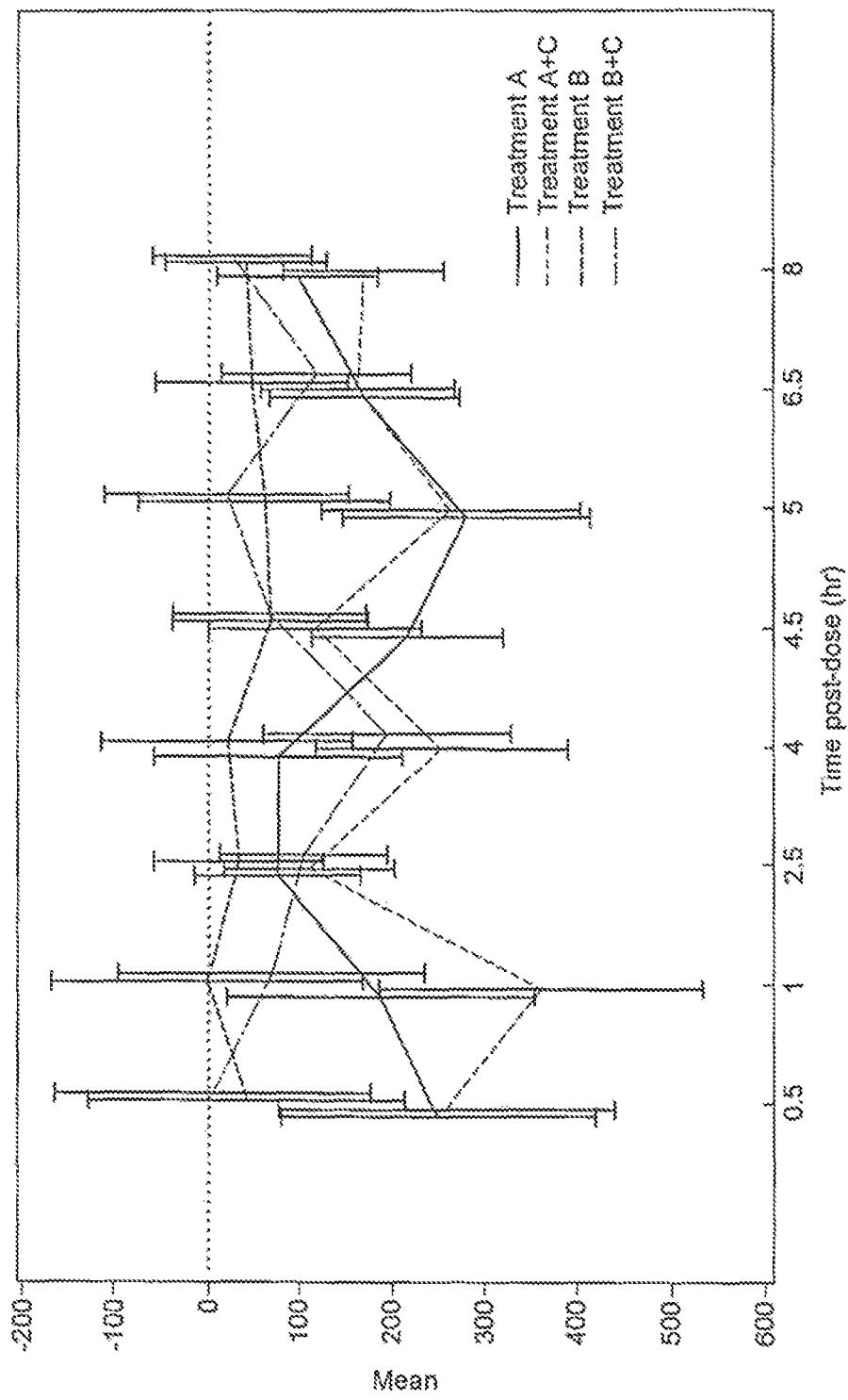


FIG. 6

U.S. Patent

Feb. 26, 2019

Sheet 7 of 10

US 10,213,400 B2

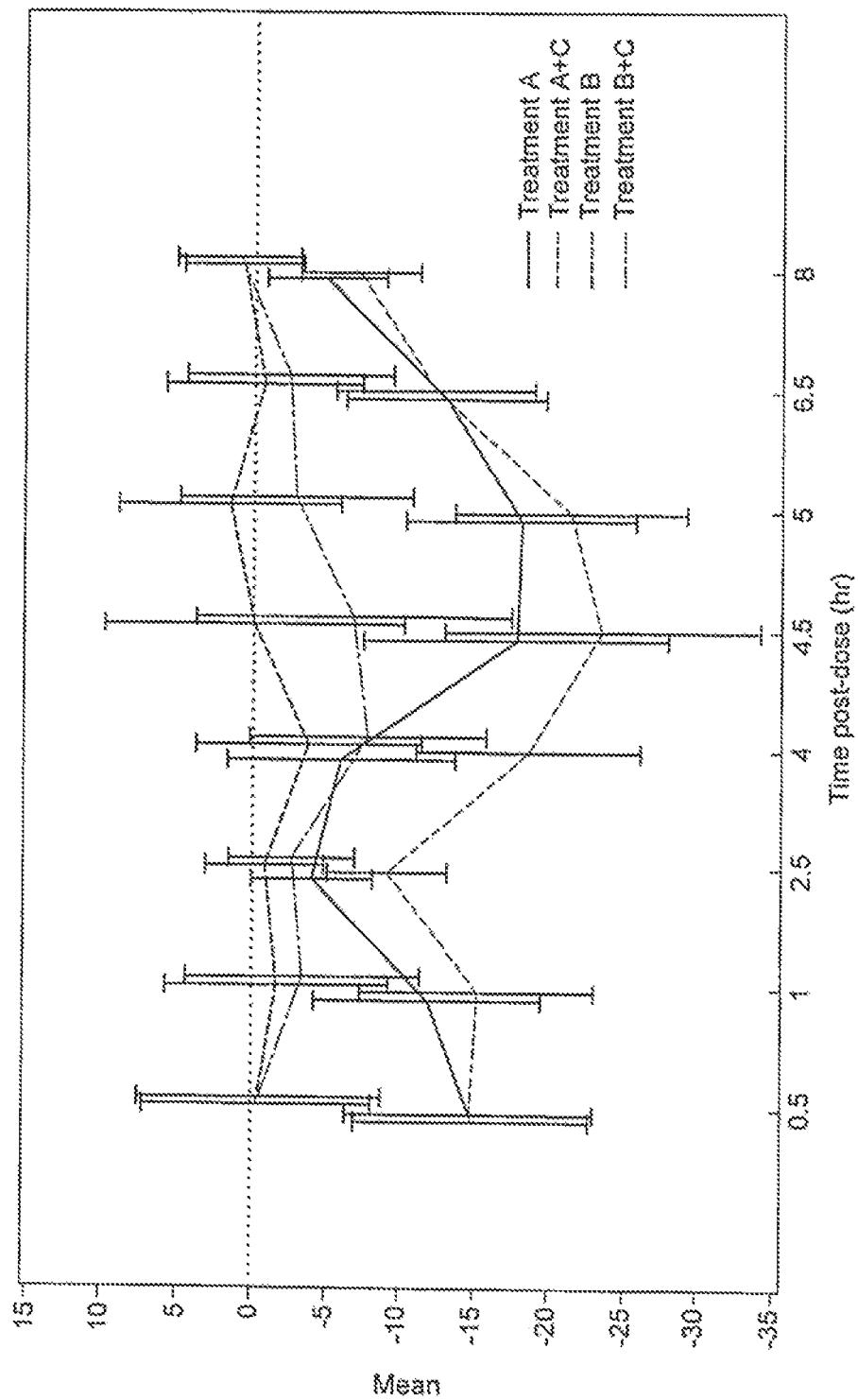


FIG. 7

U.S. Patent

Feb. 26, 2019

Sheet 8 of 10

US 10,213,400 B2

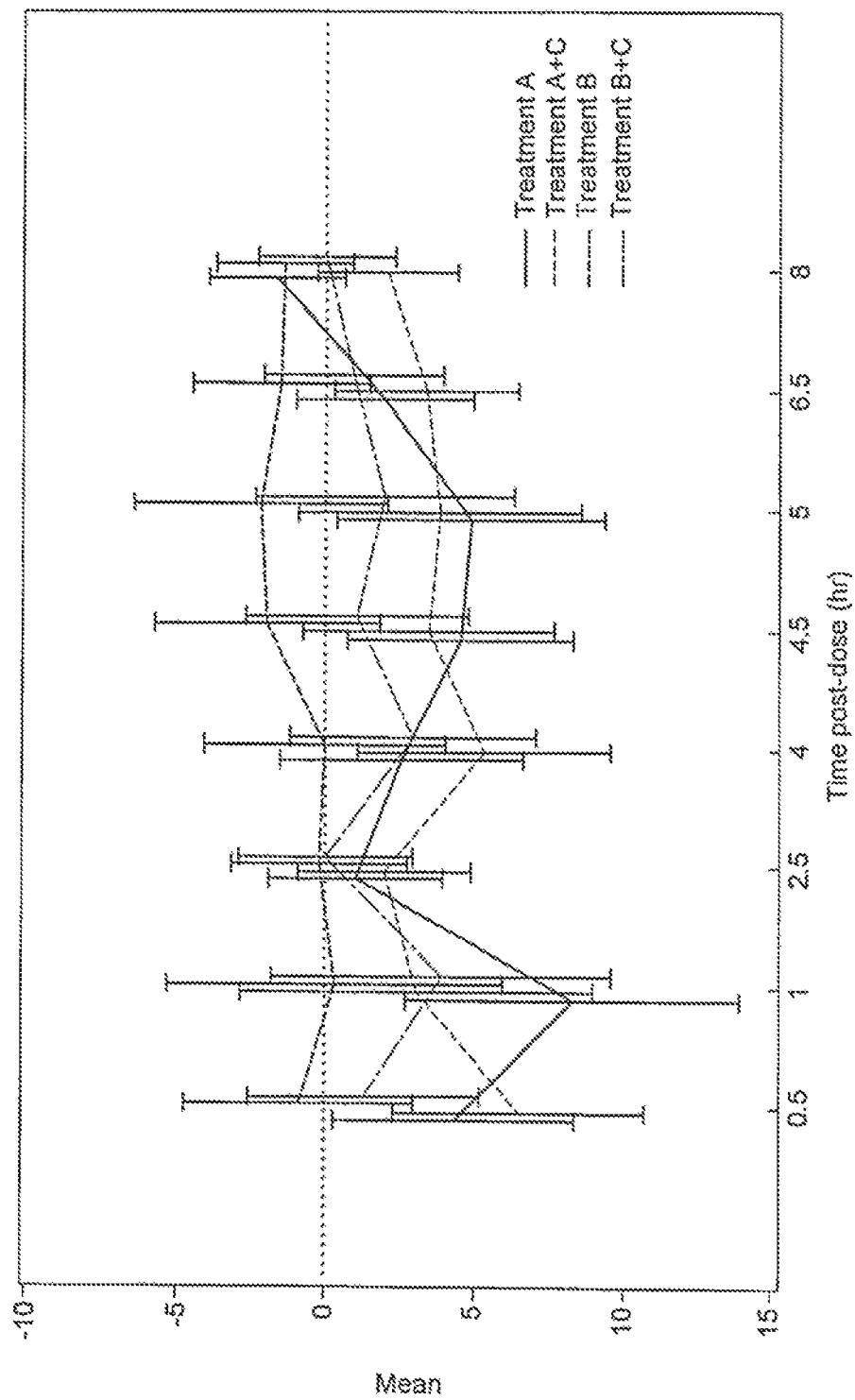


FIG. 8

U.S. Patent

Feb. 26, 2019

Sheet 9 of 10

US 10,213,400 B2

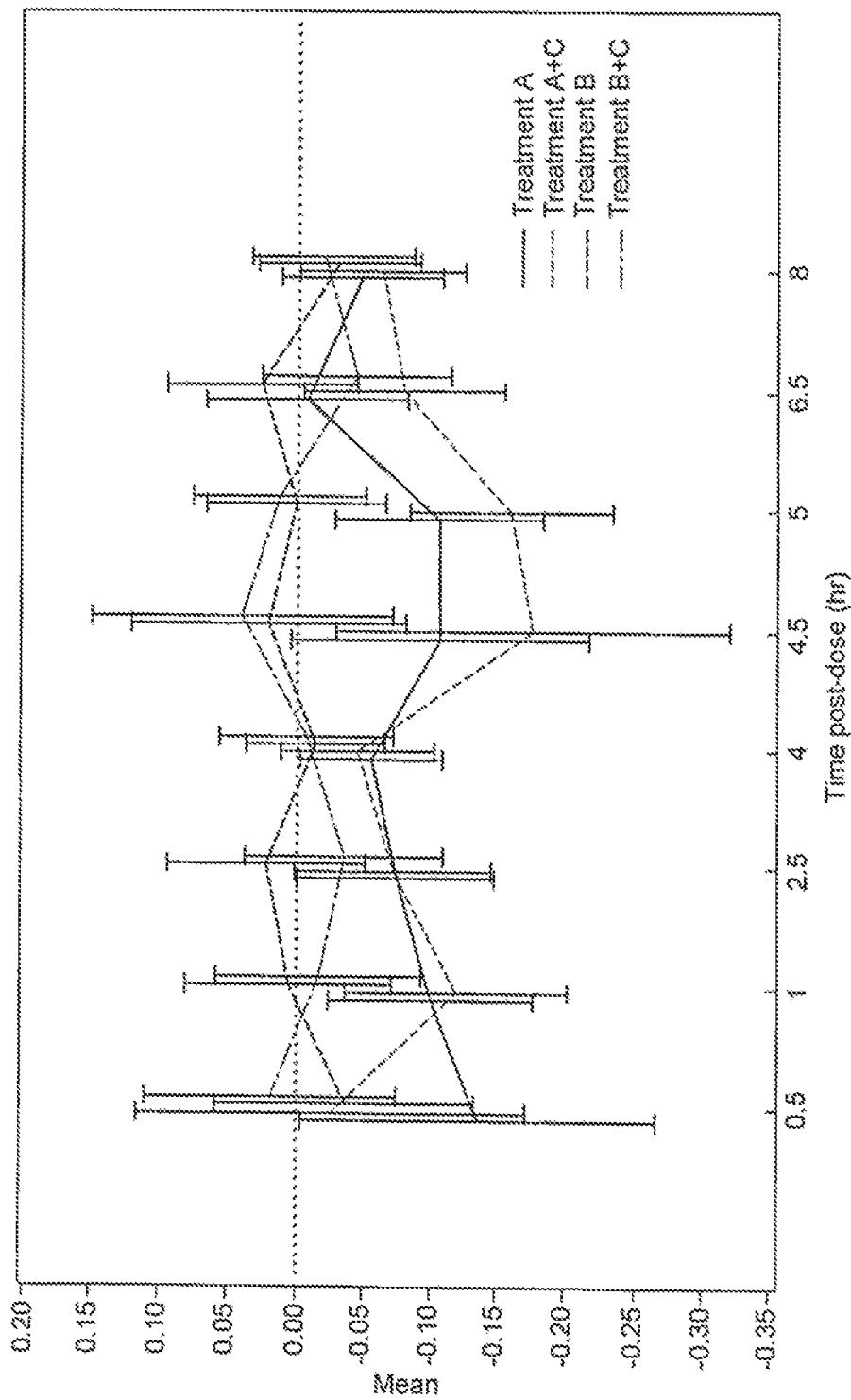


FIG. 9

U.S. Patent

Feb. 26, 2019

Sheet 10 of 10

US 10,213,400 B2

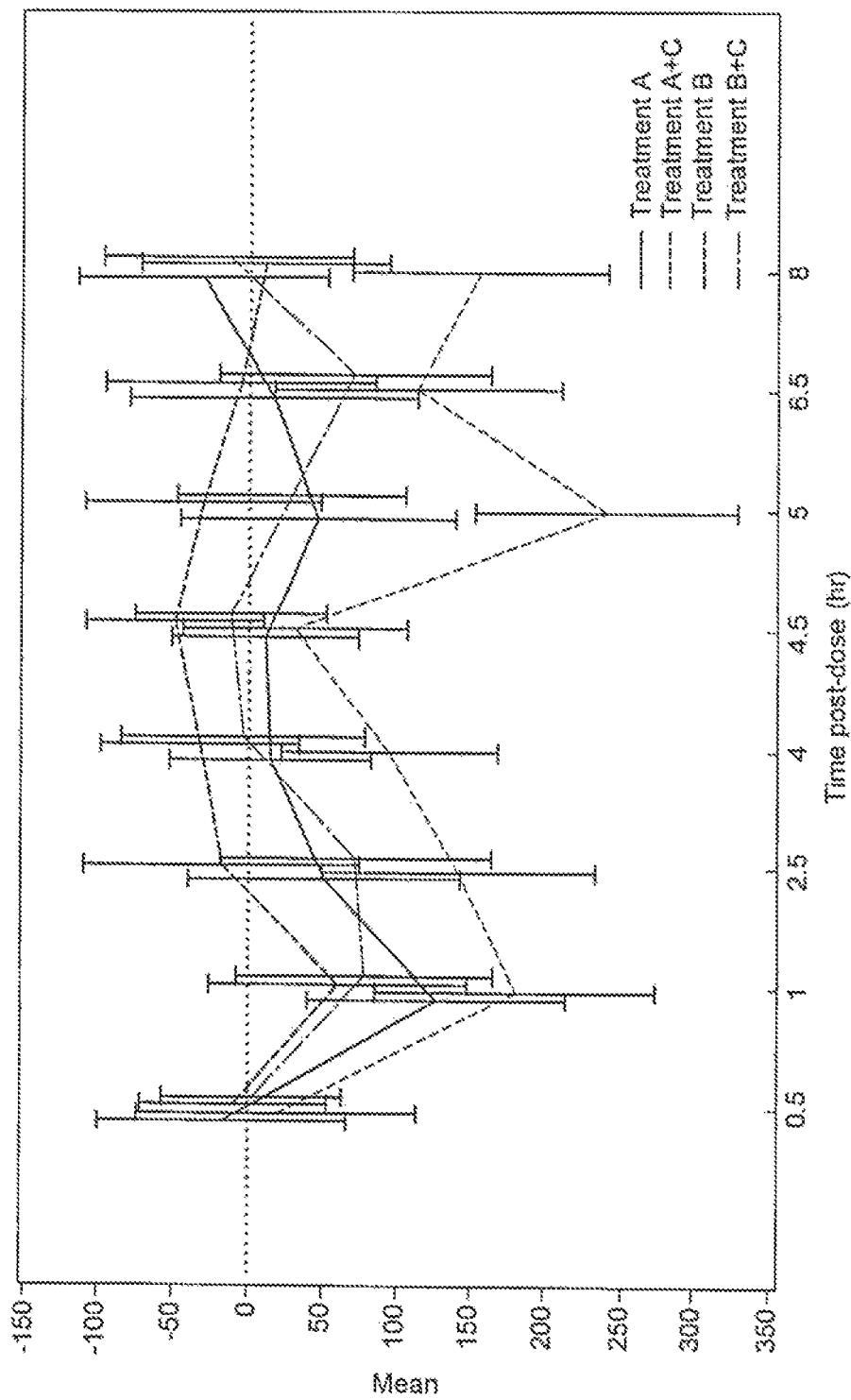


FIG. 10

US 10,213,400 B2

1

**METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF
GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH
MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS**

This application is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 15/343,806, filed Nov. 4, 2016, which is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 14/707,914, filed on May 8, 2015, now U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426, which is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/837,714, filed Mar. 15, 2013, now U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302, which claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/771,557, filed Mar. 1, 2013, and U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/777,873, filed Mar. 12, 2013, all of which applications are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

BACKGROUND

This application relates to methods for safely administering gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB) together with one or more other monocarboxylate transporter (MCT) inhibitors for therapeutic purposes. Example transporter inhibitors are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof, comprising: orally administering to the patient in need of treatment, an adjusted dosage amount of the salt of GHB when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of valproate. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced at least about 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the amount of GHB is reduced at least about 10% and about 30% of the normal administration and the daily administration of the GHB salt is between 1 gram and 10 grams. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the ranges of about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 45%, or about 45% or 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the range of about 1% to 50%, about 1% to 40%, about 1% to 35%, about 1% to 30%, about 1% to 25%, about 1% to 20%, about 1% to 15%, about 1% to 10%, about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 50%, about 5% to 45%, about 5% to 40%, about 5% to 35%, about 5% to 30%, about 5% to 20%, about 5% to 15%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 50%, about 10% to 45%, about 10% to 40%, about 10% to 35%, about 10% to 30%, about 10% to 25%, about 10% to 20%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to 45%, about 15% to 40%, about 15% to 35%, about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 50%,

2

about 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient.

Another embodiment of the invention is a method of safely administering GHB a salt thereof for excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising: determining if the patient is has taken, or will take a concomitant dose of valproate; orally administering a reduced amount of the GHB or GHB salt to the patient compared to the normal dose so as to diminish the additive effects of the GHB or GHB salt when administered with valproate. The amount of GHB is reduced at least 10% to 30%, or at least+15% of the normal administration.

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with GHB or a salt thereof, comprising: orally administering to the patient in need of treatment, an adjusted dosage amount of the salt of GHB when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of diclofenac. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is at least about 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% higher than the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the increased amount of GHB is at least about 15% more than the normal administration and the daily administration of the GHB salt is between 1 gram and 10 grams. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is increased between the range of about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 45%, or about 45% or 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is increased between the range of about 1% to 50%, about 1% to 45%, about 1% to 40%, about 1% to 35%, about 1% to 30%, about 1% to 25%, about 1% to 20%, about 1% to 15%, about 1% to 10%, about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 50%, about 5% to 45%, about 5% to 40%, about 5% to 35%, about 5% to 30%, about 5% to 25%, about 5% to 20%, about 5% to 15%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 50%, about 10% to 45%, about 10% to 40%, about 10% to 35%, about 10% to 30%, about 10% to 25%, about 10% to 20%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to 45%, about 15% to 40%, about 15% to 35%, about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 50%, about 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. See the product insert for normal dose ranges of GHB as sold by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. GHB is commercially known as Xyrem®.

In another embodiment, the invention is a method of safely administering a GHB salt for excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising: determining if the patient has taken, or will take a concomitant dose of diclofenac; orally administering an increased amount of a GHB salt to the patient so

US 10,213,400 B2

3

as to compensate for the effects of diclofenac on the GHB salt when concomitantly administered.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy wherein said patient is currently taking or has been prescribed GHB or a salt thereof, comprising determining if the patient is taking or has also been prescribed valproate or diclofenac; and adjusting the dose of the GHB or GHB salt to compensate for the effect caused by valproate or diclofenac. In certain embodiments, the method additionally comprises administering the adjusted dose to the patient.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma GHB, wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate additive effects.

The embodiments of the present invention can administer the GHB at a level of between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day. The concentration of the formulation can be between 350-750 mg/ml or 450-550 mg/ml and a pH between 6-10 or 6.5-8.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a salt of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient or determining whether the patient is currently on a GHB drug regimen; determining if the patient is also being administered ibuprofen; and advising a patient to cease or ceasing the administration of ibuprofen. In some embodiments, patients benefitting from this directive when the patient has will have a renal impairment.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered valproate; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of valproate and GHB; and reducing the dose of the GHB or GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by valproate. Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered diclofenac; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of diclofenac and the GHB salt; and increasing the dose of the GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by diclofenac.

In each of the embodiments of the invention the method includes administering GHB at between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day and at a concentration of between 350-750 or 450-550 mg/ml, and a pH between 6-10 or between 6.5-8. In further embodiments the valproate or diclofenac is administered within three days, one or two weeks (before or after) of GHB administration. In another

4

embodiment, the present invention is a method wherein aspirin is also administered to the patient, especially with valproate.

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB as a single salt or a mixture of salts of GHB selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂).

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB to a patient suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to the patient; determining if the patient has concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor; and adjusting the GHB dose or ceasing administering of the MCT inhibitor to maintain the effect of the GHB.

In any of the versions of the invention, the methods optionally further include administering aspirin to the patient.

In a further embodiment the method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof comprises administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while avoiding concomitant of a diclofenac or valproate.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a method of administering GHB or a salt thereof (GHB) to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of diclofenac, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB or a GHB salt per day while avoiding diclofenac concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that diclofenac should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with diclofenac can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being treated with diclofenac is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in an decrease in exposure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a administering GHB to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of valproate, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB per day while avoiding valproate concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being treated with valproate is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in exposure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient that MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

In another embodiment, the present invention is a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management

US 10,213,400 B2

5

system to dispense information concerning the risks associated with ingesting a MCT inhibitor concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; providing said pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and authorizing distribution of said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The method may also comprise including an electronic or written alert, which can explain the risks, to employees to dispense said information with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Also, the information can be dispensed when a subject refills said prescription. The warnings would be as recited above.

The methods of the present invention may include a warning for patients not to operate hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely and not to engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Any information dispensed with said drug advises patients of the potential for enhanced potency of said drug if said patients also take valproate or advises patients of the potential for decreased potency of said drug if said patients also take diclofenac.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while avoiding concomitant administration of diclofenac or valproate.

The invention may also comprise a method for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that the toxic effects of GHB are reduced. It may also comprise a method for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population). Treatment A=diclofenac placebo+Xyrem®. Treatment B=diclofenac+Xyrem®. Treatment C=diclofenac+Xyrem® placebo.

FIG. 2 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 3 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 4 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 5 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population). Treatment A=Xyrem®. Treatment B=Xyrem® placebo. Treatment C=valproate.

FIG. 6 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

FIG. 7 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

6

FIG. 8 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

FIG. 9 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

FIG. 10 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The following patents and applications are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties for all purposes: U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,472,431, 6,780,889, 7,262,219, 7,851,506, 8,263,650, 8,324,275; 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 61/317,212, Ser. Nos. 13/071,369, 13/739,886, 12/264,709, PCT/US2010/033572, PCT/US2009/061312, 2009/0137565; and 2012/0076865. The following patents are also incorporated by reference: U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,380,937; 4,393,236 German Patent DD 237,309 A1; and British Pat. No. 922,029.

Objects, features and advantages of the methods and compositions described herein will become apparent from the following detailed description. It should be understood, however, that the detailed description and the specific examples, while indicating specific embodiments, are given by way of illustration only, since various changes and modifications within the spirit and scope of the invention will become apparent to those skilled in the art from this detailed description.

The following references, to the extent that they provide exemplary procedural or other details supplementary to those set forth herein, are specifically incorporated herein by reference.

Arena and Fung, "Absorption of sodium .gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and its prodrug .gamma.-butyrolactone: relationship between in vitro transport and in vivo absorption," J. Pharmaceutical Sciences, 69(3):356-358, 1980.

Bedard, Montplaisir, Godbout, Lapierre, "Nocturnal .gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate-Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients," 12(1):29-36, 1989.

Broughton and Mamelak, "The treatment of narcolepsy-cataplexy with nocturnal gamma-hydroxybutyrate," Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques. 6(1):1-6, 1979.

Ferrara, Zotti, Tedeschi, Frison, Castagna. Gessa and Gallimberti, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in the treatment of alcohol dependent," Clin. Neuropharm., 15(1, PtA): 303A-304A, 1992.

Gessa, Diana, Fadda, Colombo, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) for treatment of ethanol dependence," Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement, 1992. Gessa et al., Clin. Neuropharm., 15(suppl.):303A-304A, 1992

Gessa et al., Internat. Clin. Psychopharm., 1994. Hasenbos and Gieien, "Anaesthesia for bullectomy," Anaesthesia, 40:977-980, 1985.

Laborit, "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semi aldehyde and Sleep," Laboratoire d'Etonologie, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France, 1973.

Ladinsky, Consolo, Zatta, Vezzani. "Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System, Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacal., 322:42-48, 1983.

US 10,213,400 B2

7

Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and narcolepsy: a double-blind placebo-controlled study," *Sleep*, 16(3): 216-220, 1993.

Lapierre, Montplaisir, Lamarre, Bedard, "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep-Triggering Mechanisms," *Sleep*. 13(1):24-30, 1990.

Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1988. Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1990. Lee, C. R. "Evidence for the .beta.-Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans" *Biochem. Medicine* 17, 284-291, 1977.

Lettieri and Fung, "Improved pharmacological activity via pro-drug modification: comparative pharmacokinetics of sodium .gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and .gamma.-butyrolactone," *Research Communications In Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology*. 22(1):107-118. 1978.

Mamelak, 1977; "Effects Of Gamma Hydroxybutyrate On Sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry* 12, 273-288. Mamelak, "Gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB): An endogenous regulator of energy metabolism," *Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews*, 13: 189-198, 1989.

Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," *Neuro. & Biobehav. Rev.*, 13 187-198, 1989.

Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak, Escru, Stokan "The effects of gamma-hydroxybutyrate on sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 12(2): 273-288. 1977.

Mamelak, Escru, Stokan, "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," *The Lance*, p. 328-329. 1973.

Nema, et al., "Excipients and their use in injectable products," *PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol.*, 51(4):166-171, 1997.

Palatini, Tedeschi, Frison, Padrini, Zordan, Orlando, Gal-limberti, Gessa, Ferrara, "Dose dependent absorption and elimination of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in healthy volunteers," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 45:353-356, 1993.

Roth and Giarman, ".gamma.-Butyrolactone and .gamma.-Hydroxybutyric Acid-I, Distribution and Metabolism," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 15:1333-1348, 1966.

Scharf, Brown, Woods, Brown, Hirschowitz, "The effects and effectiveness of gammahydroxybutyrate In patients with narcolepsy," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 46(6)222-225, 1985.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "Efficacy of gamma-hydroxybutyrate versus placebo in treating narcolepsy-cataplexy: Double-blind subjective measured," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 26:331-343, 1989.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "The Effects of .gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," *Sleep*, 13(6):479-490, 1990.

Scrima, et al, "Sleep Res. 16, 134, 1987, Abstract. Series, Series, Cormier, "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 1378-1383, 1992.

Strong, ".gamma.-Hydroxybutyric acid and Intracranial Pressure," *The Lancet*, Vol. 1: No. 8389, 1984. van den Bogert, Vree, van der Kleijn, Damsma, "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man."

Vickers, "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," *Int. Anesth. Clinic*, 7:75.89, 1969.

Lee, *Biochem. Med.* 17:234-291, 1977. Yamada, Yamamoto, Fujiki, Hishikawa, Kaneko, "Effect of Butyrolactone and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," *Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol.*, 22:558-562, 1967.

Yamada et al., 1967. Wu, Ying; Ali, Saima; Ahmadian, Gholamreza; Liu, Chun Che; Wang, Yu Tian; Gibson, K.

8

Michael; Calver, Andrew R.; Francis, Joseph et al. (2004). "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-aminobutyric acidB receptor (GABABR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence". *Neuropharmacology* 47 (8): 1146-56.

Cash, C; Gobaille, S; Kemmel, V; Andriamampandry, C; Maitre, M (1999). ".gamma.-hydroxybutyrate receptor function studied by the modulation of nitric oxide synthase activity in rat frontal cortex punches". *Biochemical Pharmacology* 58 (11): 1815-9.

10 Maitre M, Humbert J P, Kemmel V, Aunis D, Andriamampandry C (2005). "A mechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse" (in French). *Med Sci (Paris)* 21 (3): 284-9. Waszkielewicz A, Bojarski J (2004). "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and its chemical modifications: a review of the GHergic system" (PDF). *Pol J Pharmacol* 56 (1): 43-9.

Kuriyama K, Sze P Y (1971). "Blood-brain barrier to H3-gamma-aminobutyric acid in normal and amino oxy-acetic acid-treated animals". *Neuropharmacology* 10 (1): 103-8.

Dimitrijevic N, Dzitoyeva S, Satta R, Imbesi M, Yildiz S, Manev H (2005). "Drosophila GABA(B) receptors are involved in behavioral effects of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB)". *Eur. J. Pharmacol.* 519 (3): 246-52.

Banerjee P K, Snead O C (1995). "Presynaptic gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-aminobutyric acidB (GABAB) receptor-mediated release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in rat thalamic ventrobasal nucleus (VB): a possible mechanism for the generation of absence-like seizures induced by GHB". *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.* 273 (3): 1534-43.

Hechler V, Gobaille S, Bourguignon J J, Maitre M (1991). "Extracellular events induced by gamma-hydroxybutyrate in striatum: a microdialysis study". *J. Neurochem.* 56 (3): 938-44. Maitre, M; Hechler, V; Vayer, P; Gobaille, S; Cash, C D; Schmitt, M; Bourguignon, J J (1990). "A specific gamma-hydroxybutyrate receptor ligand possesses both antagonistic and anticonvulsant properties". *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.* 255 (2): 657-63.

40 Smolders I, De Klippe N, Sarre S, Ebinger G, Michotte Y (1995). "Tonic GABAergic modulation of striatal dopamine release studied by in vivo microdialysis in the freely moving rat". *Eur. J. Pharmacol.* 284 (1-2): 83-91.

In the specification and claims that follow, references will be made to a number of terms which shall be defined to have the following meaning.

The terms "a" and "an" do not denote a limitation of quantity, but rather denote the presence of at least one of the 50 referenced item. The term "or" means "and/or". The terms "comprising", "having", "including", and "containing" are to be construed as open-ended terms (i.e., meaning "including, but not limited to").

55 "Concomitant" and "concomitantly" as used herein refer to the administration of at least two drugs to a patient either subsequently, simultaneously, or consequently within a time period during which the effects of the first administered drug are still operative in the patient. Thus, if the first drug is, e.g., Xyrem®, or GHB, and the second drug is valproate, the concomitant administration of the second drug occurs within two weeks, preferably within one week or even three days, before or after the administration of the first drug.

60 "Dosage amount" means an amount of a drug suitable to be taken during a fixed period, usually during one day (i.e., daily).

65 "Dosage amount adapted for oral administration" means a dosage amount that is of an amount deemed safe and

US 10,213,400 B2

9

effective for the particular patient under the conditions specified. As used herein and in the claims, this dosage amount is determined by following the recommendations of the drug manufacturer's Prescribing Information as approved by the US Food and Drug Administration.

"Dosing regimen" means the dose of a drug taken at a first time by a patient and the interval (time or symptomatic) and dosage amounts at which any subsequent doses of the drug are taken by the patient. Each dose may be of the same or a different dosage amount.

A "dose" means the measured quantity of a drug to be taken at one time by a patient.

A "patient" means a human in need of medical treatment. In one embodiment medical treatment can include treatment of an existing condition, such as a disease or disorder, prophylactic or preventative treatment, or diagnostic treatment. In another embodiment, medical treatment also includes administration to treat excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus.

"Providing" means giving, administering, selling, distributing, transferring (for profit or not), manufacturing, compounding, or dispensing.

The terms "therapeutically effective amount," as used herein, refer to an amount of a compound sufficient to treat, ameliorate, or prevent the identified disease or condition, or to exhibit a detectable therapeutic, prophylactic, or inhibitory effect. The effect can be detected by, for example, an improvement in clinical condition, or reduction in symptoms. The precise effective amount for a subject will depend upon the subject's body weight, size, and health; the nature and extent of the condition; and the therapeutic or combination of therapeutics selected for administration. Where a drug has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), a "therapeutically effective amount" refers to the dosage approved by the FDA or its counterpart foreign agency for treatment of the identified disease or condition.

"Side effect" means a secondary effect resulting from taking a drug. The secondary effect can be a negative (unfavorable) effect (i.e., an adverse side effect) or a positive (favorable) effect.

Pharmacokinetic parameters referred to herein describe the *in vivo* characteristics of drug (or a metabolite or a surrogate marker for the drug) over time. These include plasma concentration (C), as well as C_{max} , C_n , C_{24} , T_{max} , and AUC. The term " T_{max} " refers to the time from drug administration until C_{max} is reached. "AUC" is the area under the curve of a graph of the measured plasma concentration of an active agent vs. time, measured from one time point to another time point. For example AUC_{0-t} is the area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time t , where time 0 is the time of initial administration of the drug. Time t can be the last time point with measurable plasma concentration for an individual formulation. The $AUC_{0-\infty}$ or AUC_{0-INF} is the calculated area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time infinity. In steady-state studies, $AUC_{0-\tau}$ is the area under the curve of plasma concentration over the dosing interval (i.e., from time 0 to time τ). (τ), where τ is the length of the dosing interval.

It may be advantageous to incorporate a pharmacy management system into the method of the present invention. Pharmacy management systems are computer-based systems that are used by commercial pharmacies to manage prescriptions and to provide pharmacy and medical personnel with warnings and guidance regarding drugs being

10

administered to patients. Such systems typically provide alerts warning either or both of health care providers and patients when a drug that may be harmful to the particular patient is prescribed. For example, such systems can provide alerts warning that a patient has an allergy to a prescribed drug, or is receiving concomitant administration of a drug that can have a dangerous interaction with a prescribed drug. U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 5,758,095, 5,833,599, 5,845,255, 6,014,631, 6,067,524, 6,112,182, 6,317,719, 6,356,873, and 7,072,840, each of which is incorporated herein by reference, disclose various pharmacy management systems and aspects thereof. Example pharmacy management systems are now commercially available, e.g., CENTRICITY Pharmacy from BDM Information Systems Ltd., General Electric Healthcare, Waukesha, Wis., Rx30 Pharmacy Systems from Transaction Data Systems, Inc., Ocoee, Fla., SPEED SCRIPT from Digital Simplistics, Inc., Lenexa, Kans., and various pharmacy management systems from OPUS-ISM, Hauppauge, N.Y.

In some embodiments, a pharmacy management system may be required or preferred as part of a drug distribution program. For example, the present invention includes a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: (1) Identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management system to dispense information concerning the risks associated with ingesting a MCT inhibitors concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; (2) Providing said pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and (3) Authorizing distribution of said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The established management system may include an electronic alert to employees to dispense said information with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Such information may be dispensed in written form, for example in a brochure explaining the risks of concomitant ingestion of GHB and an MCT inhibitor such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen or combinations thereof. For example, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for enhanced potency of GHB if the patient also takes valproate. Alternatively, or in addition thereto, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for decreased potency of GHB if the patient also takes diclofenac. Such information may also be dispensed in verbal form. Distributors may maintain a directory of approved pharmacies, for example in a computer readable storage medium, to further ensure that GHB is dispensed only to patients who are advised of the additive effects.

In addition, the system can prevent the dispensing of GHB or salt thereof until proper testing or confirmation is obtained that the patient is not taking or going to take valproate or diclofenac concomitantly with GHB. Alternatively, the patient can be warned of the adverse effect and instructed to modify the dose of GHB to accommodate the increased or reduced effects of GHB due to valproate or diclofenac.

A pharmacy management system of the present invention can be a REMS system as shown in U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,059; 7,797,171; and 7,668,730 and also include monitoring for concomitant use of diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, or combinations thereof. Warnings may be administered through the existing pharmacy management system as described in the patents above.

US 10,213,400 B2

11

One embodiment of the present invention, without being limited by theory, is the discovery of drug interactions that change either, or both, the efficacy or safety profile of GHB. The three compounds are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprophen or combinations thereof. To achieve the above benefits, GHB of the present invention can be administered in a reduced amount when a second compound, such as valproate, is concomitantly administered with GHB. It can also be administered in an increased amount to overcome any effects of diclofenac. The compounds can also be avoided or discontinued to prevent unsafe concomitant administration.

In one embodiment of the present invention, concomitant administration of GHB with other agents is monitored and potential changes to the doses of GHB are made, or changes in the administration of other compounds are made. In one embodiment of the present invention, when GHB was concomitantly administered with ibuprofen, there were pharmacokinetic (PK) changes consistent with monocarboxylic transporter (MCT) inhibition and renal excretion of GHB doubled (statistically significant). Plasma levels were about ~5% lower, which was statistically significant. In another embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and Diclofenac are concomitantly administered, PD effects were significantly reduced. In another embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and divalproate were concomitantly administered, PK showed both MCT and GHB dehydrogenase inhibition, with the latter predominating. MCT inhibition caused renal clearance to be increased 30% (statistically significant). GHB dehydrogenase inhibition caused systemic exposure (plasma AUC) to be increased 26%. Both measures are statistically significant and outside FDA "equivalence window". PD shows more pronounced effects with concomitant administration.

One embodiment is a method of administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to a patient in need of treatment, such as with narcolepsy, the invention provides an improvement that comprises avoiding or discontinuing administration of a compound that affects GHB potency and administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB. The compound can be diclofenac or valproate and they can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB.

Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB)

GHB (also called oxyxsorbate or oxybate) is approved in the United States (US) for the treatment of excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS) and for the treatment of cataplexy, both in patients with narcolepsy. GHB is commercially sold as Xyrem® sodium oxybate by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. Sodium oxybate is the sodium salt of the endogenous neurotransmitter gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB), which is found in many tissues of the body. "GHB", oxybate, a GHB salt or Xyrem® will be used to refer to these active forms. It can be used as a sodium, calcium, potassium, or magnesium salt. See U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886.

GHB is present, for example, in the mammalian brain and other tissues. In the brain, the highest GHB concentration is found in the hypothalamus and basal ganglia and GHB is postulated to function as a neurotransmitter. The neuropharmacological effects of GHB include increases in brain acetylcholine, increases in brain dopamine, inhibition of GABA-ketoglutarate transaminase and depression of glucose utilization but not oxygen consumption in the brain. GHB is converted to succinate and then metabolized via the Krebs cycle. Clinical trials have shown that GHB increases delta sleep and improves the continuity of sleep (Laborit, 1973; Lapierre et al., 1988; Lapierre et al., 1990; Yamada et al., 1967; Scharf, 1985).

12

GHB treatment substantially reduces the signs and symptoms of narcolepsy, i.e. excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus. In addition, GHB increases total sleep time and REM sleep, and it decreases REM latency (Mamelak et al., 1973; Yamada et al., 1967; Bedard et al., 1989), reduces sleep apnea (Scrima et al., 1987), and improves general anesthesia (Hasenbos and Gielen, 1985).

GHB has several clinical applications other than narcolepsy and sleep disorders. GHB has been reported to reduce alcohol craving, the number of daily drinks consumed, and the symptoms of alcohol withdrawal in patients (Gallimberti et al., 1989; Gallimberti et al., 1992; Gessa et al., 1992). GHB has been used to decrease the symptoms of opiate withdrawal, including both heroin and methadone withdrawal (Gallimberti et al., 1994; Gallimberti et al., 1993). It has analgesic effects that make it suitable as a pain reliever (U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236). Intravenous administration of GHB has been reported to reduce intracranial pressure in patients (Strong, A. 1984). Also, administration of GHB was reported to increase growth hormone levels in patients (Gessa et al., 1994).

A good safety profile for GHB consumption, when used long term for treatment of narcolepsy has been reported. Patients have been safely treated for many years with GHB without development of tolerance (Scharf, 1985). Clinical laboratory tests carried out periodically on many patients have not indicated organ or other toxicities (Lammers, 1993; Scrima, 1990; Scharf, 1985; Mamelack, 1977; Mamelak, 1979; Gessa, 1992). The side effects of GHB treatment have been minimal in incidence and degree of severity, though they include sleepwalking, enuresis, headache, nausea and dizziness (Broughton and Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak et al., 1981; Mamelak et al., 1977; Scrima et al., 1989; Scrima et al., 1990; Scharf et al., 1985). Therefore, it is critical to identify adverse drug-drug interactions to maintain the positive safety profile for GHB.

GHB Pharmacology

GHB has at least two distinct binding sites (See Wu, et al., 2004) in the central nervous system. GHB is an agonist at the GHB receptor, which is excitatory, (Cash et al., 2009) and it is a weak agonist at the GABAB receptor, which is inhibitory. GHB acts in a similar fashion to some neurotransmitters in the mammalian brain and is probably synthesized from GABA in GABAergic neurons, and released when the neurons fire. If taken orally, GABA itself does not effectively cross the blood-brain-barrier. (See Kuriyama et al., 2005).

GHB induces the accumulation of either a derivative of tryptophan or tryptophan itself in the extracellular space, possibly by increasing tryptophan transport across the blood-brain barrier. The blood content of certain neutral amino-acids, including tryptophan, is also increased by peripheral GHB administration. GHB-induced stimulation of tissue serotonin turnover may be due to an increase in tryptophan transport to the brain and in its uptake by serotonergic cells. As the serotonergic system may be involved in the regulation of sleep, mood, and anxiety, the stimulation of this system by high doses of GHB may be involved in certain neuropharmacological events induced by GHB administration.

However, at therapeutic doses, GHB reaches much higher concentrations in the brain and activates GABAB receptors, which are primarily responsible for its sedative effects. (See Dimitrijevic et al., 2005). GHB's sedative effects are blocked by GABAB antagonists.

US 10,213,400 B2

13

The role of the GHB receptor in the behavioral effects induced by GHB is more complex. GHB receptors are densely expressed in many areas of the brain, including the cortex and hippocampus, and these are the receptors that GHB displays the highest affinity for. There has been somewhat limited research into the GHB receptor; however, there is evidence that activation of the GHB receptor in some brain areas results in the release of glutamate, the principal excitatory neurotransmitter. Drugs that selectively activate the GHB receptor cause absence seizures in high doses, as do GHB and GABA(B) agonists. (See Banerjee et al., 1995.)

Activation of both the GHB receptor and GABA(B) is responsible for the addictive profile of GHB. GHB's effect on dopamine release is biphasic. (See Hechler et al., 1991). Low concentrations stimulate dopamine release via the GHB receptor. (See Maitre et al., 1990). Higher concentrations inhibit dopamine release via GABA(B) receptors as do other GABA(B) agonists such as baclofen and phenibut. (See Smolders et al., 1995). After an initial phase of inhibition, dopamine release is then increased via the GHB receptor. Both the inhibition and increase of dopamine release by GHB are inhibited by opioid antagonists such as naloxone and naltrexone. Dynorphin may play a role in the inhibition of dopamine release via kappa opioid receptors. (See Mamelak 1989).

This may explain the paradoxical mix of sedative and stimulatory properties of GHB, as well as the so-called "rebound" effect, experienced by individuals using GHB as a sleeping agent, wherein they awake suddenly after several hours of GHB-induced deep sleep. That is to say that, over time, the concentration of GHB in the system decreases below the threshold for significant GABAB receptor activation and activates predominantly the GHB receptor, leading to wakefulness. However, one embodiment of the present invention is the unexpected discovery that drugs change the PD profile of GHB to alter its effects and its safety profile. Example drugs are include valproate and diclofenac. It is important for efficacy safety purposes that the effect of GHB be maintained consistently and not subject to variation due to the effects of other drugs.

Both of the metabolic breakdown pathways shown for GHB can run in either direction, depending on the concentrations of the substances involved, so the body can make its own GHB either from GABA or from succinic semialdehyde. Under normal physiological conditions, the concentration of GHB in the body is rather low, and the pathways would run in the reverse direction to what is shown here to produce endogenous GHB. However, when GHB is consumed for recreational or health promotion purposes, its concentration in the body is much higher than normal, which changes the enzyme kinetics so that these pathways operate to metabolize GHB rather than produce it.

The pharmacokinetics of GHB have been investigated in alcohol dependent patients (Ferrara et al., 1992) and in normal healthy males (Palatini et al., 1993) after oral administration. GHB possesses a rapid onset and short pharmacological effect (Ferrara et al., 1992; Palatine et al., 1993; Lettieri and Fung, 1978; Arena and Fung, 1980; Roth and Giarman, 1966; Vickers, 1969; Lee, 1977). In alcohol dependent patients, GHB absorption into and elimination from the systemic circulation were fast processes. Virtually no unchanged drug could be recovered in the urine. There were preliminary indications that the pharmacokinetics of GHB might be non-linear or dose-dependent (Ferrara et al., 1992). In the healthy volunteers study, the pharmacokinetics of three rising GHB doses (12.5, 25, and 50 mg/kg) were investigated. These findings indicate that both the oral

14

absorption and elimination processes of GHB were capacity-limited though the degree of dose dependency was moderate (Palatini et al., 1993).

Methods of making GHB salts are described, for example, in U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236, and U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886 which are incorporated herein by reference.

It has been discovered that there are unexpected drug-drug interactions (DDI) between GHB and common drugs frequently prescribed for other ailments. It is one goal of the present invention to warn when those interactions may affect the safety profile of GHB. In one embodiment of the present invention, drugs that may affect GHB administration include valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

GHB is a central nervous system (CNS) depressant. Alcohol and sedative hypnotics are contraindicated in patients who are using GHB. The concurrent use of GHB with other CNS depressants, including but not limited to opioid analgesics, benzodiazepines, sedating antidepressants or antipsychotics, general anesthetics, muscle relaxants, and/or illicit CNS depressants, may increase the risk of respiratory depression, hypotension, profound sedation, syncope, and death. If use of these CNS depressants in combination with GHB is required, dose reduction or discontinuation of one or more CNS depressants (including GHB) should be considered. In addition, if short-term use of an opioid (e.g. post- or perioperative) is required, interruption of treatment with GHB should be considered. See the package insert for Xyrem®.

GHB may impair respiratory drive, especially with overdoses associated with interactions with other drugs and alcohol. Since valproate may potentiate the effect of GHB, a warning should accompany any use of valproate and GHB as stated herein. The warning should address the use of additional drugs that may further enhance the effect of GHB, such as alcohol or aspirin, for example.

Healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Patients should be queried about potential adverse events, such as excessive daytime sleepiness, CNS depression related events, etc. upon initiation of GHB therapy and periodically thereafter. These queries should include info regarding additional medication such as diclofenac and valproate for example. See the Xyrem® package insert.

In one embodiment described herein, patients are warned that combination of GHB with valproate can increase plasma levels and potentiate the activity of GHB and exacerbate all the effects and adverse event associated with GHB. These effects include the intended effects of drowsiness, sedation, and sleep and typically unintended events such as depressed respiration, CNS depression, excessive drowsiness, hepatic impairment, and depression, among other things.

In another embodiment, diclofenac mitigates and protects against the pharmacodynamic effects the effects of GHB. However, the mixture of GHB and diclofenac does not affect sleepiness and does not make a patient more attentive. Without wishing to be bound by theory, the effects may be due to the interaction between diclofenac and the GHB receptor in lieu of the MCT inhibitor activity.

US 10,213,400 B2

15

Typical concentrations of GHB formulations are shown in U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,263,650 and 8,324,275, for example. They include minimum concentrations starting from 150 mg/ml to 450 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) and increasing to 600 mg/ml to 750 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) as a maximum. So, a broad range would include 150-750 mg/ml and any range within the broad range using 10 mg/ml increments. One embodiment of the invention is a range of 350-750 mg/ml and another is 450-550 mg/ml GHB. One embodiment of the present invention uses a GHB formulation with a pH range of 6-10, another uses a pH range of between 6.5-8. For example, a minimum concentration includes 350, 360, 370, 380 mg/ml, and so on up to at least 730, 740, and 750 mg/ml and all concentrations (measured in 10 mg/ml increments in between).

pH adjusting agents can include acids, bases and many of the compounds found in U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650. In some embodiments the pH adjusting agent is an acid selected from the group of: acetic, acetylsalicylic, barbital, barbituric, benzoic, benzyl penicillin, boric, caffeine, carbonic, citric, dichloroacetic, ethylenediaminetetra-acetic acid (EDTA), formic, glycerophosphoric, glycine, lactic, malic, mandelic, monochloroacetic, oxalic, phenobarbital, phenol, picroic, propionic, saccharin, salicylic, sodium dihydrogen phosphate, succinic, sulfadiazine, sulfamerazine, sulfapyridine, sulfathiazole, tartaric, trichloroacetic, and the like, or inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, nitric, phosphoric or sulfuric, and the like.

GHB is commercially available as a sodium salt, however, it can also be formulated as a mixture of salts as shown in U.S. Ser. No. 13/739,886, which is incorporated by reference as stated above. For example, the mixture comprises one, two, or three or more salts selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂). The different salts may be present in different percentages. For example, in certain embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 5% to about 40%, the K.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 10% to about 40%, and the Ca.(GHB)₂ salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 20% to about 80%. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂ salts are present in a wt/wt % ratio of about 11%:39%:50%, respectively.

Valproic Acid

Valproic acid (VPA, also called valproate or divalproex), an acidic chemical compound, has found clinical use as an anticonvulsant and mood-stabilizing drug, primarily in the treatment of epilepsy, bipolar disorder, and, less commonly, major depression. See G. Rosenberg, *Cell. Mol. Life Sci.* 64 (2007) 2090-2103. It is also used to treat migraine headaches and schizophrenia. A typical dose of valproate varies by indication. Dosages for seizures are between 10 to 15 mg/kg/day, with potential increases of 5 to 10 mg/kg/day. VPA is a liquid at room temperature, but it can be reacted with a base such as sodium hydroxide to form the salt sodium valproate, which is a solid. The acid, salt, or a mixture of the two (valproate semisodium, divalproate) are marketed under the various brand names Depakote, Depakote ER, Depakene, Depakene Crono (extended release in Spain), Depacon, Depakine, Valparin and Stavzor.

Valproate is believed to affect the function of the neurotransmitter GABA in the human brain, making it an alternative to lithium salts in treatment of bipolar disorder.

16

Its mechanism of action includes enhanced neurotransmission of GABA (by inhibiting GABA transaminase, which breaks down GABA). However, several other mechanisms of action in neuropsychiatric disorders have been proposed for valproic acid in recent years. See Rosenberg G (2007). "The mechanisms of action of valproate in neuropsychiatric disorders: can we see the forest for the trees?". *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences* 64 (16): 2090-103.

Valproic acid also blocks the voltage-gated sodium channels and T-type calcium channels. These mechanisms make valproic acid a broad-spectrum anticonvulsant drug. Valproic acid is an inhibitor of the enzyme histone deacetylase 1 (HDAC1), hence it is a histone deacetylase inhibitor. Valproic acid may interact with carbamazepine, as valproates inhibit microsomal epoxide hydrolase (mEH), the enzyme responsible for the breakdown of carbamazepine-10,11 epoxide (the main active metabolite of carbamazepine) into inactive metabolites. (See Gonzalez, Frank J.; Robert H. Tukey (2006). "Drug Metabolism". In Laurence Brunton, John Lazo, Keith Parker (eds.). *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* (11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill. pp. 79.) By inhibiting mEH, valproic acid causes a buildup of the active metabolite, prolonging the effects of carbamazepine and delaying its excretion. Valproic acid also decreases the clearance of amitriptyline and nortriptyline.

Aspirin may decrease the clearance of valproic acid, leading to higher-than-intended serum levels of the anticonvulsant. Also, combining valproic acid with the benzodiazepine clonazepam can lead to profound sedation and increases the risk of absence seizures in patients susceptible to them.

Valproic acid and sodium valproate reduce the apparent clearance of lamotrigine (lamictal). In most patients, the lamotrigine dosage for coadministration with valproate must be reduced to half the monotherapy dosage.

Valproic acid is contraindicated in pregnancy, as it decreases the intestinal reabsorption of folate (folic acid), which leads to neural tube defects. Because of a decrease in folate, megaloblastic anemia may also result. Phenytoin also decreases folate absorption, which may lead to the same adverse effects as valproic acid.

Valproic acid, 2-propylvaleric acid, is synthesized by the alkylation of cyanoacetic ester with two moles of propylbromide, to give dipropylcyanoacetic ester. Hydrolysis and decarboxylation of the carboethoxy group gives dipropylacetone, which is hydrolyzed into valproic acid. See U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,325,361 and 4,155,929 and GB Pat. Nos. 980279 and 1522450. See also, T. R. Henry, "The History of Valproate in Clinical Neuroscience." *Psychopharmacology bulletin* (2003) 37 (Suppl 2):5-16.

Diclofenac

Diclofenac is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) taken to reduce inflammation and as an analgesic reducing pain in certain conditions. Diclofenac is used to treat pain, inflammatory disorders, and dysmenorrhea and is a commonly used NSAID. See Auler et al., *Brazilian Jour. Med. Bio. Res.*, (1977) 30:369-374 and Hasan, et al., and *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, vol. 18, No. 1, January 2005, pp 18-24 both are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

The name is derived from its chemical name: 2-(2,6-dichloranilino) phenylacetic acid, it may be supplied as either the sodium or potassium salt. Diclofenac is available as a generic drug in a number of formulations; including Dichlofenac diethylammonium applied topically to joints.

US 10,213,400 B2

17

Over-the-counter (OTC) use is approved in some countries for minor aches and pains and fever associated with common infections.

Diclofenac is typically absorbed readily, but absorption is delayed upon administration with food. Its half-life varies from 1 to 3 hours with mean peak plasma levels of about 0.5 ug/ml to 1.0 ug/ml after 2 hours of a single dose of 25 mg. Diclofenac binds to human serum proteins, specifically albumin. See Hasan et al 2005.

Ibuprofen

Ibuprofen (from iso-butyl-propanoic-phenolic acid) is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) widely prescribed for pain relief, fever reduction, and swelling. Ibuprofen was derived from propanoic acid. Originally marketed as Brufen, ibuprofen is available under a variety of popular trademarks, including Motrin, Nurofen, Advil, and Nuprin. Ibuprofen is used primarily for fever, pain, dysmenorrhea and inflammatory diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis. It is also used for pericarditis and patent ductus arteriosus. It is a commonly used drug commercially available over the counter.

Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as ibuprofen work by inhibiting the enzyme cyclooxygenase (COX), which converts arachidonic acid to prostaglandin H₂ (PGH₂). PGH₂, in turn, is converted by other enzymes to several other prostaglandins (which are mediators of pain, inflammation, and fever) and to thromboxane A₂ (which stimulates platelet aggregation, leading to the formation of blood clots).

Like aspirin and indomethacin, ibuprofen is a nonselective COX inhibitor, in that it inhibits two isoforms of cyclooxygenase, COX-1 and COX-2. The analgesic, antipyretic, and anti-inflammatory activity of NSAIDs appears to operate mainly through inhibition of COX-2, whereas inhibition of COX-1 would be responsible for unwanted effects on the gastrointestinal tract. However, the role of the individual COX isoforms in the analgesic, anti-inflammatory, and gastric damage effects of NSAIDs is uncertain and different compounds cause different degrees of analgesia and gastric damage.

The synthesis of this compound consisted of six steps, started with the Friedel-Crafts acetylation of isobutylbenzene. Reaction with ethyl chloroacetate (Darzens reaction) gave the α,β -epoxy ester, which was hydrolyzed and decarboxylated to the aldehyde. Reaction with hydroxylamine gave the oxime, which was converted to the nitrile, then hydrolyzed to the desired acid. See U.S. Pat. No. 3,385,886.

An improved synthesis by BHC required only three steps. After a similar acetylation, hydrogenation with Raney nickel gave the alcohol, which underwent palladium-catalyzed carbonylation.

Valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen are monocarboxylate transporter inhibitors. One embodiment of the present application is a method to improve safety by monitoring the combination of these compounds with GHB.

Monocarboxylate Transporters

Monocarboxylate transporters, or MCTs, constitute a family of proton-linked plasma membrane transporters that carry molecules having one carboxylate group (monocarboxylates), such as lactate and pyruvate, across biological membranes. See Halestrap A P, Meredith D (2004). "The SLC16 gene family-from monocarboxylate transporters (MCTs) to aromatic amino acid transporters and beyond". Pflogers Arch. 447 (5): 619-28.

MCTs are a series of transporters which move chemicals in body tissues, such as kidneys, blood/brain barrier, intestines, etc. They can transport chemical compounds back

18

from urine to create a higher concentration in the blood than the urine. They can be used to treat an overdose or to prevent excretion of a compound. They can also be used to prevent absorption or transport into the brain or gut, or excretion via the urine. Exemplary MCT inhibitors include valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

Concomitant Administration of GHB and Drug-Drug Interactions

In one embodiment of the present invention the concomitant administration of MCT inhibitors, such as either valproate, diclofenac, or ibuprofen with GHB can effect GHB levels or activity and alter the GHB safety and efficacy profile to create an unsafe condition. For example, valproate can increase or prolong GHB effects and diclofenac can reduce or shorten GHB effects. For example, if the effects are increased, then there could be an increase of adverse events associated with too much GHB. Also, the effect of GHB may be prolonged to cause side effects, such as excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS), to last into the daytime. Prolongation of the effect would counter the purpose for providing the GHB and could create an unsafe situation for patients who wish to be alert and who may be engaged in otherwise dangerous activity. This concomitant administration can transform an otherwise safe dose of GHB into one with safety concerns. It is a health risk to patients and a medical challenge to health care workers.

The drug-drug interaction could also reduce the effects of GHB by altering its blood levels or otherwise. Reduction in the GHB level may also provide an unsafe condition due to excessive daytime sleepiness. In each situation, where GHB is increased, decreased or excessively cleared, those drug-drug interactions need to be identified to a health care worker to adjust the dose of GHB or discontinue the use of the other compound.

As recited on the product insert for Xyrem®, healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB.

In some embodiments in which diclofenac or valproate is discontinued to avoid an adverse drug interaction, they are discontinued within at least 3 days prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In various embodiments, diclofenac or valproate is discontinued within at least 4 days, or at least 5 days, or at least 6 days, or at least 7 days (or one week), or at least 8 days, or at least 9 days, or at least 10 days, or at least 11 days, or at least 12 days, or at least 13 days, or at least 14 days (or two weeks), or at least 15 days, or at least 16 days, or at least 17 days, or at least 18 days, or at least 19 days, or at least 20 days, or at least 21 days (or three weeks) prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In some embodiments, the diclofenac or valproate is discontinued no later than 2 weeks or 1 week before starting GHB therapy.

In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy when valproate is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient downward relative to a previously administered dosage in the patient, so the dose does not result in an increased exposure to GHB. In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy when diclofenac is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient upward relative to a

US 10,213,400 B2

19

previously administered dosage in the patient, so the dose results in an effective exposure to GHB.

Thus, the present invention includes a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB), wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate such additive effects.

In one embodiment of the present invention, a reduced amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with valproate. In another embodiment of the present invention, an increased amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with diclofenac.

When valproate is concomitantly administered with GHB, the amount of GHB can be reduced at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 9 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to reduce the normal dose by 15% is 7.65 g/day. The GHB dose reduction may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. A typical adult range of doses for GHB are between 4.5 or 6 g as a minimum and 8 or 10 g/day as a maximum divided into two doses. The dose recommended on the package insert and approved by the FDA is between 4.5 and 9.0 g/day. Typical exemplary paediatric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 6 g/day for pediatric patients aged 0-6 years. Typical exemplary paediatric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 9 g/day for pediatric patients aged 7-17 years. However, these ranges are not absolute and can be increased or decreased by 1-2 grams in either direction. One dose is typically administered prior to bed (night time sleep) and another dose administered 1-2 hours later. See the Xyrem® package insert (Xyrem® is a registered trademark of Jazz Pharmaceuticals plc or its subsidiaries.). Either or both of the multiple doses may be reduced to present a safer administration profile. For example, the first dose may be reduced by the numbers referred to above or the second may be reduced by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day may be reduced at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary decrease in an adult dose would be to reduce the maximum dose to less than 8.5, 8, 7.5, 7, 6.5, 6, 5.5, 5, 4.5, 4, 3.5, 3 g/day and so on. The minimum dose will be reduced accordingly to 4, 3.5, 3, 2.5, 2, and so on.

In one embodiment of the present invention, diclofenac may dampen or delay the effect of GHB upon a patient during concomitant administration. In one embodiment, it may be useful to increase the amount of GHB that is administered to the patient. For example, GHB may be increased at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 10 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to increase the normal dose by 15% is 11.5 g/day. The GHB dose increase may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. Either, or both, of the multiple doses may be increased to present a safer administration profile. For example, the first dose may be increased by the numbers referred to above or the second may be increased by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day

20

may be increased at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary decrease in an adult dose would be to increase the minimum dose to 5, 5.5, 6, 6.5, 7, 7.5, 8, 8.5 g/day and so on. An increase in the maximum dose would be at least 9.5, 10, 10.5, 11, 11.5, 12, 12.5, 13, 13.5, 14 g/day and so on.

In another aspect, a package or kit is provided comprising GHB, optionally in a container, and a package insert, package label, instructions or other labelling including any one, two, three or more of the following information or recommendations: (a) use of diclofenac or valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors, such as diclofenac or valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in exposure to GHB, (d) concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in a decrease in exposure to GHB, and/or (e) MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

Alternatively, diclofenac can be administered to counteract the effects of GHB toxicity using a reverse of the numerical relationships above. Similarly, valproate can be used to increase the effects of GHB in patients that cannot take higher amounts of GHB. In this regard, the present invention includes methods for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that potential toxic effects of GHB are reduced. The present invention also includes methods for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

The examples below, which show drug interaction studies in healthy adults, demonstrated those instances, test conditions or metrics which showed a distinction between GHB and either of the test compounds, diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen. Additionally, drug interaction studies in healthy adults demonstrated pharmacokinetic or clinically significant pharmacodynamic interactions between GHB and diclofenac or valproate.

EXAMPLE 1

This study was designed to compare Pharmacokinetic (PK) and Pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® sodium oxybate (GHB) with and without concomitant administration of diclofenac. A crossover design was employed to allow within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with diclofenac. The PK and PD effects of Xyrem® upon those of diclofenac were also studied.

The PD parameters included a selection of automated tests of attention, information processing, working memory and skilled coordination from the CDR System. (Rapeport et al, 1996ab; Williams et al, 1996). (Wesnes et al, 1997). (Wesnes et al, 2000) (Modi et al, 2007).

Methods

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, three-period, crossover study in healthy subjects. 24 subjects were recruited to ensure that 18 completed the study. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eligible subjects were entered into the study and received one of the following treatments per period, in randomized order:

US 10,213,400 B2

21

Diclofenac placebo administered as one capsule qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, one diclofenac placebo capsule administered at -1 h and 3 h, and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Diclofenac administered as 50 mg immediate-release (IR) tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Diclofenac administered as 50 mg IR tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and Xyrem® placebo (volume equivalent to 3 g of Xyrem® oral solution) administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Subjects were randomized to one of the above treatments on Day 1, crossed over to another treatment on Day 6, and crossed over again to the remaining treatment on Day 11 (Table 1). Subjects were dosed in groups of up to 12. A 2-day washout period followed each of the treatment periods. The treatments were as follows: A=Diclofenac placebo (qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® two 3 g doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. B=Diclofenac (50 mg qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® two 3 g doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. C=Diclofenac (50 mg qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® placebo two doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time (SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

Results

Power of attention—On this measure of focussed attention and information processing Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 0.5 h; while the smaller impairments with the combination narrowly missed significance at 1 and 4.5 h. Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac also resulted in impairments at two timepoints compared to diclofenac alone which at 6.5 h was significant and a trend at 8 h. See FIG. 1 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy—On this measure of focussed attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 2 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time—On this measure of focussed attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 3 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

Choice Reaction Time Mean—Impairments to this measure of attention and information processing were significantly smaller than with Xyrem® alone when co-dosed with

22

diclofenac during the hour following the first dose of Xyrem®. See FIG. 4 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

While diclofenac alone had no effect on sleepiness or cognitive function, when co-dosed with Xyrem® it significantly reduced the effects of the compound on Power of Attention and two of the contributing scores, simple and choice reaction time; these effects being seen during the hour after the first dose of Xyrem®. On the other hand, there was no evidence on any measure of greater cognitive impairment or sleepiness when the two compounds were co-dosed.

The extent of the reductions in the impairments to the ability to focus attention and efficiently process information were quite notable, and likely to be of clinical relevance. It is interesting that protective effect of diclofenac was not seen on the subjects ratings of alertness, such a dissociation having been seen previously with haloperidol in healthy elderly volunteers (Beuzan et al, 1991).

In conclusion, evidence of an interaction was seen in this study over the hour following the first dose of Xyrem® on the study days, the impairments being notably smaller when diclofenac was co-dosed with Xyrem®. There was no interaction however on the feelings of sleepiness in the subjects.

EXAMPLE 2

This study is designed to compare the pharmacokinetic (PK) and pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. The crossover design allows within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time (SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

The objectives of this study were to evaluate the PK and PD of Xyrem® co-administered with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets and to evaluate and compare the safety and tolerability of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets.

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, five-period, crossover study in healthy male subjects. The study was conducted in approximately 24 healthy subjects to ensure completion of 16 subjects. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eligible subjects were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 1 and 2; were dosed with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets for 10 consecutive days in Period 3; and while continuing to take divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 4 and 5 (Table 1).

Periods 1 and 2:

Subjects were randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo 4 hours apart in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 AM (first dose) and 1 PM (second dose) on Days 1 and 3. PK and PD parameters were evaluated during the 24 hours postdose.

Blood samples (4 mL) for sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at predose and at specified time-points up to 12 hours after the first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo on Days 1 and 3. A PD Battery including the Karolinska Sleepiness Scale, Simple Reaction Time task, Digit Vigi-

US 10,213,400 B2

23

lance task, Choice Reaction Time task, Tracking task, and Numeric Working Memory task was administered at planned timepoints up to X hours after first dose (X hours after second dose), and safety were monitored at specified timepoints on Days 1 and 3 as well as throughout the periods.

Period 3:

All subjects received divalproex sodium extended-release tablets 1250 mg at approximately 8 AM on Days 5 through 14. Blood samples (4 mL) for valproic acid concentrations were collected before the divalproex sodium dose (to determine trough concentration for assessment of steady state) on Days 13 and 14. Safety was monitored at specified timepoints as well as throughout the period.

Periods 4 and 5:

Subjects continued taking 1250 mg divalproex sodium extended-release tablets at approximately 8 AM on Days 15 through 18. Subjects were also randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 am (first dose) and 1 pm (second dose) on Days 15 and 18. The first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken approximately 1 hour after dosing with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, and the second dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken 4 hours after the first Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose.

Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at pre Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose and at specified timepoints after the first Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo dose on Days 15 and 18. Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma valproic acid concentrations were collected pre divalproex sodium dose and at specified timepoints after the dose of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets on Day 15 and 18.

The PD battery was administered on Day 15 and 18, and safety was monitored at specified times on Days 15 and 18 as well as throughout the periods.

The treatments were as follows: A=Xyrem®, two 3 g doses, 4 hours apart at approximately 9 AM (1st dose) and 1 PM (2nd dose); B=Xyrem® placebo, two doses, 4 hours apart; and C=Divalproex sodium 1250 mg, once a day at approximately 8 AM.

Results

The results below show the tests in which GHB administration was affected by concomitant administration of any of three MCT inhibitors, such as valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

Continuity of Attention

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 hours and 8 hours. See FIG. 5 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population).

Simple Reaction Time Mean

At 1 hour and 4 hours, Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together produced statistically reliably greater impairments than Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 6, which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy

At 2.5 and 4 hours Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together were statistically reliably different greater impairment to Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 7, which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

24

Tracking Distance from Target

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a statistically significant difference by a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 and 8 hours. See FIG. 8 which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a difference at 4.5 through 8 hours. See FIG. 9, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed statistically significant differences at 2.5, 5 and 8 hours when the combination produced greater impairment. See FIG. 10, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

In addition, it was observed that renal excretion of GHB increase 30% upon co-administration of Valproate.

We also found pk changes which were consistent with the inhibition of GHB dehydrogenase. This effect will increase the exposure of GHB to the subject and increase Cmax and AUC about 15%.

The combination of Xyrem® dosed with divalproex sodium was compared to divalproex sodium alone, more consistent statistically significant impairments over time were seen with the combination, than when Xyrem® was compared to its placebo, indicating that the effects of co-administration, when they appeared, were in the direction of increased impairments.

As has been seen previously, Xyrem® induces sleepiness and produces impairments to attention, working memory and performance on a tracking task in healthy volunteers. Divalproex sodium alone showed no consistent or notable effects on cognitive function or sleepiness. There were occasions when co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex sodium produced greater deficits than Xyrem® alone. Further the combination also produced more consistent impairments when compared with divalproex sodium alone, than did Xyrem® when compared to its placebo. Thus this study has found evidence that co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex produces greater impairments to cognitive function and sleepiness than were seen with Xyrem® alone.

EXAMPLE 3

The effects of Ibuprofen were evaluated when combined with Xyrem® in a manner similar to the above. No differences were seen using the metrics above for Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), and the following CDR System tasks: Simple Reaction Time, Digit Vigilance, Choice Reaction Time, Tracking and Numeric Working Memory. However, it was observed that renal excretion of Xyrem® doubled upon concomitant administration of Ibuprofen and Xyrem®.

All publications and patent applications cited in this specification are herein incorporated by reference as if each individual publication or patent application were specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference. Although the foregoing has been described in some detail by way of illustration and example for purposes of clarity of understanding, it will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art in light of the teachings of the specification that

US 10,213,400 B2

25

certain changes and modifications may be made thereto without departing from the spirit or scope of the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method for reducing adverse effects caused by a combination of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof and divalproex sodium in a patient comprising:

administering a reduced daily dosage amount of GHB or a salt thereof to the patient of between about 5% to about 35%, compared to a daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium; wherein the patient is concomitantly administered divalproex sodium;
wherein the patient is a patient suffering from cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy and currently taking GHB or salt thereof; wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is between 4.5 g to 9 g.

2. The method of claim **1** further comprising monitoring the patient's response and adjusting the dose of GHB or salt thereof.

3. The method of claim **1** wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

4. The method of claim **1** wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 6 g.

5. The method of claim **1** wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 7.5 g.

6. The method of claim **1** wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 9 g.

7. The method of claim **1** wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced by between about 20% and about 35%.

8. A method for reducing adverse effects caused by combination of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or salt thereof and divalproex sodium in a patient comprising:

administering a reduced daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof to the patient of between about 5% to and about 35%, compared to a manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium; wherein the patient is concomitantly administered divalproex sodium;
wherein the patient is a patient suffering from cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy and currently taking GHB or salt thereof; wherein the manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is between 4.5 g to 9 g.

26

9. The method of claim **8** further comprising monitoring the patient's response and adjusting the dose of GHB or salt thereof.

10. The method of claim **8** wherein the manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

11. The method of claim **8** wherein the manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is divided into two equal doses.

12. The method of claim **11** wherein a first or second dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

13. The method of claim **8** wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced by between about 20% and about 35%, compared to manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium.

14. The method of claim **13** wherein the manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

15. A method for reducing adverse effects caused by combination of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or salt thereof and divalproex sodium in a patient comprising:

administering to the patient a daily dosage amount of GHB or a salt thereof that is between about 5% and about 35% lower than a starting dosage amount of GHB or a salt thereof that would otherwise have been recommended to the patient if the patient was not currently taking divalproex sodium;

wherein the patient is concomitantly administered divalproex sodium;
wherein the patient is a patient suffering from cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy and currently taking GHB or salt thereof;

wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof is between 4.5 g and 9 g.

16. The method of claim **15** further comprising monitoring the patient's response and adjusting the dose of GHB or salt thereof.

17. The method of claim **15** wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or a salt thereof administered to the patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium is lower than 4.5 g.

18. The method of claim **15** wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or a salt thereof administered to the patient who is currently taking divalproex sodium is divided into two equal doses.

19. The method of claim **18** wherein a first or second dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

20. The method of claim **15** wherein the starting daily dosage amount of GHB or a salt thereof is reduced by between about 20% and about 35%.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT E



US010864181B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Eller

(10) **Patent No.:** US 10,864,181 B2
(45) **Date of Patent:** *Dec. 15, 2020

(54) **METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS**

(71) Applicant: **JAZZ PHARMACEUTICALS IRELAND LIMITED**, Dublin (IE)

(72) Inventor: **Mark Eller**, Redwood City, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited**, Dublin (IE)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **16/245,067**

(22) Filed: **Jan. 10, 2019**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2019/0274980 A1 Sep. 12, 2019

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation of application No. 15/869,792, filed on Jan. 12, 2018, now Pat. No. 10,213,400, which is a continuation of application No. 15/343,806, filed on Nov. 4, 2016, now abandoned, which is a continuation of application No. 14/707,914, filed on May 8, 2015, now Pat. No. 9,486,426, which is a continuation of application No. 13/837,714, filed on Mar. 15, 2013, now Pat. No. 9,050,302.

(60) Provisional application No. 61/771,557, filed on Mar. 1, 2013, provisional application No. 61/777,873, filed on Mar. 12, 2013.

(51) **Int. Cl.**

A61K 31/19 (2006.01)
A61K 31/20 (2006.01)
A61P 11/00 (2006.01)
A61P 25/20 (2006.01)
A61P 43/00 (2006.01)
A61K 31/616 (2006.01)
A61K 31/33 (2006.01)
A61K 31/505 (2006.01)
A61K 31/55 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.**

CPC *A61K 31/19* (2013.01); *A61K 31/20* (2013.01); *A61K 31/33* (2013.01); *A61K 31/505* (2013.01); *A61K 31/55* (2013.01); *A61K 31/616* (2013.01); *A61P 11/00* (2018.01); *A61P 25/20* (2018.01); *A61P 43/00* (2018.01)

(58) **Field of Classification Search**

CPC A61K 31/19; A61K 31/20; A61K 31/616; A61K 31/33; A61K 31/505; A61K 31/55; A61P 11/00; A61P 25/20; A61P 43/00

See application file for complete search history.

(56)

References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,051,619 A	8/1962	Laborit
3,325,361 A	6/1967	Meunier
3,385,886 A	5/1968	Nicholson et al.
4,155,929 A	5/1979	Chignac et al.
4,393,236 A	7/1983	Klosa
4,983,632 A	1/1991	Gessa et al.
5,380,937 A	1/1995	Koehler et al.
5,758,095 A	5/1998	Albaum et al.
5,833,599 A	11/1998	Schrier et al.
5,845,255 A	12/1998	Mayaud
5,990,162 A	11/1999	Scharf
6,014,631 A	1/2000	Teagarden et al.
6,067,524 A	5/2000	Byerly et al.
6,112,182 A	8/2000	Akers et al.
6,204,245 B1	3/2001	Siegel et al.
6,317,719 B1	11/2001	Schrier et al.
6,356,873 B1	3/2002	Teagarden et al.
6,472,431 B2	11/2002	Cook et al.
6,780,889 B2	8/2004	Cook et al.
7,015,200 B2	3/2006	Mamelak et al.
7,072,840 B1	7/2006	Mayaud
7,262,219 B2	8/2007	Cook et al.
7,572,605 B2	8/2009	Mamelak et al.
7,668,730 B2	2/2010	Reardan et al.
7,765,106 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.
7,765,107 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.
7,797,171 B2	9/2010	Reardan et al.
7,851,506 B2	12/2010	Cook et al.
7,895,059 B2	2/2011	Reardan et al.
8,263,650 B2	9/2012	Cook et al.

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

DE	237 309	5/1985
EP	0616804	5/1985

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

U.S. Appl. No. 61/317,212, filed Mar. 24, 2010, Allphin et al.

(Continued)

Primary Examiner — Shirley V Gembeh

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm* — Jones Day

(57) **ABSTRACT**

One embodiment of the present invention is to improve the safety and efficacy of the administration of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient. It has been discovered that the concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor, such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, will affect GHB administration. For example, it has been discovered that diclofenac lowers the effect of GHB in the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition. Furthermore, it has been discovered that valproate increases the effect of GHB on the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition.

US 10,864,181 B2

Page 2

(56)

References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

8,324,275	B2	12/2012	Cook et al.
8,591,922	B1	11/2013	Allphin et al.
8,772,306	B1	7/2014	Eller
8,952,029	B2	2/2015	Eller
9,050,302	B2	6/2015	Eller
2003/0125385	A1	7/2003	Cook et al.
2003/0171270	A1	9/2003	Civelli et al.
2006/0018933	A1	1/2006	Vaya et al.
2008/0293698	A1	11/2008	Johnson
2009/0137565	A1	5/2009	Frucht
2010/0112056	A1	5/2010	Rourke et al.
2010/0160299	A1	6/2010	Baker, Jr. et al.
2011/0237664	A1	9/2011	Dalton et al.
2012/0076865	A1	3/2012	Allphin et al.
2014/0249222	A1	9/2014	Eller

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

GB	922 029	3/1963
GB	980 279	1/1965
GB	1 522 450	8/1978
RU	2232012	7/2004
WO	WO 2006053186	5/2006
WO	WO 2010053691	5/2010
WO	WO 2011119839	9/2011
WO	WO 2011139271	11/2011
WO	WO 2012037457	3/2012
WO	WO 2014134380 A1	9/2014

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- "Disulfiram/sodium oxybate/valproate interaction," *Reactions Weekly*, (Jul. 2011), p. 18, vol. 1361, No. 1.
- "Xyrem: EPAR-Procedural steps taken before authorization," (Aug. 9, 2006), 1 page. Available at http://www.ema.europa.eu/ema/index.jsp?cu_ri=pages/med_ici_nes/huma/n/medicines/000593-human_medOO_1163.jsp&mid=WCOB01_ac058001_d124. Downloaded Jan. 28, 2015.
- "Xyrem®," The Pharmaceutical Journal, (Feb. 18, 2006). Available at: <http://www.pharmaceutical-journal.com/new-medicines/-/spc-changes/-/couer-products/-/discontinued-products/-/oridict-miscellany/20016677.article#xyrem>. Downloaded Mar. 5, 2015.
- "Xyrem®: Procedural steps taken and scientific information after the authorisation," European Medicine Agency, (2014), pp. 1-9.
- "Guidance for Industry: Drug Interaction Studies—Study Design, Data Analysis, and Implications for Dosing and Labeling," Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Clinical Pharmacology Division, (Feb. 2012), pp. 1-79. Available at: <https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm292362.pdf>.
- "Scientific Discussion" European Medicine Agency, (2014), pp. 1-30. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-Scientific_Discussion/human/000593/WC500057101.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 17, 2017.
- "Annex I List of the Names, Pharmaceutical Forms, Strengths of the Medicinal Products, Route of Administration, Marketing Authorization Holders in the Member States," Valproic acid/Valproate, 107 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Referrals_document/valproate_31/WC500105842.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 23, 2018.
- "Annex II Scientific Conclusions and Grounds for Amendment of the Summaries of Product Characteristics and Package Leaflets Presented by the European Medicine Agency," Valproic acid/Valproate, 6 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Referrals_document/valproate_31/WC500105843.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 23, 2018.
- "Opening Expert report of Daniel R Wynn, MD, FACNS, FAASM," *Jazz pharmaceuticals, Inc. v. Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC*, Jun. 29, 2018, pp. 1-77.
- "Opening Expert report of John R. Horn, Pharm.D., FCCP," *Jazz pharmaceuticals, Inc. v. Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC*, Jun. 28, 2018, pp. 1-100.
- "Scientific Discussion" European Medicine Agency, Aug. 9, 2006, pp. 1-30. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-Scientific_Discussion/human/000593/WC500057101.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 23, 2018.
- AbbVie Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Depakote® (Divalproex Sodium) Tablets for Oral Use: FDA Approved Labeling Text," (Oct. 7, 2011).
- Arena et al., "Absorption of Sodium γ -Hydroxybutyrate and Its Prodrug γ -Butyrolactone: Relationship between In Vitro Transport and In Vivo Absorption," *J. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 69(3): 356-358, 1980.
- Auler et al., "Diclofenac Plasma Protein Binding: PK-PD Modelling in Cardiac Patients Submitted to Cardiopulmonary Bypass," *Braz. J. Med. Bio. Res.*, 30: 369-374, 1997.
- Banerjee et al., "Presynaptic Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB) and Gamma-Aminobutyric Acid_B(GABA_B) Receptor-Mediated Release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in Rat Thalamic Ventrobasal Nucleus (VB): A Possible Mechanism for the Generation of Absence-Like Seizures Induced by GHB," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 273 (3): 1534-1543, 1995.
- Bédard et al., "Nocturnal γ -Hydroxybutyrate Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients," *Clin. Neuropharmacol.*, 12(1): 29-36, 1989.
- Bernasconi et al., "Experimental Absence Seizures: Potential Roles of γ -Hydroxybutyrate and GABAB Receptors," *J. Neural Transm.*, 35:155-177, 1992.
- Bhattacharya et al., "GHB (γ -Hydroxybutyrate) Carrier-Mediated Transport across the Blood-Brain Barrier," *The Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, 311 (1): 92-98. 2004.
- Bhattacharya et al., "Potential γ -Hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) Drug Interactions Through Blood-Brain Barrier Transport Inhibition: A Pharmacokinetic Simulation-Based Evaluation," *J. Pharmacokinetic Pharmacodyn.*, 33(5): 657-681, 2006.
- Billiard et al., "EFNS guidelines on management of narcolepsy," *Eur. J. Neurol.*, 13: 1035-1048, 2006.
- Borgen et al., "The Influence of Gender and Food on the Pharmacokinetics of Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution in Healthy Subjects," *J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 43: 59-65, 2003, Abstract only.
- Broughton and Mamelak, "Effects of Nocturnal Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Sleep/Waking Patterns in Narcolepsy-Cataplexy," *Can J. Neural. Sci.*, 7(1):23-31, 1980.
- Broughton et al., "The Treatment of Narcolepsy-Cataplexy with Nocturnal Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate," *Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques*, 6(1): 1-6, 1979.
- Busardo et al., "GHB Pharmacology and Toxicology: Acute Intoxication, Concentrations in Blood and Urine in Forensic Cases and Treatment of the Withdrawal Syndrome," *Current Neuropharmacology*, 13: 47-70, 2015.
- Cagnin et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid-Induced Psychosis and Seizures," *Epilepsy & Behavior*, 21:203-205, 2011.
- Cash et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Function Studied by the Modulation of Nitric Oxide Synthase Activity in Rat Frontal Cortex Punches," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 58 (11): 1815-1819, 1999.
- Cash, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Overview of the Pros and Cons for it Being a Neurotransmitter and/or a Useful Therapeutic Agent," *Neurosci. Biobehavioral Rev.*, 18(2):291-304, 1994.
- Cash et al., "3'-5' Cyclic-Guanosine Monophosphate Increase in Rat Brain Hippocampus after Gamma-hydroxybutyrate Administration. Prevention by Valproate and Naloxone," *Life Sci.*, 41(5):605-610, 1987.
- Chateauvieux et al., "Molecular and Therapeutic Potential and Toxicity of Valproic Acid," *Journal of Biomedicine and Biotechnology*, (2010), pp. 1-18.
- Chiu et al., "Therapeutic Potential of Mood Stabilizers Lithium and Valproic Acid: Beyond Bipolar Disorder," *Pharmacol. Rev.*, 65(1): 105-142, 2003.
- Defendant Par Pharmaceutical, Inc.'s Initial Invalidity Contentions for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302, filed Jun. 23, 2017, 68 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Aug. 19, 2014, from Ranbaxy Laboratories Limited to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: "Notice of Paragraph IV Certification Regarding NDA 021196 Xyrem® Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/mL Oral Solution with respect to U.S. Pat. No. 6,780,889; U.S. Pat. No. 7,262,219; U.S. Pat. No. 7,668,730; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,106; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,107; U.S. Pat. No. 7,851,605; U.S.

US 10,864,181 B2

Page 3

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Pat. No. 7,895,059; U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650; U.S. Pat. No. 8,324,275; U.S. Pat. No. 8,457,988; U.S. Pat. No. 8,589,182; U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963; and U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306.”
- Notification Letter dated Aug. 5, 2014, from Par Pharmaceutical, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution (Xyrem®); U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; Notice of Paragraph IV Certification.
- Notification Letter dated Feb. 15, 2017, from Ohm Laboratories Inc., Sun Pharmaceutical Industries Ltd., and Ranbaxy Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Supplemental Notice of Certification Under 21 U.S.C. § 355(j)(2)(B)(ii) (§ 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act) and 21 C.F.R. § 314.95, 5 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Feb. 16, 2017, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. Re: Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426 and U.S. Pat. No. 9,539,330, 15 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Feb. 3, 2016, from Watson Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: “Notification of Certification for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act,” 16 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 13, 2017, from Ohm Laboratories Inc., Sun Pharmaceutical Industries Ltd., and Ranbaxy Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Supplemental Notice of Certification Under 21 U.S.C. § 355(j)(2)(B)(ii) (§ 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act) and 21 C.F.R. § 314.95, 5 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 13, 2017, from Roxane Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Notification Pursuant to the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. § 355(j)(2)(B)(ii) and 21 C.F.R. § 314.95(c)(1)) for Roxane Laboratories, Inc.’s ANDA No. 202090 re U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426 (Our Ref. Xyrem®/ Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution), 16 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 16, 2015, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963; U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; and U.S. Pat. No. 8,859,619, 22 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 16, 2017, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals, LLC to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426, Concerning ANDA 203631 for Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution, 500 mg/mL, 14 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 9, 2015, from Roxane Laboratories to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Patent Notice Pursuant to Section 505U)(2)(B)(ii) [21 USC Section 355U)(2)(B)(ii)] for U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963; U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; and U.S. Pat. No. 8,859,619, 32 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jul. 21, 2015, from Lupin Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd., and Jazz Pharmaceuticals plc re: “Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution, 500 mg/ml: Notification of Certifications for U.S. Pat. No. 6,780,889 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,262,219 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,668,730 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,106 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,107 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,851,506 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 7,895,059 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,324,275 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,457,988 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,589,182 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,859,619 B2, U.S. Pat. No. 8,952,062 B2, and U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 B2 Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act,” 454 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jul. 22, 2015, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: “Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302, Concerning ANDA 203631 for Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution, 500 mg/mL,” 14 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jun. 14, 2017, from Ascent Pharmaceuticals, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Certification of non-Infringement and/or Invalidity of U.S. Pat. No. 6,780,889; U.S. Pat. No. 7,262,219; U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650; U.S. Pat. No. 8,859,619; U.S. Pat. No. 9,539,330; U.S. Pat. No. 8,324,275; U.S. Pat. No. 7,851,506; U.S. Pat. No. 8,952,062; U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302; U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426; U.S. Pat. No. 7,668,730; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,106; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,107; U.S. Pat. No. 7,895,059; U.S. Pat. No. 8,457,988; U.S. Pat. No. 8,589,182; U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963, 97 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jun. 5, 2015, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: “Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. No. 6,780,889; U.S. Pat. No. 7,262,219; U.S. Pat. No. 7,668,730; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,106; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,107; U.S. Pat. No. 7,851,506; U.S. Pat. No. 7,895,059; U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650; U.S. Pat. No. 8,324,275; U.S. Pat. No. 8,457,988; U.S. Pat. No. 8,589,182; U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963; U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; U.S. Pat. No. 8,859,619; U.S. Pat. No. 8,952,062,” 140 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Nov. 24, 2015, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: “Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 and U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306,” 45 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Oct. 29, 2014, from Watson Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: “Notification of Certification for U.S. Pat. No. 6,780,889; U.S. Pat. No. 7,262,219; U.S. Pat. No. 7,668,730; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,106; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,107; U.S. Pat. No. 7,851,605; U.S. Pat. No. 7,895,059; U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650; U.S. Pat. No. 8,324,275; U.S. Pat. No. 8,457,988; U.S. Pat. No. 8,589,182; U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963; and U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(iv) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act.”
- Notification Letter dated Oct. 9, 2015, from Ranbaxy Inc., a Sun Pharma company, to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: “Supplemental Notice of Paragraph IV Certification Regarding NDA 021196 Xyrem® Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution With Respect to U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302,” 50 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Sep. 1, 2015, from Par Pharmaceutical, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: “Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution (Xyrem®) U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 Notice of Paragraph IV Certification,” 51 pages.
- Notification Letter received Dec. 14, 2015, from Roxane Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: Paragraph IV Certification for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302. Petition for IPR by Ranbaxy, Inc., IPR2016-00738, filed Mar. 10, 2016, 73 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC, IPR2016-00546, filed Feb. 2, 2016, 66 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Par Pharmaceutical, Inc., IPR2016-00002, filed Oct. 6, 2015, 65 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Ranbaxy, Inc., IPR2016-00024, filed Oct. 7, 2015, 63 pages.
- PTAB decision entered Apr. 12, 2016, denying institution for IPR by Par Pharmaceutical, Inc., IPR2016-00002, re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 17 pages.
- PTAB decision entered Apr. 12, 2016, partially denying institution for IPR by Ranbaxy Inc., IPR2016-00024, re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 21 pages.
- PTAB decision entered Jul. 28, 2016, denying institution for IPR by Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC, IPR2016-00546, re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 16 pages.
- Crosby et al., “Severe Mania Complicating Treatment of Narcolepsy with Cataplexy,” *J. Clin. Sleep Med.*, 7(2): 214-216, 2011.
- Cui et al., “The Drug of Abuse γ-Hydroxybutyrate Is a Substrate for Sodium-Coupled Monocarboxylate Transport (SMCT) 1 (SLC5A8): Characterization of SMCT-Mediated Update and Inhibition,” *Drug Metab. Dispos.*, 37(7):1404-1410, 2009.
- Depakote (divalproex sodium) Tablets for Oral Use, FDA Labeling Text (Oct. 7, 2011).
- Dimitrijevic et al., “*Drosophila GABA_B* Receptors are Involved in Behavioral Effects of γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB),” *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 519 (3): 246-252, 2005.
- Divry et al., “A New Patient with 4-Hydroxybutyric Aciduria, a Possible Defect of 4-Aminobutyrate metabolism,” *Clinica Chimica Acta*, 129: 303-309, 1983, Abstract only.
- druglib.com, “Xyrem (Sodium Oxybate)—Mania—Suspected Cause—Side Effect Reports,” 4 pages, Available at: https://www.druglib.com/report-side-effects/xyrem/reaction_mania/.

US 10,864,181 B2

Page 4

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Eli et al., "Endogenous γ -Hydroxybutyrate in Rat Brain Areas: Postmortem Changes and Effects of Drugs Interfering with γ -Aminobutyric Acid Metabolism," *J. Neurochem.*, 41(2): 524-530, 1983.
- Eller et al., "Evaluation of Drug-Drug Interactions of Sodium Oxybate with Divalproex: Results from a Pharmacokinetic/Pharmacodynamic Study," *Sleep Medicine*, 14(Suppl. 1): e302-e303, 2013.
- Excerpt from Kyoto Encyclopedia of Genes and Genomes database, Jul. 12, 2018. Available at: https://www.genome.jp/dbget-bin/www_bget?ec:1.1.1.19.
- Excerpt from Wikipedia, "gamma-Hydroxybutyric acid," Feb. 25, 2013.
- Feldman et al., "Sleep Architecture Effects of Sodium Oxybate Treatment in Subjects with Sleep-Disordered Breathing," *Chest*, 20: 130, 2006, Abstract only.
- Ferrara et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Alcohol Dependent Patients after Single and Repeated Oral Doses," *Br. J. Clin. Pharmac.*, 34: 231-235, 1992.
- Fides, "Solutions of 4-hydroxybutyric acid salts for injection," Chem Abstract ES302338, Laboratorio M. Cuatescases, SA (2011), 2 pages.
- Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Clinical Pharmacology Division; "Guidance for Industry: Drug Interaction Studies—Study Design, Data Analysis, and Implications for Dosing and Labeling" (Feb. 2012).
- Fuller et al., "From Club Drug to Orphan Drug: Sodium Oxybate (Xyrem) for the Treatment of Cataplexy," *Pharmacotherapy*, 23(9): 1205-1209, 2003.
- Gallimberti et al., "Clinical Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal," *Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci*, 244: 113-114, 1994.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Alcohol Withdrawal Syndrome," *The Lancet*, Sep. 30: 787-789, 1989.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal Syndrome," *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 9(1): 77-81, 1993.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence: A Double-Blind Study," *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, 16(4): 673-676, 1992.
- Gerra et al., "Flumazenil Effects on Growth Hormone Response to Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid," *Internat. Clin. Psychopharm.*, 9: 211-215, 1994.
- Gessa et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence," *Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement*, 15 (Suppl. 1, Pt. A): 303A-304A, 1992.
- Gibson et al., "The Clinical Phenotype of Succinic Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase Deficiency (4-Hydroxybutyric Aciduria): Case Reports of 23 New Patients," *Pediatrics*, 99(4), 567-574, 1997.
- Gonzalez et al., "Drug Metabolism," in *Goodman & Gilman's the Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* (11th ed.), Brunton et al. (eds.), New York: McGraw-Hill, pp. 71-91, 2006.
- Halestrap et al., "The SLC16 Gene Family—From Monocarboxylate Transporters (MCTs) to Aromatic Amino Acid Transporters and Beyond," *Pflugers Arch.*, 447 (5): 619-628, 2004.
- Harvey et al., "The Inhibitory Effect of Sodium n-Dipropyl Acetate on the Degradative Enzymes Of the GABA Shunt," *FEBS Ltrs*, 52 (2): 251-254, 1975.
- Hasan et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Diclofenac Sodium in Normal Man," *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 18(1): 18-24, 2005.
- Hasenbos et al., "Anaesthesia for bullectomy," *Anaesthesia*, 40: 977-980, 1985.
- Hechler et al., "Extracellular Events Induced by γ -Hydroxybutyrate in Striatum: A Microdialysis Study," *J. Neurochem.*, 56 (3): 938-944, 1991.
- Hechler et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyrate Conversion into GABA Induces Displacement of GABAa Binding that is Blocked by Valproate and Ethosuximide," *The Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, 281(2): 753-760, 1997.
- Henry, Thomas R., "The History of Divalproex in Clinical Neuroscience," *Psychopharmacology Bulletin*, 37 (Suppl 2): 5-16, 2003.
- Highlights of Prescribing Information—Depakene®, Feb. 2013.
- Horsley, W. (North East Treatment Advisory Group), "Sodium oxybate (Xyrem®) in the management of narcolepsy with cataplexy," Dec. 2009 (18 pages).
- International Searching Authority, "International Search Report, dated Jun. 24, 2014 in International Patent Application No. PCT/US2014/019217."
- International Searching Authority, "Written Opinion, dated Jun. 24, 2014 in International Patent Application No. PCT/US2014/019217."
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," Xyrem®, 30 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_product_Information/human/000593/WC500057103.pdf. Downloaded Mar. 6, 2015.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," Xyrem®, 31 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-Product_Information/human/000593/WC500057103.pdf. Downloaded Sep. 5, 2018.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text" (Nov. 18, 2005).
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Xyrem® FDA Approved Label (Jul. 17, 2002), 95 pages.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text," Nov. 2017.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text," Dec. 2012.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," Xyrem® SmPC European Package Insert available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-Product_Information/human/000593/WC500057103.pdf (downloaded May 3, 2013).
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (sodium oxybate) oral solution Prescribing Information," Xyrem® US Package Insert available at <http://www.xyrem.com/xyrem-pi.pdf> (downloaded May 3, 2013).
- Kaufman and Nelson, "An Overview of γ -hydroxybutyrate Catabolism: The Role of the Cytosolic NADP+-Dependent Oxidoreductase EC 1.1.1.19 and of a Mitochondrial Hydroxyacid-Oxoacid Transhydrogenase in the Initial, Rate-limiting Step in this Pathway," *Neurochem. Res.*, 16(9):965-974, 1991.
- Kaufman and Nelson, "Evidence for the Participation of Cystasolic NADP—Dependent Oxidoreductase in Catabolism of γ -Hydroxybutyrate In Vivo," *J. Neurochemistry*, 48:1935-1941, 1987.
- Knerr et al., "Therapeutic Concepts in Succinate Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase (SSADH; ALDH5a1) Deficiency (γ -hydroxybutyric aciduria). Hypothesis Evolved from 25 Years of Patient Evaluation, Studies in Aldh5a1-/-Mice and Characterization of γ -hydroxybutyric acid Pharmacology," *J. Inherit. Metab. Dis.*, 30(3):279-294, 2007.
- Kothare et al., "Pharmacotherapy of Narcolepsy: Focus on Sodium Oxybate," *Clinical Medicine Insights: Therapeutics*, 2: 37-52, 2010.
- Kuriyama et al., "Blood-Brain Barrier to H³- γ -Aminobutyric Acid in Normal and Amino Oxyacetic Acid-Treated Animals," *Neuropharmacology*, 10: 103-108, 1971.
- Laborit, H., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semialdehyde and Sleep," Laboratoire d'Eutonologie, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France, pp. 257-274, 1973.
- Ladinsky et al., Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System, *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacol.*, 322: 42-48, 1983.
- Lamictal (lamotrigine) labeling.
- Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and Narcolepsy: A Double-Blind Placebo-Controlled Study," *Sleep*, 16(3): 216-220, 1993.
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep-Triggering Mechanisms," *Sleep*, 13(1): 2430, 1990.

US 10,864,181 B2

Page 5

- (56) **References Cited**
- OTHER PUBLICATIONS
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate: A Double-Blind Study of Normal Subjects," *Sleep Research*, 17: 99, 1988 (abstract).
- Lee, C.R., "Evidence for the β -Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans," *Biochem. Med.*, 17, 284-291: 1977.
- Lettieri et al., "Improved Pharmacological Activity via Pro-Drug Modification: Comparative Pharmacokinetics of Sodium γ -Hydroxybutyrate and γ -Butyrolactone," *Research Communications in Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology*, 22(1): 107-118, 1978.
- Liechti et al., "Clinical Features of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate and Gamma-Butyrolactone Toxicity and Concomitant Drug and Alcohol Use," *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, 81: 323-326, 2006, Abstract only.
- Löscher, "Basic Pharmacology of Valproate: A Review After 35 Years of Clinical Use for the Treatment of Epilepsy," *CNS Drugs*, 16(10):669-694, 2002.
- Löscher, "Valproate: A Reappraisal of Its Pharmacodynamic Properties and Mechanisms of Action," *Progress in Neurobiol.*, 58(1):31-59, 1998.
- Lyng, "Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB): Mechanisms of Central Nervous System Toxicity," Baylor University, *ProQuest*, UMI Dissertations Publishing, 2006, 3213445.
- Maitre et al., "A Specific γ -Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Ligand Possesses both Antagonistic and Anticonvulsant Properties," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 255 (2): 657-663, 1990.
- Maitre et al., "Mécanismes d'action d'un médicament détourné: le γ -hydroxybutyrate" ('A mechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse') (in French), *Med Sci (Paris)*, 21 (3): 284-9, 2005.
- Maitre, "The g-hydroxybutyrate Signalling System in Brain Organization and Functional Implications," *Progress in Neurobiology*, 51:337-361, 1997.
- Mamalek et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy with g-Hydroxybutyrate. A Review of Clinical and Sleep Laboratory Findings," *Sleep*, 9(1):285-289, 1986.
- Mamelak et al., "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," *The Lancet*, 302 (7824): 328-329, 1973.
- Mamelak et al., "The Effects of γ -Hydroxybutyrate on Sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 12(2): 273-288, 1977.
- Mamelak et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy and Sleep Apnea with Gammahydroxybutyrate: A Clinical and Polysomnographic Case Study," *Sleep*, 4(1): 105-111, 1981.
- Mamelak et al., "Narcolepsy: A Family Study," *Biological Psychiatry*, 14: 821-834, 1979.
- Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," *Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews*, 13: 187-198, 1989.
- Modi et al., "Dapoxetine has no Pharmacokinetic or Cognitive Interactions with Ethanol in Healthy Male Volunteers," *J. Clin. Pharmac.*, 47(3): 315-322, 2007.
- Morris et al., "monocarboxylate Transporter Inhibition with Osmotic Diuresis Increases γ -Hydroxybutyrate Renal Elimination in Humans. A Proof-of-Concept Study," *J. Clinic. Toxicol.*, 1(2): 1000105, 2011 (11 pages).
- Morris et al., "Overview of the Proton-Couple MCT (SLC16A) Family of Transporters: Characterization, Function and Role in the Transport of the Drug of Abuse-Hydroxybutyric Acid," *AAPS J.*, 10(2): 311-321, 2008.
- Nema et al., "Excipients and Their Use in Injectable Products," *PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol.*, 51(4): 166-171, 1997.
- Okun, "HGB: An Important Pharmacological and Clinical Update," *J. Pharm. Pharmaceut. Sci.*, 4(2):167-175, 2001.
- Opposition against EP 2,961,399 (filed by Hexal AG), filed Aug. 14, 2018 (27 pages).
- Opposition against EP 2,961,399 (filed by Hoffmann Eitle Patent—und Rechtsanwälte PartmbB), filed Jul. 23, 2018 (24 pages).
- Opposition against EP 2,961,399 (filed by Ter Meer Steinmeister & Partner Patentanwälte mbB), filed Aug. 14, 2018 (21 pages).
- Orphan Medical, Inc., NDA 21196, Major Amendment, filed Mar. 26, 2001, "Review and Evaluation of Clinical Data," http://www.fda.gov/ohrms/dockets/ac/01/briefing/3754b1_02_section%204.PDF (as downloaded on Mar. 4, 2014).
- Orr et al., "Interaction Between Valproic Acid and Aspirin in Epileptic Children: Serum Protein Binding and Metabolic Effects," *Clinical Pharmacol. Ther.*, 31(5): 642-649, 1982.
- Palatini et al., "Dose-Dependent Absorption and Elimination of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Healthy Volunteers," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 45: 353-356, 1993.
- Pardi et al. " γ -Hydroxybutyrate/Sodium Oxybate: neurobiology, and impact on Sleep and Wakefulness," *CNS Drugs*, 20(12): 993-1018, 2006.
- Peacock et al., "Narcolepsy: Clinical features, co-morbidities & treatment," *Indian J. Med. Res.*, 131: 338-349, 2010.
- Physicians' Desk Reference, 65th ed. (2011), pp. 1698-1703 (Xyrem).
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on Digoxin Pharmacokinetics and Electrocardiographic Findings," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 16-19, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Carbamazepine," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 20-23, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Phenytoin," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 24-28, 1996.
- Ren et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyrate Reduces Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase Phosphorylation via GABAB Receptor Activation in Mouse Frontal Cortex and Hippocampus," *J. Biol. Chem.*, 278 (43): 42006-42011, 2003.
- Rosenberg, G., "The Mechanisms of Action of Valproate in Neuropsychiatric Disorders: Can We See the Forest for the Trees?" *Cel. Mol. Life Sci.*, 64 (16): 2090-2103, 2007.
- Roth et al., " γ -Butyrolactone and γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid—I Distribution and Metabolism," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 15: 1333-1348, 1966.
- Roth et al., " γ -Butyrolactone and γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid—II The Pharmacologically Active Form," *Int. J. Neropharmacol.*, 5: 421-428, 1966.
- Roxane Laboratories, Inc., "Lithium Carbonate Tablets USP; Lithium Carbonate Capsules USP; Lithium Oral Solution USP," Oct. 2011.
- Rumigny et al., "Specific and Non-Specific Succinic Semialdehyde Reductases from Rat Brain: Isolation and Properties," *FEBS Ltrs.*, 117 (1-2): 111-116, 1980.
- Rumigny et al., "Specific and Non-Specific Succinic Semialdehyde Reductases from Rat Brain: Isolation and Properties," 177 FEBS Letters, 117(1):111-116, 1980.
- Sandson et al., "An interaction Between Aspirin and Valproate: The Relevance of Plasma Protein Displacement Drug-Drug Interactions," *Am. J. Psychiatry*, 163:1891-1896, 2006.
- Sanofi Aventis, "Prescribing Information for EPILIM," (Sep. 12, 2011), pp. 1-18.
- Scharf et al., "The Effects and Effectiveness of γ -Hydroxybutyrate in Patients with Narcolepsy," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 46(6): 222-225, 1985.
- Scharf et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Gammahydroxybutyrate (GHB) in Narcoleptic Patients," *Sleep*, 21(5):507-514, 1998.
- Schep et al., "The Clinical Toxicology of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Gamma-Butyrolactone and 1,4-Butanediol," *Clinical Toxicology*, 50: 458-470, 2012.
- Scrima et al., "Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate versus Placebo in Treating Narcolepsy—Cataplexy: Double-Blind Subjective Measured," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 26: 331-343, 1989.
- Scrima et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate Effects on Cataplexy and Sleep Attacks in Narcoleptics," *Sleep Res.*, 16: 134, 1987, Abstract.
- Scrima et al., "The Effects of γ -Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," *Sleep*, 13(6): 479-490, 1990.
- Sériès et al., "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 1378-1383, 1992.
- Seroquel (quetiapine) labeling.

US 10,864,181 B2

Page 6

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Shinka et al., "Effect of Valproic Acid on the Urinary Metabolic Profile of a Patient with Succinic Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase Deficiency," *J. Chromatography*, 792:99-106, 2003.
- Smolders et al. "Tonic GABAergic Modulation of Striatal Dopamine Release Studied by In Vivo Microdialysis in the Freely Moving Rat," *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 284 (1-2): 83-91, 1995.
- Snead et al., "Effect of Acute and Chronic Anticonvulsant Administration of Endogenous γ -Hydroxybutyrate in a Rat Brain," *Neuropharmacology*, (1980), pp. 47-52, vol. 19.
- Snead et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid," *New England J. Med.*, 352: 2721-2732, 2005.
- Strong, " γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid and Intracranial Pressure," *The Lancet*, vol. 1: No. 8389, 1984.
- Thorpy et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy with Cataplexy an Overview of the Disease and a Report on Sodium Oxybate Dosage and Prescribing Information," *European Neurological Review*, 3(1):84-88, 2008.
- United States Patent and Trademark Office, Report on the filing or determination of an action regarding a patent; documents filed Sep. 18, 2014, Oct. 2, 2014, and Oct. 7, 2014, in U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 5 pages.
- Valproate Monograph in the Complete Drug Reference, 33rd Edition, 366-370, 2002.
- Van Den Bogert et al., "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man," *Anesthesiology and Intensive Care Medicine*, 110: 55-64, 1978.
- Van Der Laan et al., "Di-n-Propylacetate and GABA Degradation. Preferential Inhibition of Succinic Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase and Indirect Inhibition of GABA-Transaminase," *J. Neurochem.* 32: 1769-1780, 1979.
- Vayer et al., "Is the Anticonvulsant Mechanism of Valproate Linked to Its Interaction with the Cerebral γ -hydroxybutyrate System?" *TIPS*, 9(4):127-129, 1988.
- Vickers, M.D., "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," *Int. Anesth. Clinic*, 7: 75-89, 1969.
- Waszkielewicz et al., " γ -Hydrobutyric Acid (GHB) and its Chemical Modifications: A Review of the GHBERGIC System," *Pol J Pharmacol.*, 56 (1): 43-49, 2004.
- Wedin et al., The Clinical Development of γ -Hydroxybutyrate (GHB), *Current Drug Safety*, 1(1):99-106, 2006.
- Weiss et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate (GHB) and Topiramate-Clinically Relevant Drug Interaction Suggested by 4 Case of Coma and Increased Plasma GHB Concentration," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, (2012), pp. 1193-1194, vol. 69.
- Wellbutrin (bupropion HCl) labeling.
- Wellendorph et al., "Phenylacetic Acids and the Structurally Related Non-Steroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drug Diclofenac Bind to Specific γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid Sites in Rat Brain," *Fundamental & Clinical Pharmacology*, 23:207-213, 2009.
- Wesnes et al., "Moxonidine and Cognitive Function: Interactions with Moclobemide and Lorazepam," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 52: 351-358, 1997.
- Wesnes et al., "The Memory Enhancing Effects of a Ginkgo biloba/Panax ginseng Combination in Healthy Middle-Aged Volunteers," *Psychopharmacology*, 152: 353-361, 2000.
- WHO Expert Committee on Drug Dependence, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB), Critical Review Report," Thirty-fifth Meeting, Jun. 4-8, 2012 (57 pages).
- Williams et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on Time-Based Sensitization of Cognitive Impairment with Haloperidol," *J. Clinic. Psych.*, 57, 7-11, 1996.
- Wu et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and γ -aminobutyric acid_B receptor (GABA_BR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence," *Neuropharmacology*, 47 (8): 1146-56, 2004.
- Xyrem Labeling Text, Nov. 18, 2015.
- Xyrem Monograph in the Physician's Desk Reference 65th Edition, 1698-1703, 2011.
- Xyrem Package Insert entry in the Physician's Desk Reference Edition, 1688-1692, 2007.
- Xyrem Prescribing Information, 2005.
- Xyrem Prescribing Information, approved labeling 2002.
- Xyrem Success ProgramSM 2005 (now Xyrem REMS Program).
- Xyrem Titration Schedule, 2008.
- Yamada et al., "Effect of Butyrolactone and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," *Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol.*, 22: 558-562, 1967.
- Yilmaz et al., "Diagnostic Pitfalls in Children with Sleep Disorders: Two Cases with Hypersomnia," *Acta Paediatrica*, 97:1749-1757, 2008.
- Notification Letter dated Apr. 23, 2019, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. Re: Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. No. 10,213,400, 9 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Apr. 26, 2019, from Par Pharmaceutical, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution (Xyrem®) U.S. Pat. No. 7,668,730; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,106; U.S. Pat. No. 7,765,107; U.S. Pat. No. 7,895,059; U.S. Pat. No. 8,457,988; U.S. Pat. No. 8,589,182; U.S. Pat. No. 8,731,963; U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302; U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426; and U.S. Pat. No. 10,213,400 Notice of Paragraph IV Certification," 6 pages.
- Patentee's Reply to the Notices of Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Mar. 13, 2019 (31 pages).
- Mathivet et al., "Binding characteristic of γ -hydroxybutyric acid as a weak but selective GABA_B receptor agonist," *European Journal of Pharmacology*, 321:67-75, 1997.
- Assessment report for modafinil containing medical products, Jan. 27, 2011.
- Excerpt from KEGG database (Kyoto Encyclopedia of Genes and Genomes), at Jul. 12, 2018; <https://www.genome.jp/dbget>.
- Chiu et al., "Therapeutic Potential of Mood Stabilizers Lithium and Valproic Acid: Beyond Bipolar Disorder," *Pharmacol. Rev.*, 65(1): 105-142, 2013.
- Alleged evidence of the published date of "Annex I List of the Names, Pharmaceutical Forms, Strengths of the Medicinal Products, Route of Administration, Marketing Authorization Holders in the Member States" and "Annex II Scientific Conclusions and Grounds for Amendment of the Summaries of Product Characteristics and Package Leaflets Presented by the European Medicine Agency," Valproic acid/Valproate, 1 page.
- Patentee's Response to the Communication pursuant to Article 94(3) EPC filed in EP 2,961,399 B1 dated Nov. 18, 2016, 10 pages.
- Third Party Observation filed in EP 2,961,399 B1 dated Sep. 25, 2019, submitted by Hofmann Ettle Patent, 54 pages.
- Summon to attend oral proceedings pursuant to Rule 115(1) EPC with preliminary opinion in Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, dated Jun. 17, 2019, 22 pages.
- Opponent's response (filed by Ter Meer Steinmeister & Partner Patentanwälte mbB) to the preliminary opinion and Patentee's response to the Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Nov. 14, 2019, 15 pages.
- Opponent's response (filed by Hoffmann Ettle Patent—and Rechtsanwälte PartmbB) to the preliminary opinion and Patentee's response to the Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Nov. 15, 2019, 26 pages.
- Opponent's response (filed by Hexal AG) to the preliminary opinion and Patentee's response to the Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Nov. 14, 2019, 28 pages.
- Filing Receipt of U.S. Appl. No. 61/771,557.
- Filing Receipt of U.S. Appl. No. 61/777,873.
- "Guideline on the investigation of drug interactions" European Medicine Agency, (2012), 59 pages.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text," Sep. 2016.
- Patentee's Rule 116 EPC Submission for oral hearings of Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Nov. 25, 2019, 22 pages.
- Roiko et al., "Brain extracellular γ -hydroxy butyrate concentrations are decreased by L-lactate in rats: Role in the treatment of overdoses," *Pharm. Res.*, 30(5):1338-1348, 2013.

US 10,864,181 B2

Page 7

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Alleged evidence of the online publication of Roiko et al, "Brain extracellular γ -hydroxy butyrate concentrations are decreased by L-lactate in rats: Role in the treatment of overdoses," *Pharm. Res.*, 30(5):1338-1348, 2013, 1 page.
- Sanofi Aventis, "Prescribing Information for EPILIM," (Sep. 12, 2011), 23 pages.
- European Patent Office's Decision revoking EP 2,961,399 B1, dated Jan. 10, 2020, 2 pages.
- George et al., "A safety trial of sodium oxybate in patients with obstructive sleep apnea: Acute effects on sleep-disordered breathing," *Sleep Medicine*, 11:38-42, 2010.
- Goswami et al., Narcolepsy: a clinical guide, 2nd edition, 2016, p. 89.
- Opposition against EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Hoffmann Eitle Patent—und Rechtsanwalte PartmbB), filed Mar. 16, 2020, 27 pages.
- Patentee Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited's Reply to the Notices of Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Mar. 13, 2019, 44 pages.
- Patentee Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited's Submission in EP 2,961,399 B1 withdrawing approval of the text, filed Dec. 20, 2019, 2 pages.
- Sarkkanen et al., "Psychosis in patients with narcolepsy as an adverse effect of sodium oxybate," *Frontier in Neurology*, 5(136):1-5, 2014.
- Third Party Observation under Article 115 EPC filed Aug. 5, 2019 in EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Hoffmann Eitle Patent—und Rechtsanwalte PartmbB), 55 pages.
- Further Third Party Observation under Article 115 EPC filed Sep. 25, 2019 in EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Hoffmann Eitle Patent—und Rechtsanwalte PartmbB), 22 pages.
- Opposition against EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Zentiva k.s.), filed Sep. 2, 2020, 28 pages.
- Opposition against EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Ter Meer Steinmeister & Partner Patentanwalte mbB), filed Sep. 11, 2020, 27 pages.
- Opposition against EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Hexal AG), filed Sep. 10, 2020, 27 pages.
- Noven Therapeutics, LLC., "Stavzor (valproic acid) Delayed Release Capsules Prescribing Information," Jul., 2008, 18 pages.
- AbbVie Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Depakene (valproic acid) capsules and oral solution Prescribing Information," Feb., 2013, 43 pages.
- "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate: Molecular, Functional and Clinical Aspects," Tunnicliff et al. (eds.), 2002, Taylor & Francis, London, pp. 5 and 13.
- "Xyrem® is FDA approved for excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS) and cataplexy in patients with narcolepsy." internet reference obtained from wayback machine <https://web.archive.org/20111128230754/http://www.xyrem.com/healthcare-professionals>; archived on Nov. 28, 2011, 7 pages.
- "Xyrem® is FDA approved for excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS) and cataplexy in patients with narcolepsy." internet reference obtained from wayback machine <https://web.archive.org/20121215004227/http://www.xyrem.com/healthcare-professionals>; archived on Dec. 15, 2012, 13 pages.
- Billiard, 2008, "Current treatment options and future approaches," *Neuropsychiatric Disease and Treatment*, 4(3):557-566.

U.S. Patent

Dec. 15, 2020

Sheet 1 of 10

US 10,864,181 B2

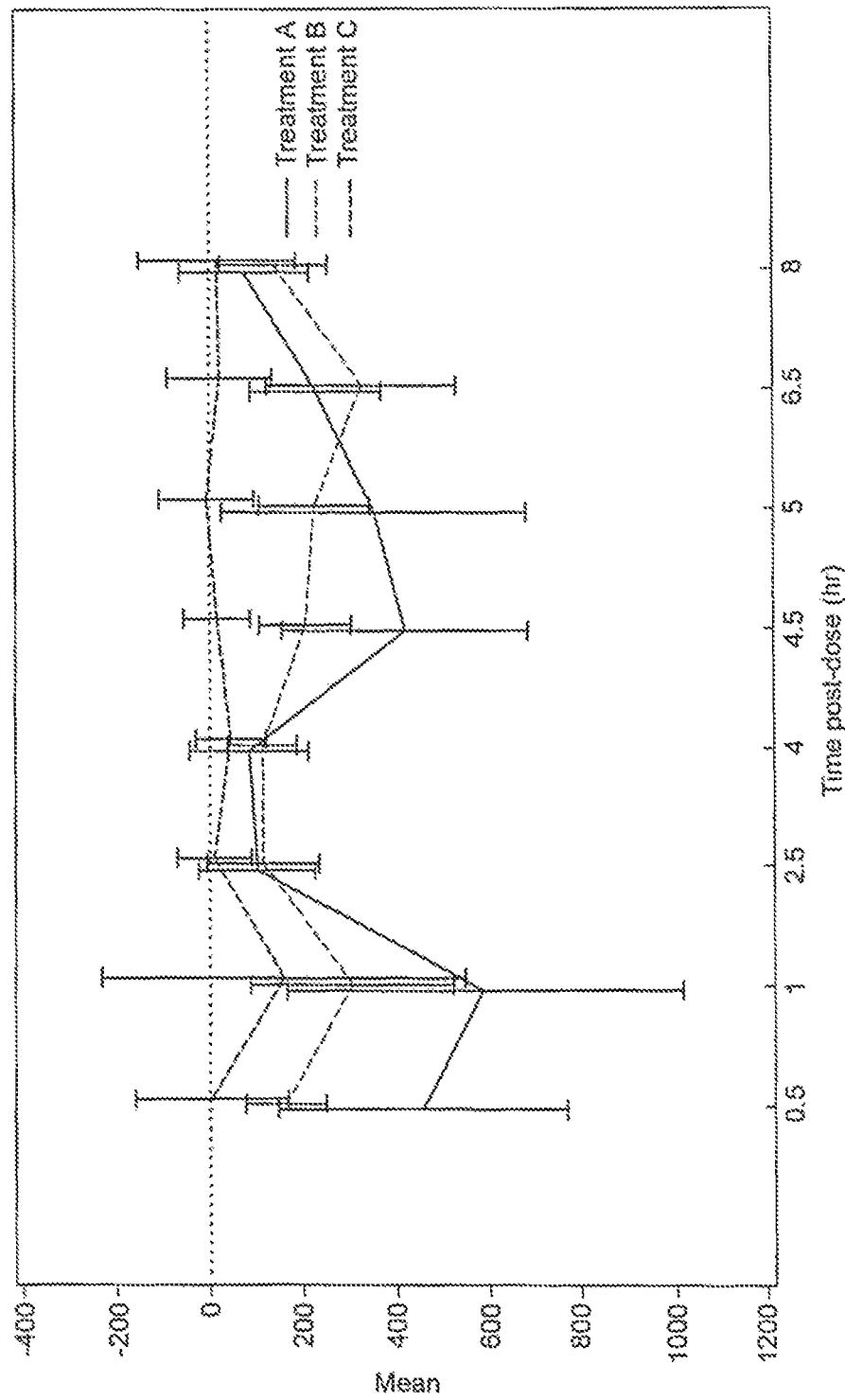


FIG. 1

U.S. Patent

Dec. 15, 2020

Sheet 2 of 10

US 10,864,181 B2

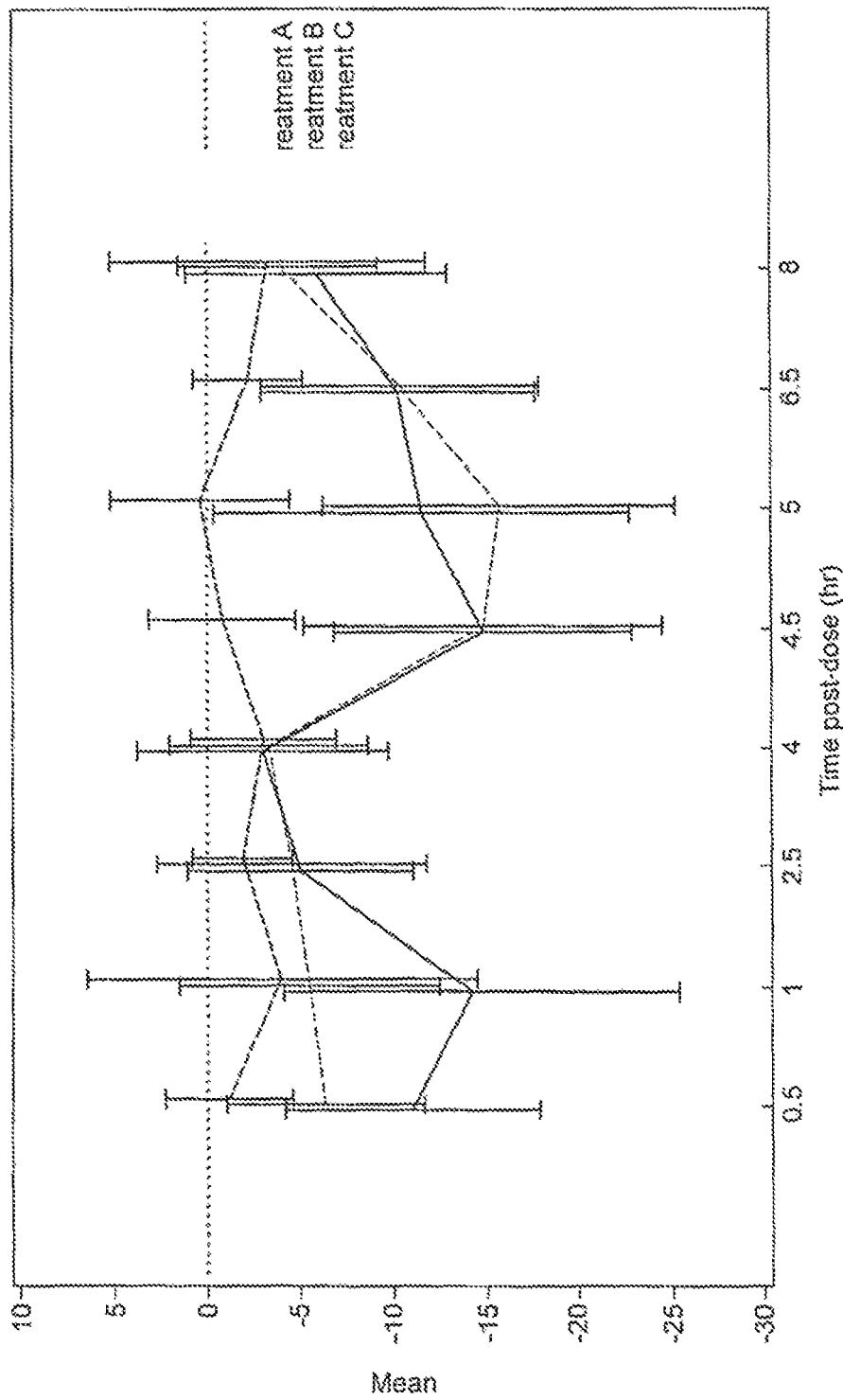


FIG. 2

U.S. Patent

Dec. 15, 2020

Sheet 3 of 10

US 10,864,181 B2

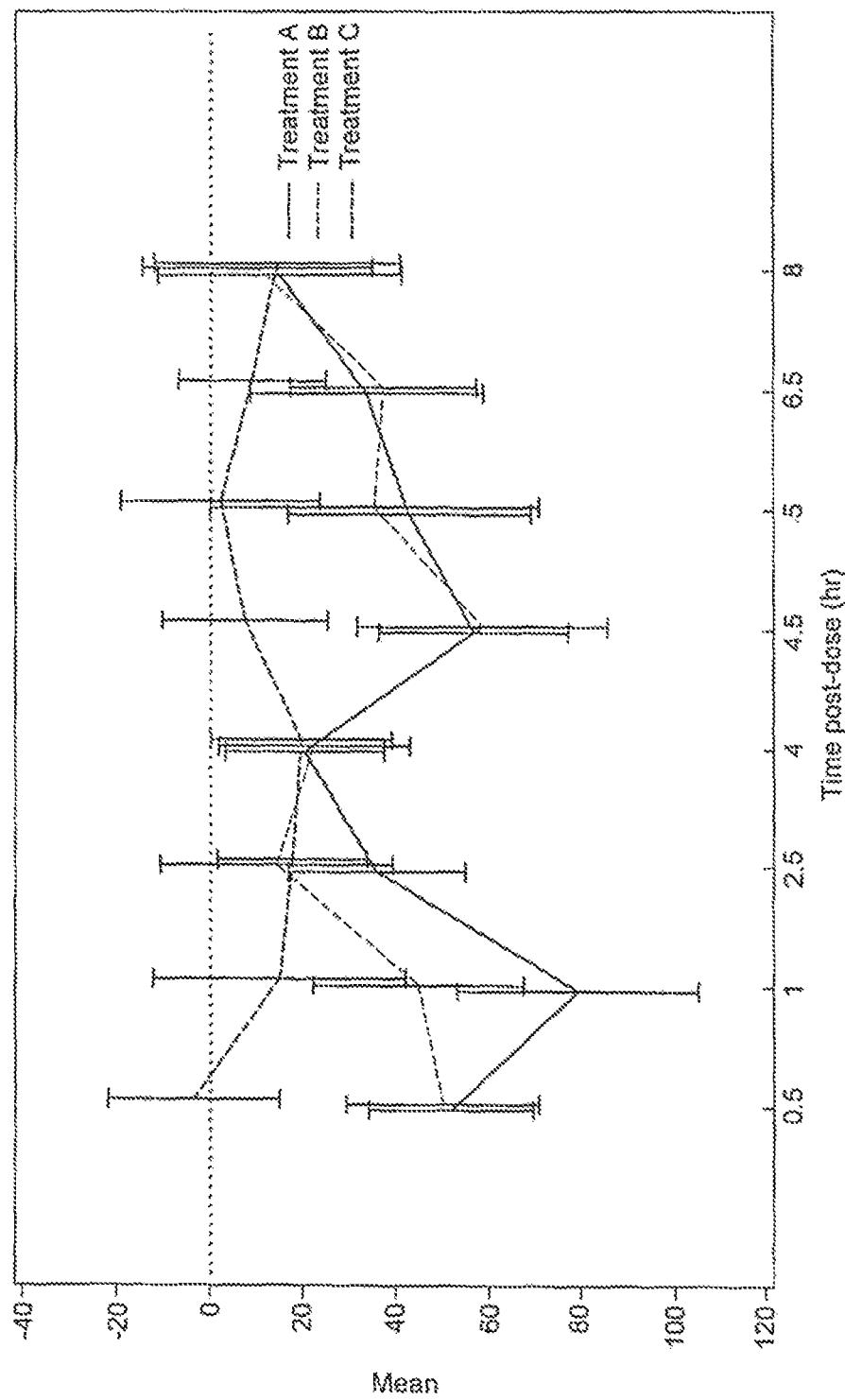


FIG. 3

U.S. Patent

Dec. 15, 2020

Sheet 4 of 10

US 10,864,181 B2

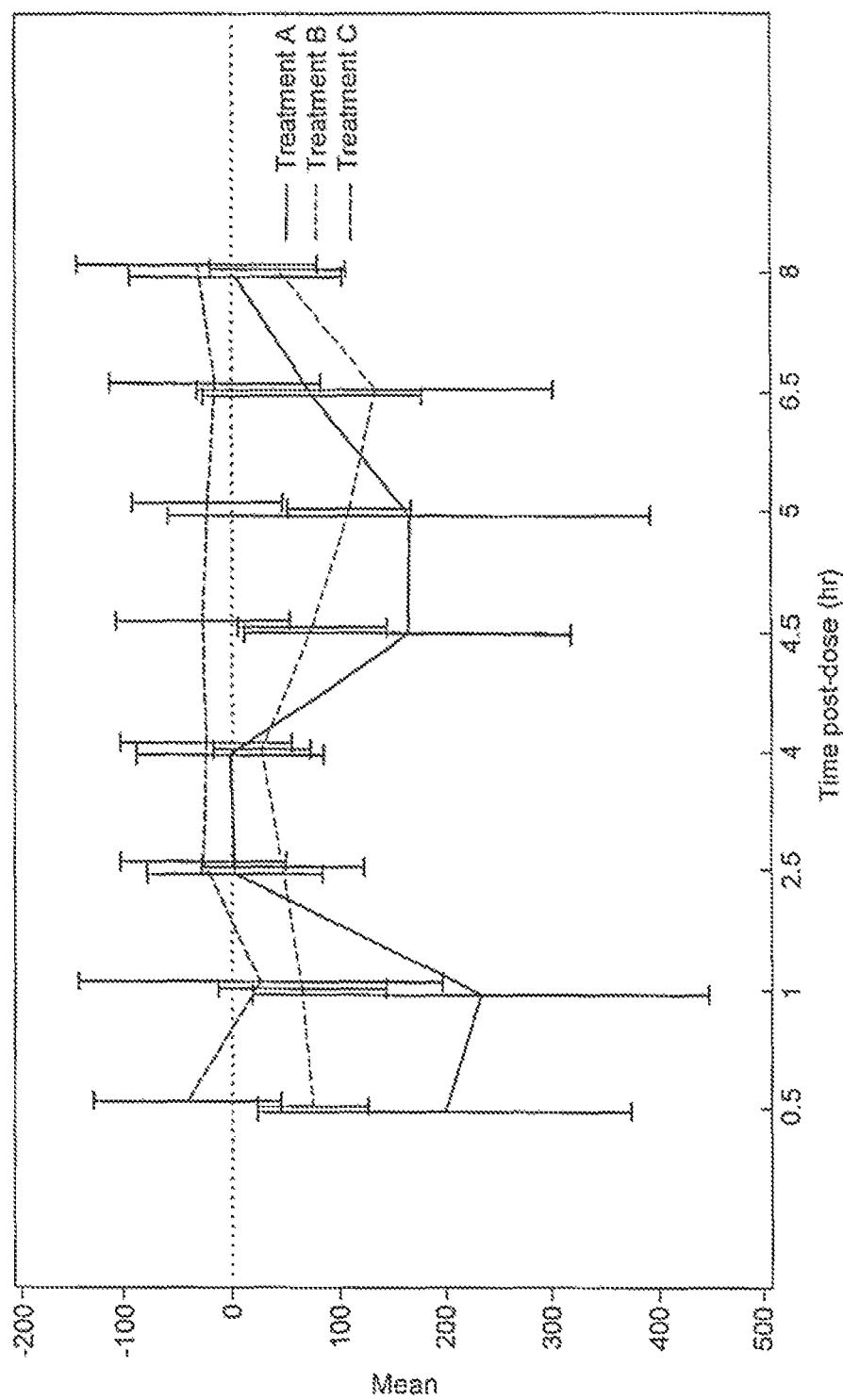


FIG. 4

U.S. Patent

Dec. 15, 2020

Sheet 5 of 10

US 10,864,181 B2

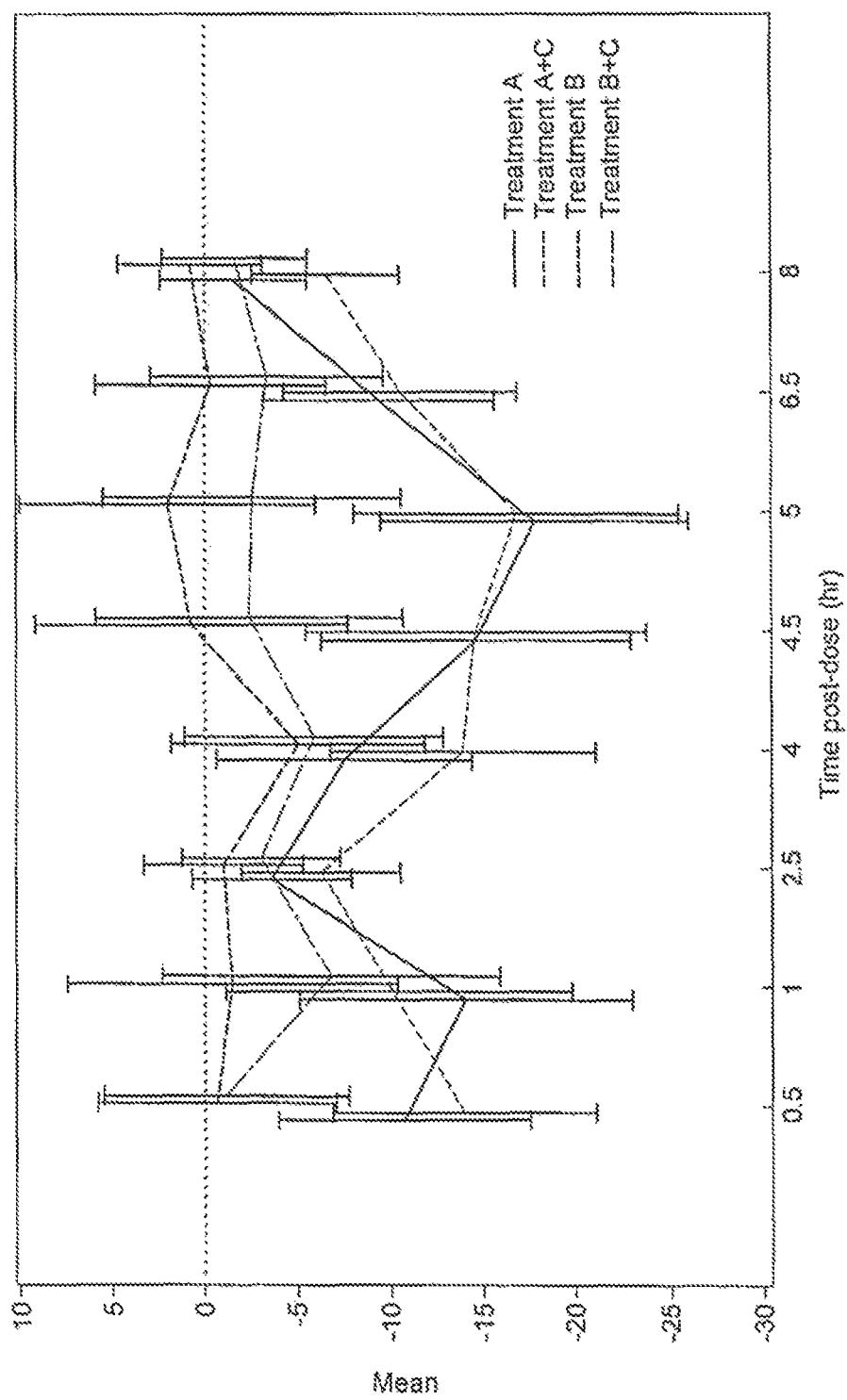


FIG. 5

U.S. Patent

Dec. 15, 2020

Sheet 6 of 10

US 10,864,181 B2

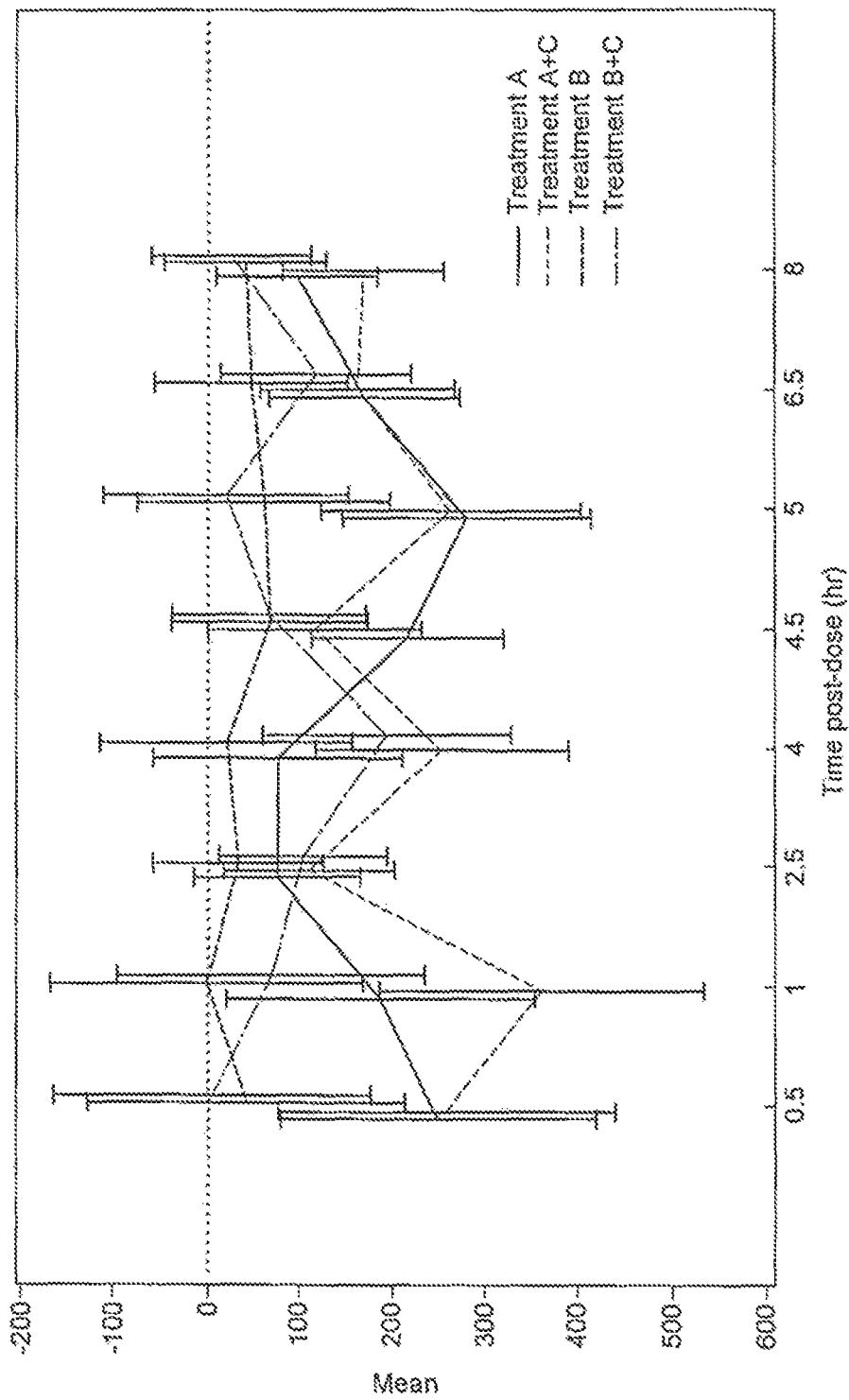


FIG. 6

U.S. Patent

Dec. 15, 2020

Sheet 7 of 10

US 10,864,181 B2

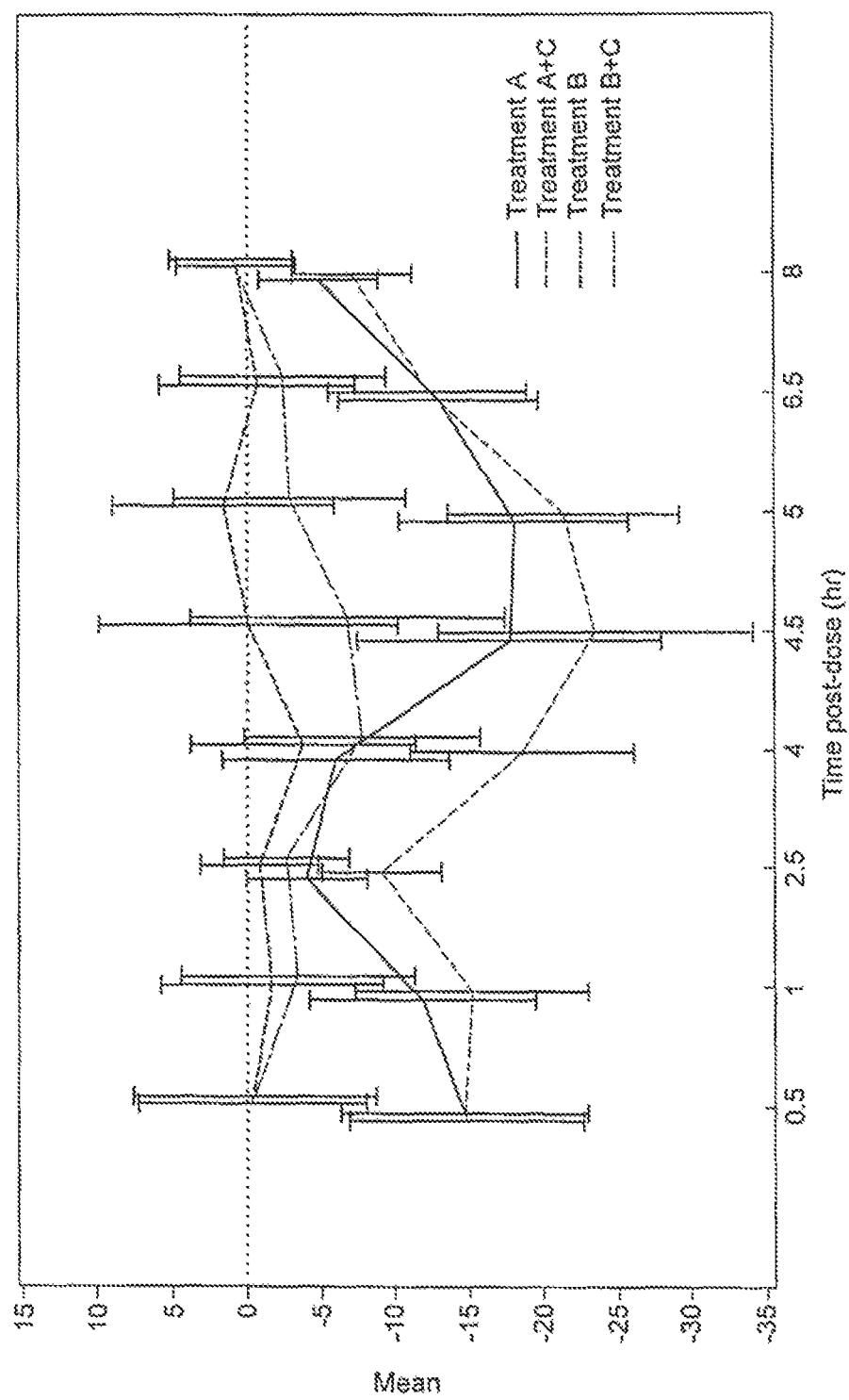


FIG. 7

U.S. Patent

Dec. 15, 2020

Sheet 8 of 10

US 10,864,181 B2

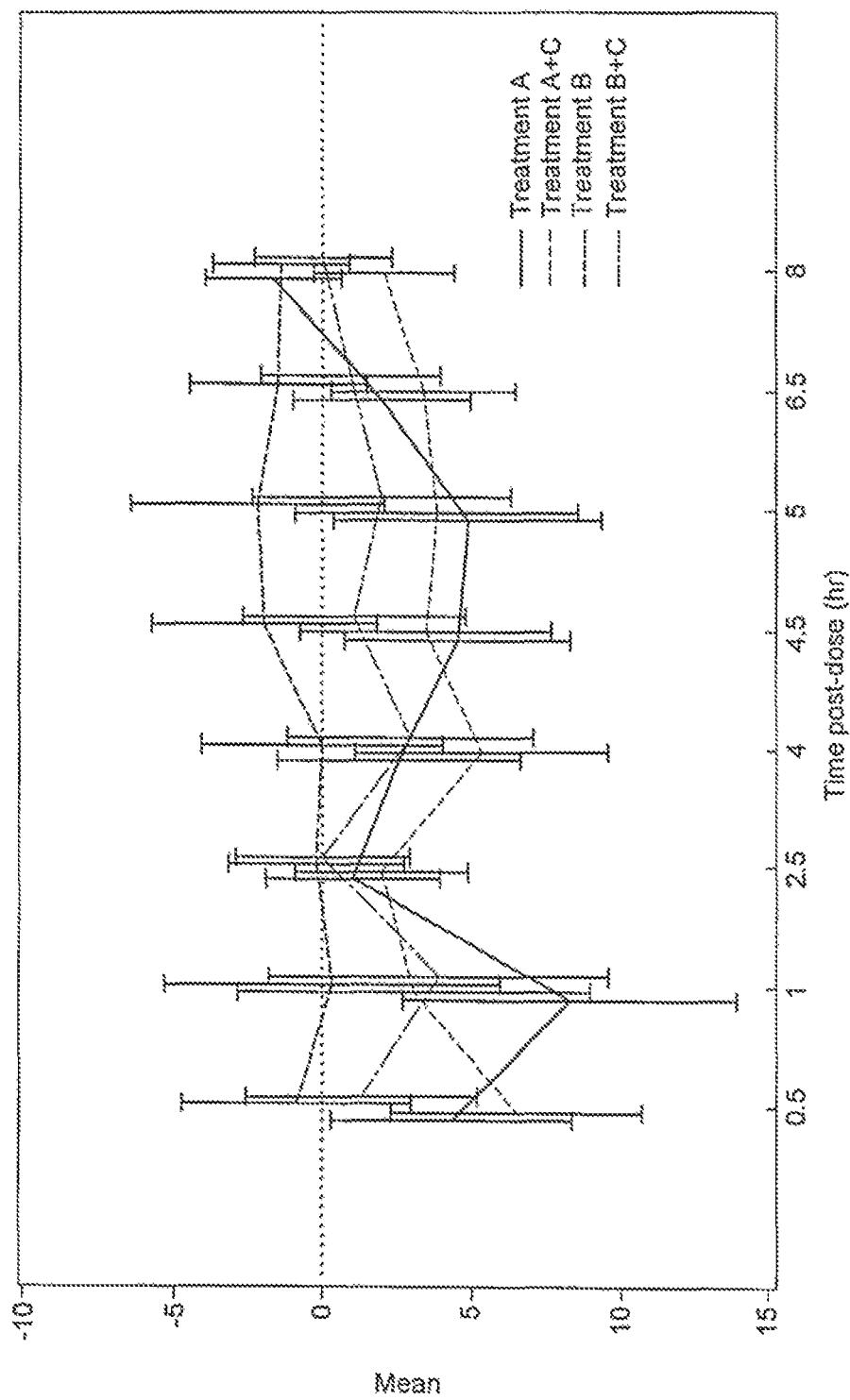


FIG. 8

U.S. Patent

Dec. 15, 2020

Sheet 9 of 10

US 10,864,181 B2

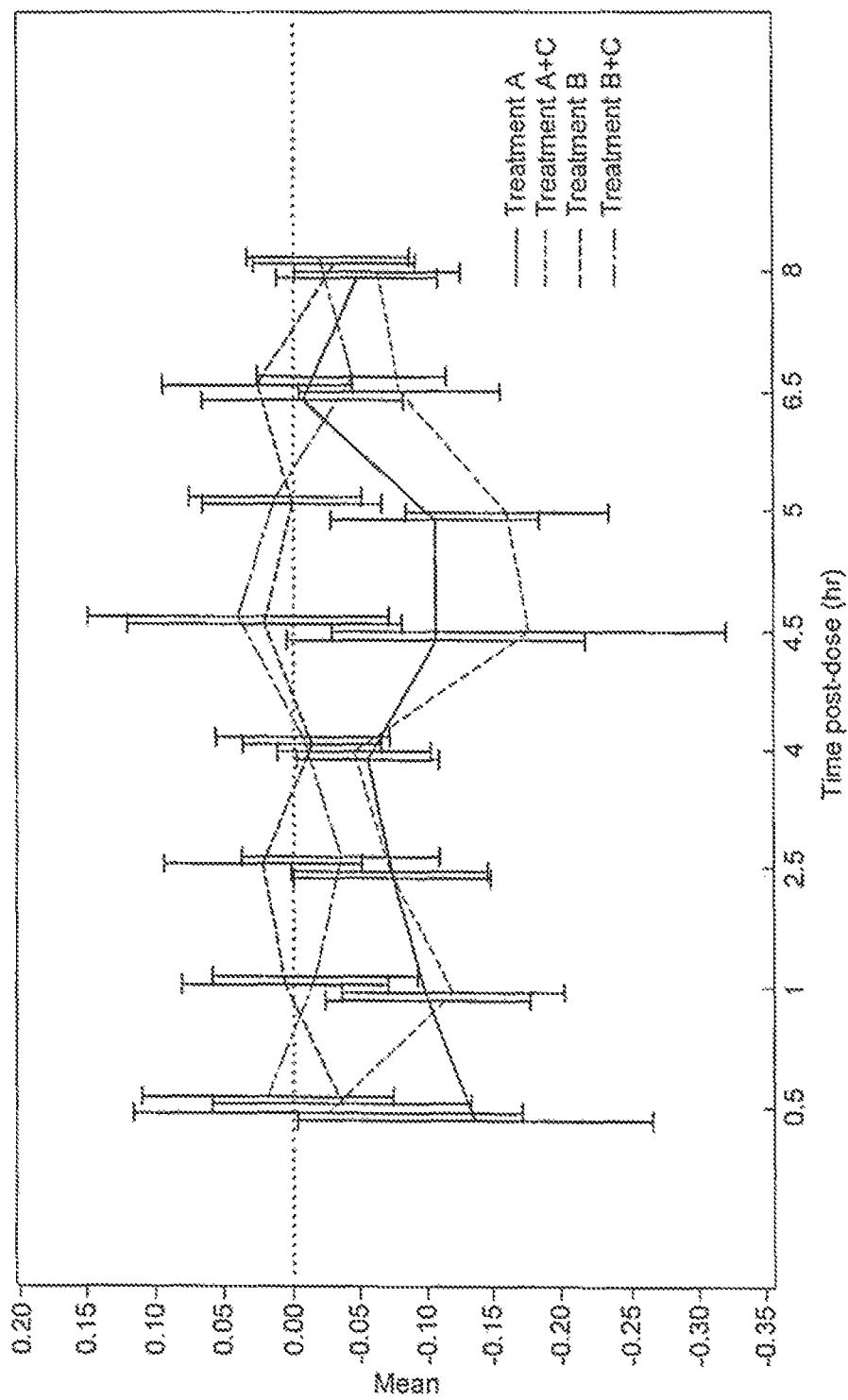


FIG. 9

U.S. Patent

Dec. 15, 2020

Sheet 10 of 10

US 10,864,181 B2

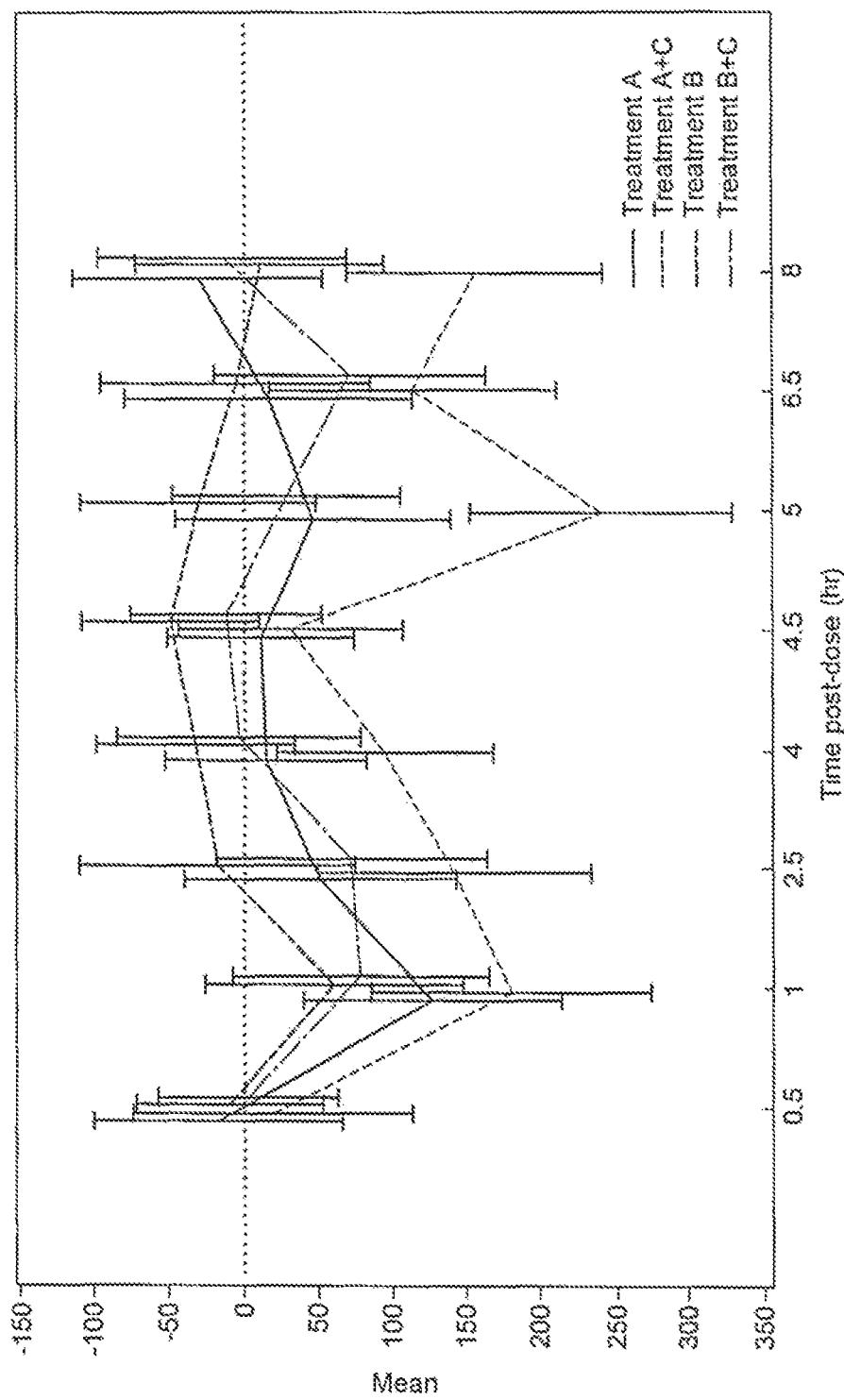


FIG. 10

US 10,864,181 B2

1

**METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF
GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH
MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS**

This application is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 15/869,792, filed Jan. 12, 2018, which is a continuation of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 15/343,806, filed Nov. 4, 2016, which is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 14/707,914, filed on May 8, 2015, now U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426, which is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/837,714, filed Mar. 15, 2013, now U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302, which claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/771,557, filed Mar. 1, 2013, and U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/777,873, filed Mar. 12, 2013, all of which applications are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

BACKGROUND

This application relates to methods for safely administering gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB) together with one or more other monocarboxylate transporter (MCT) inhibitors for therapeutic purposes. Example transporter inhibitors are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof, comprising: orally administering to the patient in need of treatment, an adjusted dosage amount of the salt of GHB when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of valproate. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced at least about 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the amount of GHB is reduced at least about 10% and about 30% of the normal administration and the daily administration of the GHB salt is between 1 gram and 10 grams. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the ranges of about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 45%, or about 45% or 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the range of about 1% to 50%, about 1% to 45%, about 1% to 40%, about 1% to 35%, about 1% to 30%, about 1% to 25%, about 1% to 20%, about 1% to 15%, about 1% to 10%, about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 50%, about 5% to 45%, about 5% to 40%, about 5% to 35%, about 5% to 30%, about 5% to 25%, about 5% to 20%, about 5% to 15%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 50%, about 10% to 45%, about 10% to 40%, about 10% to 35%, about 10% to 30%, about 10% to 25%, about 10% to 20%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to 45%, about 15% to 40%, about 15% to 35%, about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%,

about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 50%, about 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient.

Another embodiment of the invention is a method of safely administering GHB a salt thereof for excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising: determining if the patient has taken, or will take a concomitant dose of valproate; orally administering reduced amount of the GHB or GHB salt to the patient compared to the normal dose so as to diminish the additive effects of the GHB or GHB salt when administered with valproate. The amount of GHB is reduced at least 10% to 30%, or at least +15% of the normal administration.

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with GHB or a salt thereof, comprising: orally administering to the patient in need of treatment, an adjusted dosage amount of the salt of GHB when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of diclofenac. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is at least about 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% higher than the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the increased amount of GHB is at least about 15% more than the normal administration and the daily administration of the GHB salt is between 1 gram and 10 grams. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is increased between the range of about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 45%, or about 45% or 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is increased between the range of about 1% to 50%, about 1% to 45%, about 1% to 40%, about 1% to 35%, about 1% to 30%, about 1% to 25%, about 1% to 20%, about 1% to 15%, about 1% to 10%, about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 50%, about 5% to 45%, about 5% to 40%, about 5% to 35%, about 5% to 30%, about 5% to 25%, about 5% to 20%, about 5% to 15%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 50%, about 10% to 45%, about 10% to 40%, about 10% to 35%, about 10% to 30%, about 10% to 25%, about 10% to 20%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to 45%, about 15% to 40%, about 15% to 35%, about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%, about 25% to 30%, about 25% to 20%, about 25% to 15%, about 25% to 10%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 50%, about 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. See the product insert for normal dose ranges of GHB as sold by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. GHB is commercially known as Xyrem®.

In another embodiment, the invention is a method of safely administering a GHB salt for excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising: determining if the patient has taken, or

US 10,864,181 B2

3

will take a concomitant dose of diclofenac; orally administering an increased amount of a GHB salt to the patient so as to compensate for the effects of diclofenac on the GHB salt when concomitantly administered.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy wherein said patient is currently taking or has been prescribed GHB or a salt thereof, comprising determining if the patient is taking or has also been prescribed valproate or diclofenac; and adjusting the dose of the GHB or GHB salt to compensate for the effect caused by valproate or diclofenac. In certain embodiments, the method additionally comprises administering the adjusted dose to the patient.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma GHB, wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate additive effects.

The embodiments of the present invention can administer the GHB at a level of between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day. The concentration of the formulation can be between 350-750 mg/ml or 450-550 mg/ml and a pH between 6-10 or 6.5-8.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a salt of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient or determining whether the patient is currently on a GHB drug regimen; determining if the patient is also being administered ibuprofen; and advising a patient to cease or ceasing the administration of ibuprofen. In some embodiments, patients benefiting from this directive when the patient has will have a renal impairment.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered valproate; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of valproate and GHB; and reducing the dose of the GHB or GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by valproate. Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered diclofenac; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of diclofenac and the GHB salt; and increasing the dose of the GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by diclofenac.

In each of the embodiments of the invention the method includes administering GHB at between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day and at a concentration of between 350-750 or 450-550 mg/ml, and a pH between 6-10 or between 6.5-8. In further embodiments the valproate or diclofenac is administered within three days, one or two weeks (before or after) of GHB administration. In another

4

embodiment, the present invention is a method wherein aspirin is also administered to the patient, especially with valproate.

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB as a single salt or a mixture of salts of GHB selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂).

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB to a patient suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to the patient; determining if the patient has concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor; and adjusting the GHB dose or ceasing administering of the MCT inhibitor to maintain the effect of the GHB.

In any of the versions of the invention, the methods optionally further include administering aspirin to the patient.

In a further embodiment the method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof comprises administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while avoiding concomitant of a diclofenac or valproate.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a method of administering GHB or a salt thereof (GHB) to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of diclofenac, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB or a GHB salt per day while avoiding diclofenac concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that diclofenac should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with diclofenac can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being treated with diclofenac is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in an decrease in exposure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a administering GHB to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of valproate, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB per day while avoiding valproate concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being treated with valproate is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in exposure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient that MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

In another embodiment, the present invention is a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management

US 10,864,181 B2

5

system to dispense information concerning the risks associated with ingesting a MCT inhibitor concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; providing said pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and authorizing distribution of said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The method may also comprise including an electronic or written alert, which can explain the risks, to employees to dispense said information with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Also, the information can be dispensed when a subject refills said prescription. The warnings would be as recited above.

The methods of the present invention may include a warning for patients not to operate hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely and not to engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Any information dispensed with said drug advises patients of the potential for enhanced potency of said drug if said patients also take valproate or advises patients of the potential for decreased potency of said drug if said patients also take diclofenac.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while avoiding concomitant administration of diclofenac or valproate.

The invention may also comprise a method for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that the toxic effects of GHB are reduced. It may also comprise a method for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population). Treatment A=diclofenac placebo+Xyrem®. Treatment B=diclofenac+Xyrem®. Treatment C=diclofenac+Xyrem® placebo.

FIG. 2 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 3 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 4 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 5 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population). Treatment A=Xyrem®. Treatment B=Xyrem® placebo. Treatment C=valproate.

FIG. 6 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

FIG. 7 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

6

FIG. 8 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

FIG. 9 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

FIG. 10 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The following patents and applications are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties for all purposes: U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,472,431, 6,780,889, 7,262,219, 7,851,506, 8,263,650, 8,324,275; 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 61/317,212, 13/071,369, 13/739,886, 12/264,709, PCT/US2010/033572, PCT/US2009/061312, 2009/0137565; and 2012/0076865. The following patents are also incorporated by reference: U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,380,937; 4,393,236 German Patent DD 237,309 A1; and British Pat. No. 922,029.

Objects, features and advantages of the methods and compositions described herein will become apparent from the following detailed description. It should be understood, however, that the detailed description and the specific examples, while indicating specific embodiments, are given by way of illustration only, since various changes and modifications within the spirit and scope of the invention will become apparent to those skilled in the art from this detailed description.

The following references, to the extent that they provide exemplary procedural or other details supplementary to those set forth herein, are specifically incorporated herein by reference.

- Arena and Fung, "Absorption of sodium .gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and its prodrug .gamma.-butyrolactone: relationship between in vitro transport and in vivo absorption," *J. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 69(3):356-358, 1980.
- Bedard, Montplaisir, Godbout, Lapierre, "Nocturnal .gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate—Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients," 12(1):29-36, 1989.
- Broughton and Mamelak, "The treatment of narcolepsy-cataplexy with nocturnal gamma-hydroxybutyrate," *Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques*. 6(1):1-6, 1979.
- Ferrara, Zotti, Tedeschi, Frison, Castagna, Gessa and Galamberti, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in the treatment of alcohol dependent," *Clin. Neuropharm.*, 15(1, PtA): 303A-304A, 1992.
- Gessa, Diana, Fadda, Colombo, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) for treatment of ethanol dependence," *Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement*, 1992. Gessa et al., *Clin. Neuropharm.*, 15(suppl.):303A-304A, 1992.
- Gessa et al., *Internat. Clin. Psychopharmacol.*, 1994.
- Hasenbos and Gieien, "Anaesthesia for bullectomy," *Anaesthesia*, 40:977-980, 1985.
- Laborit, "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semi aldehyde and Sleep," *Laboratoire d'Eutonologie, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France*, 1973.
- Ladinsky, Consolo, Zatta, Vezzani, "Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System, *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacal.*, 322:42-48, 1983.

US 10,864,181 B2

7

Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and narcolepsy: a double-blind placebo-controlled study," *Sleep*, 16(3); 216-220, 1993.

Lapierre, Montplaisir, Lamarre, Bedard, "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep-Triggering Mechanisms," *Sleep*. 13(1):24-30, 1990.

Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1988. Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1990. Lee, C. R. "Evidence for the .beta.-Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans" *Biochem. Medicine* 17, 284-291, 1977.

Lettieri and Fung, "Improved pharmacological activity via pro-drug modification: comparative pharmacokinetics of sodium .gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and .gamma.-butyrolactone," *Research Communications In Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology*. 22(1):107-118. 1978.

Mamelak, 1977; "Effects Of Gamma Hydroxybutyrate On Sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry* 12, 273-288. Mamelak, "Gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB): An endogenous regulator of energy metabolism," *Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews*, 13: 189-198, 1989.

Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," *Neuro. & Biobehav. Rev.*, 13 187-198, 1989.

Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak, Escriu, Stokan "The effects of gamma-hydroxybutyrate on sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 12(2):273-288. 1977.

Mamelak, Escriu, Stokan, "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," *The Lance*, p. 328-329. 1973.

Nema, et al., "Excipients and their use in injectable products," *PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol.*, 51(4):166-171, 1997.

Palatini, Tedeschi, Frison, Padrini, Zordan, Orlando, Gal- liberti, Gessa, Ferrara, "Dose dependent absorption and elimination of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in healthy volunteers," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 45:353-356, 1993.

Roth and Giarman, ".gamma.-Butyrolactone and .gamma.-Hydroxybutyric Acid-I, Distribution and Metabolism," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 15:1333-1348, 1966.

Scharf, Brown, Woods, Brown, Hirschowitz, "The effects and effectiveness of gammahydroxybutyrate In patients with narcolepsy," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 46(6) 222-225, 1985.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "Efficacy of gamma-hydroxybutyrate versus placebo in treating narcolepsy-cataplexy: Double-blind subjective measured," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 26:331-343, 1989.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "The Effects of .gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," *Sleep*, 13(6):479-490, 1990.

Scrima, et al, "Sleep Res. 16, 134, 1987, Abstract. Series, Series, Cormier, "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 1378-1383, 1992.

Strong, ".gamma.-Hydroxybutyric acid and Intracranial Pressure," *The Lancet*, Vol. 1: No. 8389, 1984. van den Bogert, Vree, van der Kleijn, Damsma, "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man."

Vickers, "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," *Int. Anesth. Clinic*, 7:75.89, 1969.

Lee, Biochem. Med. 17:234-291, 1977. Yamada, Yamamoto, Fujiki, Hishikawa, Kaneko, "Effect of Butyrolactone and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," *Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol.*, 22:558-562, 1967.

8

Yamada et al., 1967. Wu, Ying; Ali, Saima; Ahmadian, Gholamreza; Liu, Chun Che; Wang, Yu Tian; Gibson, K. Michael; Calver, Andrew R.; Francis, Joseph et al. (2004). "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-aminobutyric acidB receptor (GABABR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence". *Neuropharmacology* 47 (8): 1146-56.

Cash, C; Gobaille, S; Kemmel, V; Andriamanampandry, C; Maitre, M (1999). ".gamma.-hydroxybutyrate receptor function studied by the modulation of nitric oxide synthase activity in rat frontal cortex punches". *Biochemical Pharmacology* 58 (11): 1815-9.

Maitre M, Humbert J P, Kemmel V, Aunis D, Andriamanampandry C (2005). "A mechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse" (in French). *Med Sci (Paris)* 21 (3): 284-9. Waszkielewicz A, Bojarski J (2004). "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and its chemical modifications: a review of the GHergic system" (PDF). *Pol J Pharmacol* 56 (1): 43-9.

Kuriyama K, Sze P Y (1971). "Blood-brain barrier to H3-gamma-aminobutyric acid in normal and amino oxyacetic acid-treated animals". *Neuropharmacology* 10 (1): 103-8.

Dimitrijevic N, Dzitoyeva S, Satta R, Imbesi M, Yildiz S, Manev H (2005). "Drosophila GABA(B) receptors are involved in behavioral effects of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB)". *Eur. J. Pharmacol.* 519 (3): 246-52.

Banerjee P K, Snead O C (1995). "Presynaptic gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-aminobutyric acidB (GABAB) receptor-mediated release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in rat thalamic ventrobasal nucleus (VB): a possible mechanism for the generation of absence-like seizures induced by GHB". *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.* 273 (3): 1534-43.

Hechler V, Gobaille S, Bourguignon J J, Maitre M (1991). "Extracellular events induced by gamma-hydroxybutyrate in striatum: a microdialysis study". *J. Neurochem.* 56 (3): 938-44. Maitre, M; Hechler, V; Vayer, P; Gobaille, S; Cash, C D; Schmitt, M; Bourguignon, J J (1990). "A specific gamma-hydroxybutyrate receptor ligand possesses both antagonistic and anticonvulsant properties". *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.* 255 (2): 657-63.

Smolders I, De Klippe N, Sarre S, Ebinger G, Michotte Y (1995). "Tonic GABAergic modulation of striatal dopamine release studied by in vivo microdialysis in the freely moving rat". *Eur. J. Pharmacol.* 284 (1-2): 83-91. In the specification and claims that follow, references will be made to a number of terms which shall be defined to have the following meaning.

The terms "a" and "an" do not denote a limitation of quantity, but rather denote the presence of at least one of the referenced item. The term "or" means "and/or". The terms "comprising", "having", "including", and "containing" are to be construed as open-ended terms (i.e., meaning "including, but not limited to").

"Concomitant" and "concomitantly" as used herein refer to the administration of at least two drugs to a patient either subsequently, simultaneously, or consequently within a time period during which the effects of the first administered drug are still operative in the patient. Thus, if the first drug is, e.g., Xyrem®, or GHB, and the second drug is valproate, the concomitant administration of the second drug occurs within two weeks, preferably within one week or even three days, before or after the administration of the first drug.

"Dosage amount" means an amount of a drug suitable to be taken during a fixed period, usually during one day (i.e., daily).

US 10,864,181 B2

9

“Dosage amount adapted for oral administration” means a dosage amount that is of an amount deemed safe and effective for the particular patient under the conditions specified. As used herein and in the claims, this dosage amount is determined by following the recommendations of the drug manufacturer’s Prescribing Information as approved by the US Food and Drug Administration.

“Dosing regimen” means the dose of a drug taken at a first time by a patient and the interval (time or symptomatic) and dosage amounts at which any subsequent doses of the drug are taken by the patient. Each dose may be of the same or a different dosage amount.

A “dose” means the measured quantity of a drug to be taken at one time by a patient.

A “patient” means a human in need of medical treatment. In one embodiment medical treatment can include treatment of an existing condition, such as a disease or disorder, prophylactic or preventative treatment, or diagnostic treatment. In another embodiment, medical treatment also includes administration to treat excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus.

“Providing” means giving, administering, selling, distributing, transferring (for profit or not), manufacturing, compounding, or dispensing.

The terms “therapeutically effective amount,” as used herein, refer to an amount of a compound sufficient to treat, ameliorate, or prevent the identified disease or condition, or to exhibit a detectable therapeutic, prophylactic, or inhibitory effect. The effect can be detected by, for example, an improvement in clinical condition, or reduction in symptoms. The precise effective amount for a subject will depend upon the subject’s body weight, size, and health; the nature and extent of the condition; and the therapeutic or combination of therapeutics selected for administration. Where a drug has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), a “therapeutically effective amount” refers to the dosage approved by the FDA or its counterpart foreign agency for treatment of the identified disease or condition.

“Side effect” means a secondary effect resulting from taking a drug. The secondary effect can be a negative (unfavorable) effect (i.e., an adverse side effect) or a positive (favorable) effect.

Pharmacokinetic parameters referred to herein describe the in vivo characteristics of drug (or a metabolite or a surrogate marker for the drug) over time. These include plasma concentration (C), as well as C_{max} , C_n , C_{24} , T_{max} , and AUC. The term “ T_{max} ” refers to the time from drug administration until C_{max} is reached. “AUC” is the area under the curve of a graph of the measured plasma concentration of an active agent vs. time, measured from one time point to another time point. For example $AUC_{0-\infty}$ is the area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time t , where time 0 is the time of initial administration of the drug. Time t can be the last time point with measurable plasma concentration for an individual formulation. The $AUC_{0-\infty}$ or AUC_{0-INF} is the calculated area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time infinity. In steady-state studies, $AUC_{0-\tau}$ is the area under the curve of plasma concentration over the dosing interval (i.e., from time 0 to time τ). (τ), where τ is the length of the dosing interval.

It may be advantageous to incorporate a pharmacy management system into the method of the present invention. Pharmacy management systems are computer-based systems that are used by commercial pharmacies to manage

10

prescriptions and to provide pharmacy and medical personnel with warnings and guidance regarding drugs being administered to patients. Such systems typically provide alerts warning either or both of health care providers and patients when a drug that may be harmful to the particular patient is prescribed. For example, such systems can provide alerts warning that a patient has an allergy to a prescribed drug, or is receiving concomitant administration of a drug that can have a dangerous interaction with a prescribed drug. 5 U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 5,758,095, 5,833,599, 5,845,255, 6,014,631, 6,067,524, 6,112,182, 6,317,719, 6,356,873, and 7,072,840, each of which is incorporated herein by reference, disclose various pharmacy management systems and aspects thereof. Example pharmacy management systems are now commercially available, e.g., CENTRICITY Pharmacy from BDM Information Systems Ltd., General Electric Healthcare, Waukesha, Wis., Rx30 Pharmacy Systems from Transaction Data Systems, Inc., Ocoee, Fla., SPEED SCRIPT from Digital Simplistics, Inc., Lenexa, Kans., and various pharmacy management systems from OPUS-ISM, Hauppauge, N.Y.

In some embodiments, a pharmacy management system 25 may be required or preferred as part of a drug distribution program. For example, the present invention includes a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: (1) Identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management system to dispense information concerning the risks associated with ingesting a MCT inhibitors concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; (2) Providing said pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and (3) Authorizing distribution of 30 said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The established management system may include an electronic alert to employees to dispense said information with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Such information may be dispensed in written form, 35 for example in a brochure explaining the risks of concomitant ingestion of GHB and an MCT inhibitor such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen or combinations thereof. For example, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for enhanced potency of 40 GHB if the patient also takes valproate. Alternatively, or in addition thereto, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for decreased potency of GHB if the patient also takes diclofenac. Such information 45 may also be dispensed in verbal form. Distributors may maintain a directory of approved pharmacies, for example in a computer readable storage medium, to further ensure that GHB is dispensed only to patients who are advised of the additive effects.

50 In addition, the system can prevent the dispensing of GHB or salt thereof until proper testing or confirmation is obtained that the patient is not taking or going to take valproate or diclofenac concomitantly with GHB. Alternatively, the patient can be warned of the adverse effect and instructed to modify the dose of GHB to accommodate the increased or reduced effects of GHB due to valproate or diclofenac.

55 A pharmacy management system of the present invention can be a REMS system as shown in U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,059; 7,797,171; and 7,668,730 and also include monitoring for concomitant use of diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, or combinations thereof. Warnings may be administered

US 10,864,181 B2

11

through the existing pharmacy management system as described in the patents above.

One embodiment of the present invention, without being limited by theory, is the discovery of drug interactions that change either, or both, the efficacy or safety profile of GHB. The three compounds are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprophen or combinations thereof. To achieve the above benefits, GHB of the present invention can be administered in a reduced amount when a second compound, such as valproate, is concomitantly administered with GHB. It can also be administered in an increased amount to overcome any effects of diclofenac. The compounds can also be avoided or discontinued to prevent unsafe concomitant administration.

In one embodiment of the present invention, concomitant administration of GHB with other agents is monitored and potential changes to the doses of GHB are made, or changes in the administration of other compounds are made. In one embodiment of the present invention, when GHB was concomitantly administered with ibuprofen, there were pharmacokinetic (PK) changes consistent with monocarboxylic transporter (MCT) inhibition and renal excretion of GHB doubled (statistically significant). Plasma levels were about ~5% lower, which was statistically significant. In another embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and Diclofenac are concomitantly administered, PD effects were significantly reduced. In another embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and divalproate were concomitantly administered, PK showed both MCT and GHB dehydrogenase inhibition, with the latter predominating. MCT inhibition caused renal clearance to be increased 30% (statistically significant). GHB dehydrogenase inhibition caused systemic exposure (plasma AUC) to be increased 26%. Both measures are statistically significant and outside FDA "equivalence window". PD shows more pronounced effects with concomitant administration.

One embodiment is a method of administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to a patient in need of treatment, such as with narcolepsy, the invention provides an improvement that comprises avoiding or discontinuing administration of a compound that affects GHB potency and administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB. The compound can be diclofenac or valproate and they can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB.

Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB)

GHB (also called oxybate or oxybutyrate) is approved in the United States (US) for the treatment of excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS) and for the treatment of cataplexy, both in patients with narcolepsy. GHB is commercially sold as Xyrem® sodium oxybate by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. Sodium oxybate is the sodium salt of the endogenous neurotransmitter gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB), which is found in many tissues of the body. "GHB", oxybate, a GHB salt or Xyrem® will be used to refer to these active forms. It can be used as a sodium, calcium, potassium, or magnesium salt. See U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886.

GHB is present, for example, in the mammalian brain and other tissues. In the brain, the highest GHB concentration is found in the hypothalamus and basal ganglia and GHB is postulated to function as a neurotransmitter. The neuropharmacological effects of GHB include increases in brain acetylcholine, increases in brain dopamine, inhibition of GABA-ketoglutarate transaminase and depression of glucose utilization but not oxygen consumption in the brain. GHB is converted to succinate and then metabolized via the Krebs cycle. Clinical trials have shown that GHB increases

12

delta sleep and improves the continuity of sleep (Laborit, 1973; Lapierre et al., 1988; Lapierre et al., 1990; Yamada et al., 1967; Scharf, 1985).

GHB treatment substantially reduces the signs and symptoms of narcolepsy, i.e. excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus. In addition, GHB increases total sleep time and REM sleep, and it decreases REM latency (Mamelak et al., 1973; Yamada et al., 1967; Bedard et al., 1989), reduces sleep apnea (Scrima et al., 1987), and improves general anesthesia (Hasenbos and Gielen, 1985).

GHB has several clinical applications other than narcolepsy and sleep disorders. GHB has been reported to reduce alcohol craving, the number of daily drinks consumed, and the symptoms of alcohol withdrawal in patients (Gallimberti et al., 1989; Gallimberti et al., 1992; Gessa et al., 1992). GHB has been used to decrease the symptoms of opiate withdrawal, including both heroin and methadone withdrawal (Gallimberti et al., 1994; Gallimberti et al., 1993). It has analgesic effects that make it suitable as a pain reliever (U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236). Intravenous administration of GHB has been reported to reduce intracranial pressure in patients (Strong, A. 1984). Also, administration of GHB was reported to increase growth hormone levels in patients (Gessa et al., 1994).

A good safety profile for GHB consumption, when used long term for treatment of narcolepsy has been reported. Patients have been safely treated for many years with GHB without development of tolerance (Scharf, 1985). Clinical laboratory tests carried out periodically on many patients have not indicated organ or other toxicities (Lammers, 1993; Scrima, 1990; Scharf, 1985; Mamelack, 1977; Mamelak, 1979; Gessa, 1992). The side effects of GHB treatment have been minimal in incidence and degree of severity, though they include sleepwalking, enuresis, headache, nausea and dizziness (Broughton and Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak et al., 1981; Mamelak et al., 1977; Scrima et al., 1989; Scrima et al., 1990; Scharf et al., 1985). Therefore, it is critical to identify adverse drug-drug interactions to maintain the positive safety profile for GHB.

GHB Pharmacology

GHB has at least two distinct binding sites (See Wu, et al., 2004) in the central nervous system. GHB is an agonist at the GHB receptor, which is excitatory, (Cash et al., 2009) and it is a weak agonist at the GABAB receptor, which is inhibitory. GHB acts in a similar fashion to some neurotransmitters in the mammalian brain and is probably synthesized from GABA in GABAergic neurons, and released when the neurons fire. If taken orally, GABA itself does not effectively cross the blood-brain-barrier. (See Kuriyama et al., 2005).

GHB induces the accumulation of either a derivative of tryptophan or tryptophan itself in the extracellular space, possibly by increasing tryptophan transport across the blood-brain barrier. The blood content of certain neutral amino-acids, including tryptophan, is also increased by peripheral GHB administration. GHB-induced stimulation of tissue serotonin turnover may be due to an increase in tryptophan transport to the brain and in its uptake by serotonergic cells. As the serotonergic system may be involved in the regulation of sleep, mood, and anxiety, the stimulation of this system by high doses of GHB may be involved in certain neuropharmacological events induced by GHB administration.

However, at therapeutic doses, GHB reaches much higher concentrations in the brain and activates GABAB receptors, which are primarily responsible for its sedative effects. (See

US 10,864,181 B2

13

Dimitrijevic et al., 2005). GHB's sedative effects are blocked by GABAB antagonists.

The role of the GHB receptor in the behavioral effects induced by GHB is more complex. GHB receptors are densely expressed in many areas of the brain, including the cortex and hippocampus, and these are the receptors that GHB displays the highest affinity for. There has been somewhat limited research into the GHB receptor; however, there is evidence that activation of the GHB receptor in some brain areas results in the release of glutamate, the principal excitatory neurotransmitter. Drugs that selectively activate the GHB receptor cause absence seizures in high doses, as do GHB and GABA(B) agonists. (See Banerjee et al., 1995.)

Activation of both the GHB receptor and GABA(B) is responsible for the addictive profile of GHB. GHB's effect on dopamine release is biphasic. (See Hechler et al., 1991). Low concentrations stimulate dopamine release via the GHB receptor. (See Maitre et al., 1990). Higher concentrations inhibit dopamine release via GABA(B) receptors as do other GABA(B) agonists such as baclofen and phenibut. (See Smolders et al., 1995). After an initial phase of inhibition, dopamine release is then increased via the GHB receptor. Both the inhibition and increase of dopamine release by GHB are inhibited by opioid antagonists such as naloxone and naltrexone. Dynorphin may play a role in the inhibition of dopamine release via kappa opioid receptors. (See Mamelak 1989).

This may explain the paradoxical mix of sedative and stimulatory properties of GHB, as well as the so-called "rebound" effect, experienced by individuals using GHB as a sleeping agent, wherein they awake suddenly after several hours of GHB-induced deep sleep. That is to say that, over time, the concentration of GHB in the system decreases below the threshold for significant GABAB receptor activation and activates predominantly the GHB receptor, leading to wakefulness. However, one embodiment of the present invention is the unexpected discovery that drugs change the PD profile of GHB to alter its effects and its safety profile. Example drugs are include valproate and diclofenac. It is important for efficacy safety purposes that the effect of GHB be maintained consistently and not subject to variation due to the effects of other drugs.

Both of the metabolic breakdown pathways shown for GHB can run in either direction, depending on the concentrations of the substances involved, so the body can make its own GHB either from GABA or from succinic semialdehyde. Under normal physiological conditions, the concentration of GHB in the body is rather low, and the pathways would run in the reverse direction to what is shown here to produce endogenous GHB. However, when GHB is consumed for recreational or health promotion purposes, its concentration in the body is much higher than normal, which changes the enzyme kinetics so that these pathways operate to metabolize GHB rather than produce it.

The pharmacokinetics of GHB have been investigated in alcohol dependent patients (Ferrara et al., 1992) and in normal healthy males (Palatini et al., 1993) after oral administration. GHB possesses a rapid onset and short pharmacological effect (Ferrara et al., 1992; Palatine et al., 1993; Lettieri and Fung, 1978; Arena and Fung, 1980; Roth and Giarman, 1966; Vickers, 1969; Lee, 1977). In alcohol dependent patients, GHB absorption into and elimination from the systemic circulation were fast processes. Virtually no unchanged drug could be recovered in the urine. There were preliminary indications that the pharmacokinetics of GHB might be non-linear or dose-dependent (Ferrara et al., 1992). In the healthy volunteers study, the pharmacokinetics

14

of three rising GHB doses (12.5, 25, and 50 mg/kg) were investigated. These findings indicate that both the oral absorption and elimination processes of GHB were capacity-limited though the degree of dose dependency was moderate (Palatini et al., 1993).

Methods of making GHB salts are described, for example, in U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236, and U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886 which are incorporated herein by reference.

It has been discovered that there are unexpected drug-drug interactions (DDI) between GHB and common drugs frequently prescribed for other ailments. It is one goal of the present invention to warn when those interactions may affect the safety profile of GHB. In one embodiment of the present invention, drugs that may affect GHB administration include valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

GHB is a central nervous system (CNS) depressant. Alcohol and sedative hypnotics are contraindicated in patients who are using GHB. The concurrent use of GHB with other CNS depressants, including but not limited to opioid analgesics, benzodiazepines, sedating antidepressants or antipsychotics, general anesthetics, muscle relaxants, and/or illicit CNS depressants, may increase the risk of respiratory depression, hypotension, profound sedation, syncope, and death. If use of these CNS depressants in combination with GHB is required, dose reduction or discontinuation of one or more CNS depressants (including GHB) should be considered. In addition, if short-term use of an opioid (e.g. post- or perioperative) is required, interruption of treatment with GHB should be considered. See the package insert for Xyrem®.

GHB may impair respiratory drive, especially with overdoses associated with interactions with other drugs and alcohol. Since valproate may potentiate the effect of GHB, a warning should accompany any use of valproate and GHB as stated herein. The warning should address the use of additional drugs that may further enhance the effect of GHB, such as alcohol or aspirin, for example.

Healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Patients should be queried about potential adverse events, such as excessive daytime sleepiness, CNS depression related events, etc. upon initiation of GHB therapy and periodically thereafter. These queries should include info regarding additional medication such as diclofenac and valproate for example. See the Xyrem® package insert.

In one embodiment described herein, patients are warned that combination of GHB with valproate can increase plasma levels and potentiate the activity of GHB and exacerbate all the effects and adverse event associated with GHB. These effects include the intended effects of drowsiness, sedation, and sleep and typically unintended events such as depressed respiration, CNS depression, excessive drowsiness, hepatic impairment, and depression, among other things.

In another embodiment, diclofenac mitigates and protects against the pharmacodynamic effects the effects of GHB. However, the mixture of GHB and diclofenac does not affect sleepiness and does not make a patient more attentive. Without wishing to be bound by theory, the effects may be

US 10,864,181 B2

15

due to the interaction between diclofenac and the GHB receptor in lieu of the MCT inhibitor activity.

Typical concentrations of GHB formulations are shown in U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,263,650 and 8,324,275, for example. They include minimum concentrations starting from 150 mg/ml to 450 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) and increasing to 600 mg/ml to 750 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) as a maximum. So, a broad range would include 150-750 mg/ml and any range within the broad range using 10 mg/ml increments. One embodiment of the invention is a range of 350-750 mg/ml and another is 450-550 mg/ml GHB. One embodiment of the present invention uses a GHB formulation with a pH range of 6-10, another uses a pH range of between 6.5-8. For example, a minimum concentration includes 350, 360, 370, 380 mg/ml, and so on up to at least 730, 740, and 750 mg/ml and all concentrations (measured in 10 mg/ml increments in between).

pH adjusting agents can include acids, bases and many of the compounds found in U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650. In some embodiments the pH adjusting agent is an acid selected from the group of: acetic, acetylsalicylic, barbital, barbituric, benzoic, benzyl penicillin, boric, caffeine, carbonic, citric, dichloroacetic, ethylenediaminetetra-acetic acid (EDTA), formic, glycerophosphoric, glycine, lactic, malic, mandelic, monochloroacetic, oxalic, phenobarbital, phenol, picric, propionic, saccharin, salicylic, sodium dihydrogen phosphate, succinic, sulfadiazine, sulfamerazine, sulfapyridine, sulfathiazole, tartaric, trichloroacetic, and the like, or inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, nitric, phosphoric or sulfuric, and the like.

GHB is commercially available as a sodium salt, however, it can also be formulated as a mixture of salts as shown in U.S. Ser. No. 13/739,886, which is incorporated by reference as stated above. For example, the mixture comprises one, two, or three or more salts selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂). The different salts may be present in different percentages. For example, in certain embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 5% to about 40%, the K.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 10% to about 40%, and the Ca.(GHB)₂ salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 20% to about 80%. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂ salts are present in a wt/wt % ratio of about 11%:39%:50%, respectively.

Valproic Acid

Valproic acid (VPA, also called valproate or divalproex), an acidic chemical compound, has found clinical use as an anticonvulsant and mood-stabilizing drug, primarily in the treatment of epilepsy, bipolar disorder, and, less commonly, major depression. See G. Rosenberg, *Cell. Mol. Life Sci.* 64 (2007) 2090-2103. It is also used to treat migraine headaches and schizophrenia. A typical dose of valproate varies by indication. Dosages for seizures are between 10 to 15 mg/kg/day, with potential increases of 5 to 10 mg/kg/day. VPA is a liquid at room temperature, but it can be reacted with a base such as sodium hydroxide to form the salt sodium valproate, which is a solid. The acid, salt, or a mixture of the two (valproate semisodium, divalproate) are marketed under the various brand names Depakote, Depakote E R, Depakene, Depakene Crono (extended release in Spain), Depacon, Depakine, Valparin and Stavzor.

16

Valproate is believed to affect the function of the neurotransmitter GABA in the human brain, making it an alternative to lithium salts in treatment of bipolar disorder. Its mechanism of action includes enhanced neurotransmission of GABA (by inhibiting GABA transaminase, which breaks down GABA). However, several other mechanisms of action in neuropsychiatric disorders have been proposed for valproic acid in recent years. See Rosenberg G (2007). "The mechanisms of action of valproate in neuropsychiatric disorders: can we see the forest for the trees?". *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences* 64 (16): 2090-103.

Valproic acid also blocks the voltage-gated sodium channels and T-type calcium channels. These mechanisms make valproic acid a broad-spectrum anticonvulsant drug. Valproic acid is an inhibitor of the enzyme histone deacetylase 1 (HDAC1), hence it is a histone deacetylase inhibitor. Valproic acid may interact with carbamazepine, as valproates inhibit microsomal epoxide hydrolase (mEH), the enzyme responsible for the breakdown of carbamazepine-10,11 epoxide (the main active metabolite of carbamazepine) into inactive metabolites. (See Gonzalez, Frank J.; Robert H. Tukey (2006). "Drug Metabolism". In Laurence Brunton, John Lazo, Keith Parker (eds.). *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* (11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill. pp. 79.) By inhibiting mEH, valproic acid causes a buildup of the active metabolite, prolonging the effects of carbamazepine and delaying its excretion. Valproic acid also decreases the clearance of amitriptyline and nortriptyline.

Aspirin may decrease the clearance of valproic acid, leading to higher-than-intended serum levels of the anticonvulsant. Also, combining valproic acid with the benzodiazepine clonazepam can lead to profound sedation and increases the risk of absence seizures in patients susceptible to them.

Valproic acid and sodium valproate reduce the apparent clearance of lamotrigine (lamictal). In most patients, the lamotrigine dosage for coadministration with valproate must be reduced to half the monotherapy dosage.

Valproic acid is contraindicated in pregnancy, as it decreases the intestinal reabsorption of folate (folic acid), which leads to neural tube defects. Because of a decrease in folate, megaloblastic anemia may also result. Phenytoin also decreases folate absorption, which may lead to the same adverse effects as valproic acid.

Valproic acid, 2-propylvaleric acid, is synthesized by the alkylation of cyanoacetic ester with two moles of propylbromide, to give dipropylcyanoacetic ester. Hydrolysis and decarboxylation of the carboethoxy group gives dipropylacetonitrile, which is hydrolyzed into valproic acid. See U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,325,361 and 4,155,929 and GB Pat. Nos. 980279 and 1522450. See also, T. R. Henry, "The History of Valproate in Clinical Neuroscience." *Psychopharmacology bulletin* (2003) 37 (Suppl 2):5-16.

Diclofenac

Diclofenac is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) taken to reduce inflammation and as an analgesic reducing pain in certain conditions. Diclofenac is used to treat pain, inflammatory disorders, and dysmenorrhea and is a commonly used NSAID. See Auler et al., *Brazilian Jour. Med. Bio. Res.*, (1977) 30:369-374 and Hasan, et al., and *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, vol. 18, No. 1, January 2005, pp 18-24 both are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

The name is derived from its chemical name: 2-(2,6-dichloranilino) phenylacetic acid, it may be supplied as either the sodium or potassium salt. Diclofenac is available

US 10,864,181 B2

17

as a generic drug in a number of formulations; including Diclofenac diethylammonium applied topically to joints. Over-the-counter (OTC) use is approved in some countries for minor aches and pains and fever associated with common infections.

Diclofenac is typically absorbed readily, but absorption is delayed upon administration with food. Its half-life varies from 1 to 3 hours with mean peak plasma levels of about 0.5 ug/ml to 1.0 ug/ml after 2 hours of a single dose of 25 mg. Diclofenac binds to human serum proteins, specifically albumin. See Hasan et al 2005.

Ibuprofen

Ibuprofen (from iso-butyl-propanoic-phenolic acid) is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) widely prescribed for pain relief, fever reduction, and swelling. Ibuprofen was derived from propanoic acid. Originally marketed as Brufen, ibuprofen is available under a variety of popular trademarks, including Motrin, Nurofen, Advil, and Nuprin. Ibuprofen is used primarily for fever, pain, dysmenorrhea and inflammatory diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis. It is also used for pericarditis and patent ductus arteriosus. It is a commonly used drug commercially available over the counter.

Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as ibuprofen work by inhibiting the enzyme cyclooxygenase (COX), which converts arachidonic acid to prostaglandin H2 (PGH2). PGH2, in turn, is converted by other enzymes to several other prostaglandins (which are mediators of pain, inflammation, and fever) and to thromboxane A2 (which stimulates platelet aggregation, leading to the formation of blood clots).

Like aspirin and indomethacin, ibuprofen is a nonselective COX inhibitor, in that it inhibits two isoforms of cyclooxygenase, COX-1 and COX-2. The analgesic, anti-pyretic, and anti-inflammatory activity of NSAIDs appears to operate mainly through inhibition of COX-2, whereas inhibition of COX-1 would be responsible for unwanted effects on the gastrointestinal tract. However, the role of the individual COX isoforms in the analgesic, anti-inflammatory, and gastric damage effects of NSAIDs is uncertain and different compounds cause different degrees of analgesia and gastric damage.

The synthesis of this compound consisted of six steps, started with the Friedel-Crafts acetylation of isobutylbenzene. Reaction with ethyl chloroacetate (Darzens reaction) gave the α,β -epoxy ester, which was hydrolyzed and decarboxylated to the aldehyde. Reaction with hydroxylamine gave the oxime, which was converted to the nitrile, then hydrolyzed to the desired acid. See U.S. Pat. No. 3,385,886.

An improved synthesis by BHC required only three steps. After a similar acetylation, hydrogenation with Raney nickel gave the alcohol, which underwent palladium-catalyzed carbonylation.

Valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen are monocarboxylate transporter inhibitors. One embodiment of the present application is a method to improve safety by monitoring the combination of these compounds with GHB.

Monocarboxylate Transporters

Monocarboxylate transporters, or MCTs, constitute a family of proton-linked plasma membrane transporters that carry molecules having one carboxylate group (monocarboxylates), such as lactate and pyruvate, across biological membranes. See Halestrap A P, Meredith D (2004). "The SLC16 gene family—from monocarboxylate transporters (MCTs) to aromatic amino acid transporters and beyond". Pflugers Arch. 447 (5): 619-28.

18

MCTs are a series of transporters which move chemicals in body tissues, such as kidneys, blood/brain barrier, intestines, etc. They can transport chemical compounds back from urine to create a higher concentration in the blood than the urine. They can be used to treat an overdose or to prevent excretion of a compound. They can also be used to prevent absorption or transport into the brain or gut, or excretion via the urine. Exemplary MCT inhibitors include valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

10 Concomitant Administration of GHB and Drug-Drug Interactions

In one embodiment of the present invention the concomitant administration of MCT inhibitors, such as either valproate, diclofenac, or ibuprofen with GHB can effect GHB levels or activity and alter the GHB safety and efficacy profile to create an unsafe condition. For example, valproate can increase or prolong GHB effects and diclofenac can reduce or shorten GHB effects. For example, if the effects are increased, then there could be an increase of adverse events associated with too much GHB. Also, the effect of GHB may be prolonged to cause side effects, such as excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS), to last into the daytime. Prolongation of the effect would counter the purpose for providing the GHB and could create an unsafe situation for patients who wish to be alert and who may be engaged in otherwise dangerous activity. This concomitant administration can transform an otherwise safe dose of GHB into one with safety concerns. It is a health risk to patients and a medical challenge to health care workers.

30 The drug-drug interaction could also reduce the effects of GHB by altering its blood levels or otherwise. Reduction in the GHB level may also provide an unsafe condition due to excessive daytime sleepiness. In each situation, where GHB is increased, decreased or excessively cleared, those drug-drug interactions need to be identified to a health care worker to adjust the dose of GHB or discontinue the use of the other compound.

As recited on the product insert for Xyrem®, healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB.

In some embodiments in which diclofenac or valproate is discontinued to avoid an adverse drug interaction, they are discontinued within at least 3 days prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In various embodiments, diclofenac or valproate is discontinued within at least 4 days, or at least 5 days, or at least 6 days, or at least 7 days (or one week), or at least 8 days, or at least 9 days, or at least 10 days, or at least 11 days, or at least 12 days, or at least 13 days, or at least 14 days (or two weeks), or at least 15 days, or at least 16 days, or at least 17 days, or at least 18 days, or at least 19 days, or at least 20 days, or at least 21 days (or three weeks) prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In some embodiments, the diclofenac or valproate is discontinued no later than 2 weeks or 1 week before starting GHB therapy.

In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy when valproate is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient downward relative to a previously administered dosage in the patient, so the dose does not result in an increased exposure to GHB. In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy

US 10,864,181 B2

19

when diclofenac is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient upward relative to a previously administered dosage in the patient, so the dose results in an effective exposure to GHB.

Thus, the present invention includes a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB), wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate such additive effects.

In one embodiment of the present invention, a reduced amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with valproate. In another embodiment of the present invention, an increased amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with diclofenac.

When valproate is concomitantly administered with GHB, The amount of GHB can be reduced at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 9 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to reduce the normal dose by 15% is 7.65 g/day. The GHB dose reduction may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. A typical adult range of doses for GHB are between 4.5 or 6 g as a minimum and 8 or 10 g/day as a maximum divided into two doses. The dose recommended on the package insert and approved by the FDA is between 4.5 and 9.0 g/day. Typical exemplary paediatric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 6 g/day for pediatric patients aged 0-6 years. Typical exemplary paediatric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 9 g/day for pediatric patients aged 7-17 years. However, these ranges are not absolute and can be increased or decreased by 1-2 grams in either direction. One dose is typically administered prior to bed (night time sleep) and another dose administered 1-2 hours later. See the Xyrem® package insert (Xyrem® is a registered trademark of Jazz Pharmaceuticals plc or its subsidiaries.). Either or both of the multiple doses may be reduced to present a safer administration profile. For example, the first dose may be reduced by the numbers referred to above or the second may be reduced by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day may be reduced at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary decrease in an adult dose would be to reduce the maximum dose to less than 8.5, 8, 7.5, 7, 6.5, 6, 5.5, 5, 4.5, 4, 3.5, 3 g/day and so on. The minimum dose will be reduced accordingly to 4, 3.5, 3, 2.5, 2, and so on.

In one embodiment of the present invention, diclofenac may dampen or delay the effect of GHB upon a patient during concomitant administration. In one embodiment, it may be useful to increase the amount of GHB that is administered to the patient. For example, GHB may be increased at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 10 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to increase the normal dose by 15% is 11.5 g/day. The GHB dose increase may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. Either, or both, of the multiple doses may be increased to present a safer administration profile. For example, the first dose may be increased by the numbers referred to above or the second

20

may be increased by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day may be increased at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary decrease in an adult dose would be to increase the minimum dose to 5, 5.5, 6, 6.5, 7, 7.5, 8, 8.5 g/day and so on. An increase in the maximum dose would be at least 9.5, 10, 10.5, 11, 11.5, 12, 12.5, 13, 13.5, 14 g/day and so on.

In another aspect, a package or kit is provided comprising GHB, optionally in a container, and a package insert, package label, instructions or other labelling including any one, two, three or more of the following information or recommendations: (a) use of diclofenac or valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors, such as diclofenac or valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in exposure to GHB, (d) concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in a decrease in exposure to GHB, and/or (e) MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

Alternatively, diclofenac can be administered to counteract the effects of GHB toxicity using a reverse of the numerical relationships above. Similarly, valproate can be used to increase the effects of GHB in patients that cannot take higher amounts of GHB. In this regard, the present invention includes methods for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that potential toxic effects of GHB are reduced. The present invention also includes methods for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

The examples below, which show drug interaction studies in healthy adults, demonstrated those instances, test conditions or metrics which showed a distinction between GHB and either of the test compounds, diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen. Additionally, drug interaction studies in healthy adults demonstrated pharmacokinetic or clinically significant pharmacodynamic interactions between GHB and diclofenac or valproate.

Example 1

This study was designed to compare Pharmacokinetic (PK) and Pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® sodium oxybate (GHB) with and without concomitant administration of diclofenac. A crossover design was employed to allow within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with diclofenac. The PK and PD effects of Xyrem® upon those of diclofenac were also studied.

The PD parameters included a selection of automated tests of attention, information processing, working memory and skilled coordination from the CDR System. (Rapeport et al, 1996ab; Williams et al, 1996). (Wesnes et al, 1997). (Wesnes et al, 2000) (Modi et al, 2007).

Methods

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, three-period, crossover study in healthy subjects. 24 subjects were recruited to ensure that 18 completed the study. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eli-

US 10,864,181 B2

21

gible subjects were entered into the study and received one of the following treatments per period, in randomized order:

Diclofenac placebo administered as one capsule qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, one diclofenac placebo capsule administered at -1 h and 3 h, and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Diclofenac administered as 50 mg immediate-release (IR) tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Diclofenac administered as 50 mg IR tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and Xyrem® placebo (volume equivalent to 3 g of Xyrem® oral solution) administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Subjects were randomized to one of the above treatments on Day 1, crossed over to another treatment on Day 6, and crossed over again to the remaining treatment on Day 11 (Table 1). Subjects were dosed in groups of up to 12. A 2-day washout period followed each of the treatment periods. The treatments were as follows: A=Diclofenac placebo (qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® two 3 g doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. B=Diclofenac (50 mg qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® two 3 g doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. C=Diclofenac (50 mg qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® placebo two doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time (SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

Results

Power of attention-On this measure of focussed attention and information processing Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 0.5 h; while the smaller impairments with the combination narrowly missed significance at 1 and 4.5 h. Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac also resulted in impairments at two timepoints compared to diclofenac alone which at 6.5 h was significant and a trend at 8 h. See FIG. 1 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy-On this measure of focussed attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 2 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time-On this measure of focussed attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 3 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

22

Choice Reaction Time Mean-Impairments to this measure of attention and information processing were significantly smaller than with Xyrem® alone when co-dosed with diclofenac during the hour following the first dose of Xyrem®. See FIG. 4 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

While diclofenac alone had no effect on sleepiness or cognitive function, when co-dosed with Xyrem® it significantly reduced the effects of the compound on Power of Attention and two of the contributing scores, simple and choice reaction time; these effects being seen during the hour after the first dose of Xyrem®. On the other hand, there was no evidence on any measure of greater cognitive impairment or sleepiness when the two compounds were co-dosed.

The extent of the reductions in the impairments to the ability to focus attention and efficiently process information were quite notable, and likely to be of clinical relevance. It is interesting that protective effect of diclofenac was not seen on the subjects ratings of alertness, such a dissociation having been seen previously with haloperidol in healthy elderly volunteers (Beuzan et al, 1991).

In conclusion, evidence of an interaction was seen in this study over the hour following the first dose of Xyrem® on the study days, the impairments being notably smaller when diclofenac was co-dosed with Xyrem®. There was no interaction however on the feelings of sleepiness in the subjects.

Example 2

This study is designed to compare the pharmacokinetic (PK) and pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. The crossover design allows within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time (SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

The objectives of this study were to evaluate the PK and PD of Xyrem® co-administered with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets and to evaluate and compare the safety and tolerability of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets.

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, five-period, crossover study in healthy male subjects. The study was conducted in approximately 24 healthy subjects to ensure completion of 16 subjects. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eligible subjects were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 1 and 2; were dosed with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets for 10 consecutive days in Period 3; and while continuing to take divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 4 and 5 (Table 1).

Periods 1 and 2:

Subjects were randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo 4 hours apart in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 AM (first dose) and 1 PM (second dose) on Days 1 and 3. PK and PD parameters were evaluated during the 24 hours postdose.

Blood samples (4 mL) for sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at predose and at specified time-points up to

US 10,864,181 B2

23

12 hours after the first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo on Days 1 and 3. A PD Battery including the Karolinska Sleepiness Scale, Simple Reaction Time task, Digit Vigilance task, Choice Reaction Time task, Tracking task, and Numeric Working Memory task was administered at planned timepoints up to X hours after first dose (X hours after second dose), and safety were monitored at specified timepoints on Days 1 and 3 as well as throughout the periods.

Period 3:

All subjects received divalproex sodium extended-release tablets 1250 mg at approximately 8 AM on Days 5 through 14. Blood samples (4 mL) for valproic acid concentrations were collected before the divalproex sodium dose (to determine trough concentration for assessment of steady state) on Days 13 and 14. Safety was monitored at specified timepoints as well as throughout the period.

Periods 4 and 5:

Subjects continued taking 1250 mg divalproex sodium extended-release tablets at approximately 8 AM on Days 15 through 18. Subjects were also randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 am (first dose) and 1 pm (second dose) on Days 15 and 18. The first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken approximately 1 hour after dosing with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, and the second dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken 4 hours after the first Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose.

Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at pre Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose and at specified timepoints after the first Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo dose on Days 15 and 18. Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma valproic acid concentrations were collected pre divalproex sodium dose and at specified timepoints after the dose of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets on Day 15 and 18.

The PD battery was administered on Day 15 and 18, and safety was monitored at specified times on Days 15 and 18 as well as throughout the periods.

The treatments were as follows: A=Xyrem®, two 3 g doses, 4 hours apart at approximately 9 AM (1st dose) and 1 PM (2nd dose); B=Xyrem® placebo, two doses, 4 hours apart; and C=Divalproex sodium 1250 mg, once a day at approximately 8 AM.

Results

The results below show the tests in which GHB administration was affected by concomitant administration of any of three MCT inhibitors, such as valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

Continuity of Attention

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 hours and 8 hours. See FIG. 5 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population).

Simple Reaction Time Mean

At 1 hour and 4 hours, Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together produced statistically reliably greater impairments than Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 6, which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy

At 2.5 and 4 hours Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together were statistically reliably different greater impairment to Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 7, which shows Change

24

from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

Tracking Distance from Target

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a statistically significant difference by a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 and 8 hours. See FIG. 8 which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a difference at 4.5 through 8 hours. See FIG. 9, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed statistically significant differences at 2.5, 5 and 8 hours when the combination produced greater impairment. See FIG. 10, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

In addition, it was observed that renal excretion of GHB increase 30% upon co-administration of Valproate.

We also found pk changes which were consistent with the inhibition of GHB dehydrogenase. This effect will increase the exposure of GHB to the subject and increase C_{max} and AUC about 15%.

The combination of Xyrem® dosed with divalproex sodium was compared to divalproex sodium alone, more consistent statistically significant impairments over time were seen with the combination, than when Xyrem® was compared to its placebo, indicating that the effects of co-administration, when they appeared, were in the direction of increased impairments.

As has been seen previously, Xyrem® induces sleepiness and produces impairments to attention, working memory and performance on a tracking task in healthy volunteers.

Divalproex sodium alone showed no consistent or notable effects on cognitive function or sleepiness. There were occasions when co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex sodium produced greater deficits than Xyrem® alone. Further the combination also produced more consistent impairments when compared with divalproex sodium alone, than did Xyrem® when compared to its placebo. Thus this study has found evidence that co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex produces greater impairments to cognitive function and sleepiness than were seen with Xyrem® alone.

50

Example 3

The effects of Ibuprofen were evaluated when combined with Xyrem® in a manner similar to the above. No differences were seen using the metrics above for Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), and the following CDR System tasks: Simple Reaction Time, Digit Vigilance, Choice Reaction Time, Tracking and Numeric Working Memory. However, it was observed that renal excretion of Xyrem® doubled upon concomitant administration of Ibuprofen and Xyrem®.

All publications and patent applications cited in this specification are herein incorporated by reference as if each individual publication or patent application were specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference. Although the foregoing has been described in some detail by way of illustration and example for purposes of clarity of

US 10,864,181 B2

25

understanding, it will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art in light of the teachings of the specification that certain changes and modifications may be made thereto without departing from the spirit or scope of the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method for the treatment of cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy in a patient, the method comprising: administering a reduced daily dosage amount of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof to a patient who is concomitantly administered divalproex sodium; wherein the patient is suffering from cataplexy in narcolepsy or excessive daytime sleepiness in narcolepsy; wherein the manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is between 4.5 g to 9 g; and wherein the reduced daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof compensates for pharmacokinetic (PK) and/or pharmacodynamic (PD) changes caused by the divalproex sodium.

2. The method of claim 1, wherein the PD interactions are measured by Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) system tasks or Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (K55).

3. The method of claim 2, wherein the CDR system tasks are selected from the group consisting of Simple Reaction Time (SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction time (CRT), tracking distance from target, and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

4. The method of claim 1, wherein the PK changes are measured by one or more parameters selected from the group consisting of plasma concentration, C_{max} , C_n , C_{24} , Tmax, and Area Under the Curve (AUC).

26

5. The method of claim 4, wherein the PK changes are measured by C_{max} or AUC.

6. The method of claim 1, further comprising monitoring the patient's response and adjusting the dose of GHB or salt thereof.

7. The method of claim 1, wherein the manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

8. The method of claim 1, wherein the manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 6 g.

9. The method of claim 1, wherein the manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 7.5 g.

10. The method of claim 1, wherein the manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 9 g.

11. The method of claim 1, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced by about 15% to about 30%, compared to manufacturer's recommended starting daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium.

12. The method of claim 1, wherein the patient is currently taking divalproex sodium.

* * * * *

EXHIBIT F



US011253494B2

(12) **United States Patent**
Eller

(10) **Patent No.:** US 11,253,494 B2
(b4) **Date of Patent:** *Feb. 22, 2022

(54) **METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS**

(71) Applicant: **Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited**, Dublin (IE)

(72) Inventor: **Mark Eller**, Redwood City, CA (US)

(73) Assignee: **Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited**, Dublin (IE)

(*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

This patent is subject to a terminal disclaimer.

(21) Appl. No.: **17/216,540**

(22) Filed: **Mar. 29, 2021**

(65) **Prior Publication Data**

US 2021/0212970 A1 Jul. 15, 2021

Related U.S. Application Data

(63) Continuation of application No. 17/094,778, filed on Nov. 10, 2020, which is a continuation of application No. 16/245,067, filed on Jan. 10, 2019, now Pat. No. 10,864,181, which is a continuation of application No. 15/869,792, filed on Jan. 12, 2018, now Pat. No. 10,213,400, which is a continuation of application No. 15/343,806, filed on Nov. 4, 2016, now abandoned, which is a continuation of application No. 14/707,914, filed on May 8, 2015, now Pat. No. 9,486,426, which is a continuation of application No. 13/837,714, filed on Mar. 15, 2013, now Pat. No. 9,050,302.

(60) Provisional application No. 61/777,873, filed on Mar. 12, 2013, provisional application No. 61/771,557, filed on Mar. 1, 2013.

(51) **Int. Cl.**

A61K 31/19 (2006.01)
A61K 31/20 (2006.01)
A61P 11/00 (2006.01)
A61P 25/20 (2006.01)
A61P 43/00 (2006.01)
A61K 31/616 (2006.01)
A61K 31/33 (2006.01)
A61K 31/505 (2006.01)
A61K 31/55 (2006.01)

(52) **U.S. Cl.**

CPC *A61K 31/19* (2013.01); *A61K 31/20* (2013.01); *A61K 31/33* (2013.01); *A61K 31/505* (2013.01); *A61K 31/55* (2013.01);
A61K 31/616 (2013.01); *A61P 11/00* (2018.01); *A61P 25/20* (2018.01); *A61P 43/00* (2018.01)

(58) **Field of Classification Search**

CPC A61K 31/19; A61K 31/20; A61K 31/61; A61K 31/33; A61K 31/505; A61K 31/55; A61P 11/00; A61P 25/20; A61P 43/00

See application file for complete search history.

(56) **References Cited**

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

3,051,619 A	8/1962	Laborit
3,325,361 A	6/1967	Meunier
3,385,886 A	5/1968	Nicholson et al.
4,155,929 A	5/1979	Chignac et al.
4,393,236 A	7/1983	Klosa
4,983,632 A	1/1991	Gessa et al.
5,380,937 A	1/1995	Koehler et al.
5,758,095 A	5/1998	Albaum et al.
5,833,599 A	11/1998	Schrier et al.
5,845,255 A	12/1998	Mayaud
5,990,162 A	11/1999	Scharf
6,014,631 A	1/2000	Teagarden et al.
6,067,524 A	5/2000	Byerly et al.
6,112,182 A	8/2000	Akers et al.
6,204,245 B1	3/2001	Siegel et al.
6,317,719 B1	11/2001	Schrier et al.
6,356,873 B1	3/2002	Teagarden et al.
6,472,431 B2	11/2002	Cook et al.
6,780,889 B2	8/2004	Cook et al.
7,015,200 B2	3/2006	Mamelak et al.
7,072,840 B1	7/2006	Mayaud
7,262,219 B2	8/2007	Cook et al.
7,572,605 B2	8/2009	Mamelak et al.
7,668,730 B2	2/2010	Reardan et al.
7,765,106 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.
7,765,107 B2	7/2010	Reardan et al.

(Continued)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

DE	237 309	5/1985
EP	0616804	5/1985

(Continued)

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

U.S. Appl. No. 61/317,212, filed Mar. 24, 2010, Allphin et al. "Disulfiram/sodium oxybate/valproate interaction," *Reactions Weekly*, (Jul. 2011), p. 18, vol. 1361, No. 1.

"Xyrem: EPAR-Procedural steps taken before authorization," (Aug. 9, 2006), 1 page. Available at <http://www.ema.europa.eu/ema/index.jsp?curl=pages/medicines/human/medicines/000593/human-medOO1163.jsp&mid=WCOB01ac058001d124>. Downloaded Jan. 28, 2015.

(Continued)

Primary Examiner — Shirley V Gembeh

(74) *Attorney, Agent, or Firm* — Jones Day

(57) **ABSTRACT**

One embodiment of the present invention is to improve the safety and efficacy of the administration of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient. It has been discovered that the concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor, such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, will affect GHB administration. For example, it has been discovered that diclofenac lowers the effect of GHB in the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition. Furthermore, it has been discovered that valproate increases the effect of GHB on the body, thereby potentially causing an unsafe condition.

US 11,253,494 B2

Page 2

(56)

References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

7,797,171	B2	9/2010	Reardon et al.
7,851,506	B2	12/2010	Cook et al.
7,895,059	B2	2/2011	Reardon et al.
8,263,650	B2	9/2012	Cook et al.
8,324,275	B2	12/2012	Cook et al.
8,591,922	B1	11/2013	Allphin et al.
8,772,306	B1	7/2014	Eller
8,952,029	B2	2/2015	Eller
9,050,302	B2	6/2015	Eller
2003/0125385	A1	7/2003	Cook et al.
2003/0171270	A1	9/2003	Civelli et al.
2006/0018933	A1	1/2006	Vaya et al.
2008/0293698	A1	11/2008	Johnson
2009/0137565	A1	5/2009	Frucht
2010/0112056	A1	5/2010	Rourke et al.
2010/0160299	A1	6/2010	Baker, Jr. et al.
2011/0237664	A1	9/2011	Dalton et al.
2012/0076865	A1	3/2012	Allphin et al.
2014/0249222	A1	9/2014	Eller

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

GB	922 029	3/1963
GB	980 279	1/1965
GB	1 522 450	8/1978
JP	S61-186319 A	8/1986
RU	2232012	7/2004
WO	2000038672 A2	7/2000
WO	WO 2006053186	5/2006
WO	WO 2010053691	5/2010
WO	WO 2011119839	9/2011
WO	WO 2011139271	11/2011
WO	WO 2012037457	3/2012
WO	WO 2014134380 A1	9/2014

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- "Xyrem®," The Pharmaceutical Journal, (Feb. 18, 2006). Available at: <http://www.pharmaceutical-journal.com/new-medicines/-spec-changes/-counter-products/-discontinued-products/-oridecty-miscellany/20016677.article#xyrem>. Downloaded Mar. 5, 2015.
- "Xyrem®: Procedural steps taken and scientific information after the authorisation," European Medicine Agency, (2014), pp. 1-9.
- "Guidance for Industry: Drug Interaction Studies—Study Design, Data Analysis, and Implications for Dosing and Labeling," Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Clinical Pharmacology Division, (Feb. 2012), pp. 1-79. Available at: <https://www.fda.gov/downloads/drugs/guidances/ucm292362.pdf>.
- "Scientific Discussion" European Medicine Agency, (2014), pp. 1-30. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-Scientific_Discussion/human/000593/WC500057101.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 17, 2017.
- "Annex I List of the Names, Pharmaceutical Forms, Strengths of the Medicinal Products, Route of Administration, Marketing Authorization Holders in the Member States," Valproic acid/Valproate, 107 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Referrals_document/valproate_31/WC500105842.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 23, 2018.
- "Annex II Scientific Conclusions and Grounds for Amendment of the Summaries of Product Characteristics and Package Leaflets Presented by the European Medicine Agency," Valproic acid/Valproate, 6 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Referrals_document/valproate_31/WC500105843.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 23, 2018.
- "Opening Expert report of Daniel R. Wynn, MD, FACNS, FAASM," *Jazz pharmaceuticals, Inc. v. Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC*, Jun. 29, 2018, pp. 1-77.
- "Opening Expert report of John R. Horn, Pharm.D., FCCP," *Jazz pharmaceuticals, Inc. v. Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC*, Jun. 28, 2018, pp. 1-100.
- "Scientific Discussion" European Medicine Agency, Aug. 9, 2006, pp. 1-30. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-Scientific_Discussion/human/000593/WC500057101.pdf. Downloaded Aug. 23, 2018.
- AbbVie Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Depakote® (Divalproex Sodium) Tablets for Oral Use: FDA Approved Labeling Text," (Oct. 7, 2011).
- Arena et al., "Absorption of Sodium γ -Hydroxybutyrate and Its Prodrug γ -Butyrolactone: Relationship between In Vitro Transport and In Vivo Absorption," *J. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 69(3): 356-358, 1980.
- Auler et al., "Diclofenac Plasma Protein Binding: PK-PD Modelling in Cardiac Patients Submitted to Cardiopulmonary Bypass," *Braz. J. Med. Bio. Res.*, 30: 369-374, 1997.
- Banerjee et al., "Presynaptic Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB) and Gamma-Aminobutyric Acid_B(GABA_B) Receptor-Mediated Release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in Rat Thalamic Ventrobasal Nucleus (VB): A Possible Mechanism for the Generation of Absence-Like Seizures Induced by GHB," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 273 (3): 1534-1543, 1995.
- Bédard et al., "Nocturnal γ -Hydroxybutyrate. Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients," *Clin. Neuropharmacol.*, 12(1): 29-36, 1989.
- Bernasconi et al., "Experimental Absence Seizures: Potential Roles of γ -Hydroxybutyrate and GABAB Receptors," *J. Neural Transm.*, 35:155-177, 1992.
- Bhattacharya et al., "GHB (γ -Hydroxybutyrate) Carrier-Mediated Transport across the Blood-Brain Barrier," *The Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, 311 (1): 92-98. 2004.
- Bhattacharya et al., "Potential γ -Hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) Drug Interactions Through Blood-Brain Barrier Transport Inhibition: A Pharmacokinetic Simulation-Based Evaluation," *J. Pharmacokinetic Pharmacodyn.*, 33(5): 657-681, 2006.
- Billiard et al., "EFNS guidelines on management of narcolepsy," *Eur. J. Neurol.*, 13: 1035-1048, 2006.
- Borgen et al., "The Influence of Gender and Food on the Pharmacokinetics of Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution in Healthy Subjects," *J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 43: 59-65, 2003, Abstract only.
- Broughton and Mamelak, "Effects of Nocturnal Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Sleep/Waking Patterns in Narcolepsy-Cataplexy," *Can J. Neural. Sci.*, 7(1):23-31, 1980.
- Broughton et al., "The Treatment of Narcolepsy-Cataplexy with Nocturnal Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate," *Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques*, 6(1): 1-6, 1979.
- Busardo et al., "GHB Pharmacology and Toxicology: Acute Intoxication, Concentrations in Blood and urine in Forensic Cases and Treatment of the Withdrawal Syndrome," *Current Neuropharmacology*, 13: 47-70, 2015.
- Cagnin et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid-Induced Psychosis and Seizures," *Epilepsy & Behavior*, 21:203-205, 2011.
- Cash et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Function Studied by the Modulation of Nitric Oxide Synthase Activity in Rat Frontal Cortex Punches," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 58 (11): 1815-1819, 1999.
- Cash, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Overview of the Pros and Cons for it Being a Neurotransmitter and/or a Useful Therapeutic Agent," *Neurosci. Biobehavioral Rev.*, 18(2):291-304, 1994.
- Chateauvieux et al., "Molecular and Therapeutic Potential and Toxicity of Valproic Acid," *Journal of Biomedicine and Biotechnology*, (2010), pp. 1-18.
- Chiu et al., "Therapeutic Potential of Mood Stabilizers Lithium and Valproic Acid: Beyond Bipolar Disorder," *Pharmacol. Rev.*, 65(1): 105-142, 2003.
- Defendant Par Pharmaceutical, Inc.'s Initial Invalidity Contentions for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302, filed Jun. 23, 2017, 68 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Aug. 19, 2014, from Ranbaxy Laboratories Limited to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: "Notice of Paragraph IV Certification Regarding NDA 021196 Xyrem® Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/mL Oral Solution with respect to U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,780,889; 7,262,219; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 7,851,605; 7,895,059; 8,263,650; 8,324,275; 8,457,988; 8,589,182; 8,731,963; and 8,772,306."
- Notification Letter dated Aug. 5, 2014, from Par Pharmaceutical, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution (XYREM®); U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306; Notice of Paragraph IV Certification.

US 11,253,494 B2

Page 3

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Notification Letter dated Feb. 15, 2017, from Ohm Laboratories Inc., Sun Pharmaceutical Industries Ltd., and Ranbaxy Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Supplemental Notice of Certification Under 21 U.S.C. § 355(j)(2)(B)(ii) (§ 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act) and 21 C.F.R. § 314.95, 5 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Feb. 16, 2017, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. Re: Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. Nos. 9,486,426 and 9,539,330, 15 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Feb. 3, 2016, from Watson Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Notification of Certification for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act," 16 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 13, 2017, from Ohm Laboratories Inc., Sun Pharmaceutical Industries Ltd., and Ranbaxy Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Supplemental Notice of Certification Under 21 U.S.C. § 355(j)(2)(B)(ii) (§ 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act) and 21 C.F.R. § 314.95, 5 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 13, 2017, from Roxane Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Notification Pursuant to the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act (21 U.S.C. § 355(j)(2)(B)(ii) and 21 C.F.R. § 314.95(c)(1)) for Roxane Laboratories, Inc.'s ANDA No. 202090 re U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426 (Our Ref: Xyrem®/ Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution), 16 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 16, 2015, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,731,963; 8,772,306; and 8,859,619, 22 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 16, 2017, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals, LLC to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Pat. Nos. 9,486,426, Concerning ANDA 203631 for Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution, 500 mg/mL, 14 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jan. 9, 2015, from Roxane Laboratories to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Patent Notice Pursuant to Section 505U)(2)(B)(ii) [21 USC Section 355U)(2)(B)(ii)] for U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,731,963; 8,772,306; and 8,859,619, 32 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jul. 21, 2015, from Lupin Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd., and Jazz Pharmaceuticals plc re: "Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution, 500 mg/ml: Notification of Certifications for U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,780,889 B2, 7,262,219 B2, 7,668,730 B2, 7,765,106 B2, 7,765,107 B2, 7,851,506 B2, 7,895,059 B2, 8,263,650 B2, 8,324,275 B2, 8,457,988 B2, 8,589,182 B2, 8,731,963 B2, 8,772,306 B2, 8,859,619 B2, 8,952,062 B2, and 9,050,302 B2 Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act," 454 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jul. 22, 2015, from Amneal Pharmaceuticals to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Notice of Paragraph IV Certification of U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302, Concerning ANDA 203631 for Sodium Oxybate Oral Solution, 500 mg/mL," 14 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jun. 14, 2017, from Ascent Pharmaceuticals, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: Certification of non-Infringement and/or Invalidity of U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,780,889; 7,262,219; 8,263,650; 8,859,619; 9,539,330; 8,324,275; 7,851,506; 8,952,062; 8,772,306; 9,050,302; 9,486,426; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 7,895,059; 8,457,988; 8,589,182; 8,731,963, 97 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Jun. 5, 2015, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,780,889; 7,262,219; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 7,851,506; 7,895,059; 8,263,650; 8,324,275; 8,457,988; 8,589,182; 8,731,963; 8,772,306; 8,859,619; 8,952,062," 140 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Nov. 24, 2015, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. Nos. 9,050,302 and 8,772,306," 45 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Oct. 29, 2014, from Watson Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: "Notification of Certification for U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,780,889; 7,262,219; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 7,851,605; 7,895,059; 8,263,650; 8,324,275; 8,457,988; 8,589,182; 8,731,963; and 8,772,306; Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(iv) of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act."
- Notification Letter dated Oct. 9, 2015, from Ranbaxy Inc., a Sun Pharma company, to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. re: "Supplemental Notice of Paragraph IV Certification Regarding NDA 021196 Xyrem® Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution With Respect to U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302," 50 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Sep. 1, 2015, from Par Pharmaceutical, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution (XYREM®) U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302 Notice of Paragraph IV Certification," 51 pages.
- Notification Letter, from Roxane Laboratories, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: Paragraph IV Certification for U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302.
- Petition for IPR by Ranbaxy, Inc., IPR2016-00738, filed Mar. 10, 2016, 73 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC, IPR2016-00546, filed Feb. 2, 2016, 66 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Par Pharmaceutical, Inc., IPR2016-00002, filed Oct. 6, 2015, 65 pages.
- Petition for IPR of U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306 by Ranbaxy, Inc., IPR2016-00024, filed Oct. 7, 2015, 63 pages.
- PTAB decision entered Apr. 12, 2016, denying institution for IPR by Par Pharmaceutical, Inc., IPR2016-00002, re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 17 pages.
- PTAB decision entered Apr. 12, 2016, partially denying institution for IPR by Ranbaxy Inc., IPR2016-00024, re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 21 pages.
- PTAB decision entered Jul. 28, 2016, denying institution for IPR by Amneal Pharmaceuticals LLC, IPR2016-00546, re: U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 16 pages.
- Crosby et al., "Severe Mania Complicating Treatment of Narcolepsy with Cataplexy," *J. Clin. Sleep Med.*, 7(2): 214-216, 2011.
- Cui et al., "The Drug of Abuse γ-Hydroxybutyrate Is a Substrate for Sodium-Coupled Monocarboxylate Transport (SMCT) 1 (SLC5A8): Characterization of SMCT-Mediated Update and Inhibition," *Drug Metab. Dispos.*, 37(7):1404-1410, 2009.
- Depakote (divalproex sodium) Tablets for Oral Use, FDA Labeling Text (Oct. 7, 2011).
- Dimitrijevic et al., "Drosophila GABA_B Receptors are Involved in Behavioral Effects of γ-Hydroxybutyric Acid (GHB)," *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 519 (3): 246-252, 2005.
- Divry et al., "A New Patient with 4-Hydroxybutyric Aciduria, a Possible Defect of 4-Aminobutyrate metabolism," *Clinica Chimica Acta*, 129: 303-309, 1983, Abstract only.
- Druglib.com, "Xyrem (Sodium Oxybate)—Mania—Suspected Cause—Side Effect Reports," 4 pages, Available at: https://www.druglib.com/reported-side-effects/xyrem/reaction_mania/.
- Eli et al., "Endogenous γ-Hydroxybutyrate in Rat Brain Areas: Postmortem Changes and Effects of Drugs Interfering with γ-Aminobutyric Acid Metabolism," *J. Neurochem.*, 41(2): 524-530, 1983.
- Eller et al., "Evaluation of Drug-Drug Interactions of Sodium Oxybate with Divalproex: Results from a Pharmacokinetic/Pharmacodynamic Study," *Sleep Medicine*, 14(Suppl. 1): e302-e303, 2013.
- Excerpt from Kyoto Encyclopedia of Genes and Genomes database, Jul. 12, 2018. Available at: https://www.genome.jp/dbget-bin/www_bget?ec:1.1.1.19.
- Excerpt from Wikipedia, "gamma-Hydroxybutyric acid," Feb. 25, 2013.
- Feldman et al., "Sleep Architecture Effects of Sodium Oxybate Treatment in Subjects with Sleep-Disordered Breathing," *Chest*, 20: 130, 2006, Abstract only.
- Ferrara et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Alcohol Dependent Patients after Single and Repeated Oral Doses," *Br. J. Clin. Pharmac.*, 34: 231-235, 1992.

US 11,253,494 B2

Page 4

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Fides, "Solutions of 4-hydroxybutyric acid salts for injection," Chem Abstract ES302338, Laboratorio M. Cuatescases, SA (2011), 2 pages.
- Food and Drug Administration, Center for Drug Evaluation and Research, Clinical Pharmacology Division; "Guidance for Industry: Drug Interaction Studies—Study Design, Data Analysis, and Implications for Dosing and Labeling" (Feb. 2012).
- Fuller et al., "From Club Drug to Orphan Drug: Sodium Oxybate (Xyrem) for the Treatment of Cataplexy," *Pharmacotherapy*, 23(9): 1205-1209, 2003.
- Gallimberti et al., "Clinical Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal," *Eur Arch Psychiatry Clin Neurosci*, 244: 113-114, 1994.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Alcohol Withdrawal Syndrome," *The Lancet*, Sep. 30: 787-789, 1989.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid for Treatment of Opiate Withdrawal Syndrome," *Neuropsychopharmacology*, 9(1): 77-81, 1993.
- Gallimberti et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence: A Double-Blind Study," *Alcoholism: Clinical and Experimental Research*, 16(4): 673-676, 1992.
- Gerra et al., "Flumazenil Effects on Growth Hormone Response to Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid," *Internat. Clin. Psychopharm.*, 9: 211-215, 1994.
- Gessa et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in the Treatment of Alcohol Dependence," *Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement*, 15 (Suppl. 1, Pt. A): 303A-304A, 1992.
- Gibson et al., "The Clinical Phenotype of Succinic Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase Deficiency (4-Hydroxybutyric Aciduria): Case Reports of 23 New Patients," *Pediatrics*, 99(4), 567-574, 1997.
- Gonzalez et al., "Drug Metabolism," in *Goodman & Gilman's the Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* (11th ed.), Brunton et al. (eds.), New York: McGraw-Hill. pp. 71-91, 2006.
- Halestrap et al., "The SLC16 Gene Family—From Monocarboxylate Transporters (MCTs) to Aromatic Amino Acid Transporters and Beyond," *Pflugers Arch.*, 447 (5): 619-628, 2004.
- Harvey et al., "The Inhibitory Effect of Sodium n-Dipropyl Acetate on the Degradative Enzymes of the GABA Shunt," *FEBS Ltrs*, 52 (2): 251-254, 1975.
- Hasan et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Diclofenac Sodium in Normal Man," *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, 18(1): 18-24, 2005.
- Hasenbos et al., "Anaesthesia for bullectomy," *Anaesthesia*, 40: 977-980, 1985.
- Hechler et al., "Extracellular Events Induced by γ -Hydroxybutyrate in Striatum: A Microdialysis Study," *J. Neurochem.*, 56 (3): 938-944, 1991.
- Hechler et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyrate Conversion into GABA Induces Displacement of GABAa Binding that is Blocked by Valproate and Ethosuximide," *The Journal of Pharmacology and Experimental Therapeutics*, 281(2): 753-760, 1997.
- Henry, Thomas R., "The History of Divalproex in Clinical Neuroscience," *Psychopharmacology Bulletin*, 37 (Suppl 2): 5-16, 2003.
- Highlights of Prescribing Information—Depakene®, Feb. 2013.
- Horsley, W. (North East Treatment Advisory Group), "Sodium oxybate (Xyrem®) in the management of narcolepsy with cataplexy," Dec. 2009 (18 pages).
- International Searching Authority, "International Search Report, dated Jun. 24, 2014 in International Patent Application No. PCT/US2014/019217."
- International Searching Authority, "Written Opinion, dated Jun. 24, 2014 in International Patent Application No. PCT/US2014/019217."
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," Xyrem®, 30 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_product_Information/buman/000593/WC500057103.pdf. Downloaded Mar. 6, 2015.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," Xyrem®, 31 pages. Available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Product_Information/human/000593/WC500057103.pdf. Downloaded Sep. 5, 2018.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text" (Nov. 18, 2005).
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Xyrem® FDA Approved Label (Jul. 17, 2002), 95 pages.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text," Nov. 2017.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text," Dec. 2012.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics," XYREM® SmPC European Package Insert available at: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/EPAR_-_Product_Information/human/000593/WC500057103.pdf (downloaded May 3, 2013).
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (sodium oxybate) oral solution Prescribing Information," Xyrem® US Package Insert available at <http://www.xyrem.com/xyrem-pi.pdf> (downloaded May 3, 2013).
- Kaufman and Nelson, "An Overview of g-hydroxybutyrate Catabolism: The Role of the Cytosolic NADP+-Dependent Oxidoreductase EC 1.1.1.19 and of a Mitochondrial Hydroxyacid-Oxoacid Transhydrogenase in the Initial, Rate-limiting Step in this Pathway," *Neurochem. Res.*, 16(9):965-974, 1991.
- Kaufman and Nelson, "Evidence for the Participation of Cytosolic NADP—Dependent Oxidoreductase in Catabolism of γ -Hydroxybutyrate In Vivo," *J. Neurochemistry*, 48:1935-1941, 1987.
- Knerr et al., "Therapeutic Concepts in Succinate Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase (SSADH; ALDH5a1) Deficiency (g-hydroxybutyric aciduria). Hypothesis Evolved from 25 Years of Patient Evaluation, Studies in Aldh5a1-/- Mice and Characterization of g-hydroxybutyric acid Pharmacology," *J. Inherit. Metab. Dis.*, 30(3):279-294, 2007.
- Kothare et al., "Pharmacotherapy of Narcolepsy: Focus on Sodium Oxybate," *Clinical Medicine Insights: Therapeutics*, 2: 37-52, 2010.
- Kuriyama et al., "Blood-Brain Barrier to H³- γ -Aminobutyric Acid in Normal and Amino Oxyacetic Acid-Treated Animals," *Neuropharmacology*, 10: 103-108, 1971.
- Laborit, H., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semialdehyde and Sleep," Laboratoire d'Eutonologie, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France, pp. 257-274, 1973.
- Ladinsky et al., Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System, *Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacol.*, 322: 42-48, 1983.
- LAMICTAL (lamotrigine) labeling.
- Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and Narcolepsy: A Double-Blind Placebo-Controlled Study," *Sleep*, 16(3): 216-220, 1993.
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep-Triggering Mechanisms," *Sleep*, 13(1): 24-30, 1990.
- Lapierre et al., "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate: A Double-Blind Study of Normal Subjects," *Sleep Research*, 17: 99, 1988 (abstract).
- Lee, C.R., "Evidence for the β -Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans," *Biochem. Med.*, 17, 284-291: 1977.
- Lettieri et al., "Improved Pharmacological Activity via Pro-Drug Modification: Comparative Pharmacokinetics of Sodium γ -Hydroxybutyrate and γ -Butyrolactone," *Research Communications in Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology*, 22(1): 107-118, 1978.
- Liechti et al., "Clinical Features of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate and Gamma-Butyrolactone Toxicity and Concomitant Drug and Alcohol Use," *Drug and Alcohol Dependence*, 81: 323-326, 2006, Abstract only.
- Löscher, "Basic Pharmacology of Valproate: A Review After 35 Years of Clinical Use for the Treatment of Epilepsy," *CNS Drugs*, 16(10):669-694, 2002.
- Löscher, "Valproate: A Reappraisal of Its Pharmacodynamic Properties and Mechanisms of Action," *Progress in Neurobiol.*, 58(1):31-59, 1998.

US 11,253,494 B2

Page 5

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Lyng, "Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB): Mechanisms of Central Nervous System Toxicity," Baylor University, *ProQuest*, UMI Dissertations Publishing, 2006, 3213445.
- Maitre et al., "A Specific γ -Hydroxybutyrate Receptor Ligand Possesses both Antagonistic and Anticonvulsant Properties," *J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther.*, 255 (2): 657-663, 1990.
- Maitre et al., "Mécanismes d'action d'un medicament détourné: le γ -hydroxybutyrate" ('A mechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse') (in French), *Med Sci (Paris)*, 21 (3): 284-9, 2005.
- Maitre, "The γ -hydroxybutyrate Signalling System in Brain Organization and Functional Implications," *Progress in Neurobiology*, 51:337-361, 1997.
- Mamalek et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy with γ -Hydroxybutyrate. A Review of Clinical and Sleep Laboratory Findings," *Sleep*, 9(1):285-289, 1986.
- Mamelak et al., "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," *The Lancet*, 302 (7824): 328-329, 1973.
- Mamelak et al., "The Effects of γ -Hydroxybutyrate on Sleep," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 12(2): 273-288, 1977.
- Mamelak et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy and Sleep Apnea with Gammahydroxybutyrate: A Clinical and Polysomnographic Case Study," *Sleep*, 4(1): 105-111, 1981.
- Mamelak et al., "Narcolepsy: A Family Study," *Biological Psychiatry*, 14: 821-834, 1979.
- Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," *Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews*, 13: 187-198, 1989.
- Modi et al., "Dapoxetine has no Pharmacokinetic or Cognitive Interactions with Ethanol in Healthy Male Volunteers," *J. Clin. Pharmac.*, 47(3): 315-322, 2007.
- Morris et al., "monocarboxylate Transporter Inhibition with Osmotic Diuresis Increases γ -Hydroxybutyrate Renal Elimination in Humans: A Proof-of-Concept Study," *J. Clinic. Toxicol.*, 1(2): 1000105, 2011 (11 pages).
- Morris et al., "Overview of the Proton-Couple MCT (SLC16A) Family of Transporters: Characterization, Function and Role in the Transport of the Drug of Abuse-Hydroxybutyric Acid," *AAPS J.*, 10(2): 311-321, 2008.
- Nema et al., "Excipients and Their Use in Injectable Products," *PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol.*, 51(4): 166-171, 1997.
- Okun, "HGB: An Important Pharmacological and Clinical Update," *J. Pharm. Pharmaceut. Sci.*, 4(2):167-175, 2001.
- Opposition against EP 2,961,399 (filed by Hexal AG), filed Aug. 14, 2018 (27 pages).
- Opposition against EP 2,961,399 (filed by Hoffmann Eitle Patent—und Rechtsanwälte PartmbB), filed Jul. 23, 2018 (24 pages).
- Opposition against EP 2,961,399 (filed by Ter Meer Steinmeister & Partner Patentanwälte mbB), filed Aug. 14, 2018 (21 pages).
- Orphan Medical, Inc., NDA 21196, Major Amendment, filed Mar. 26, 2001, "Review and Evaluation of Clinical Data," http://www.fda.gov/ohrms/dockets/ac/01/briefing/3754b1_02_section%204.PDF (as downloaded on Mar. 4, 2014).
- Orr et al., "Interaction Between Valproic Acid and Aspirin in Epileptic Children: Serum Protein Binding and Metabolic Effects," *Clinical Pharmacol. Ther.*, 31(5): 642-649, 1982.
- Palatini et al., "Dose-Dependent Absorption and Elimination of Gamma-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Healthy Volunteers," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, 45: 353-356, 1993.
- Pardi et al. " γ -Hydrobutyrate/Sodium Oxybate: neurobiology, and impact on Sleep and Wakefulness," *CNS Drugs*, 20(12): 993-1018, 2006.
- Peacock et al., "Narcolepsy: Clinical features, co-morbidities & treatment," *Indian J. Med. Res.*, 131: 338-349, 2010.
- Physicians' Desk Reference, 65th ed. (2011), pp. 1698-1703 (Xyrem).
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on Digoxin Pharmacokinetics and Electrocardiographic Findings," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 16-19, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of a Sertraline-Mediated Effect on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Carbamazepine," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 20-23, 1996.
- Rapeport et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on the Pharmacokinetics and Pharmacodynamics of Phenytoin," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 57: 24-28, 1996.
- Ren et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyrate Reduces Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase Phosphorylation via GABAB Receptor Activation in Mouse Frontal Cortex and Hippocampus," *J. Biol. Chem.*, 278 (43): 42006-42011, 2003.
- Rosenberg, G., "The Mechanisms of Action of Valproate in Neuropsychiatric Disorders: Can We See the Forest for the Trees?" *Cel. Mol. Life Sci.*, 64 (16): 2090-2103, 2007.
- Roth et al., " γ -Butyrolactone and γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid—I Distribution and Metabolism," *Biochemical Pharmacology*, 15: 1333-1348, 1966.
- Roth et al., " γ -Butyrolactone and γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid—II The Pharmacologically Active Form," *Int. J. Neropharmacol.*, 5: 421-428, 1966.
- Roxane Laboratories, Inc., "Lithium Carbonate Tablets USP; Lithium Carbonate Capsules USP; Lithium Oral Solution USP," Oct. 2011.
- Rumigny et al., "Specific and Non-Specific Succinic Semialdehyde Reductases from Rat Brain: Isolation and Properties," *FEBS Ltrs.*, 117(1-2): 111-116, 1980.
- Rumigny et al., "Specific and Non-Specific Succinic Semialdehyde Reductases from Rat Brain: Isolation and Properties," 177 FEBS Letters, 117(1):111-116, 1980.
- Sandson et al., "An interaction Between Aspirin and Valproate: The Relevance of Plasma Protein Displacement Drug-Drug Interactions," *Am. J. Psychiatry*, 163:1891-1896, 2006.
- Sanofi Aventis, "Prescribing Information for EPILIM," (Sep. 12, 2011), pp. 1-18.
- Scharf et al., "The Effects and Effectiveness of γ -Hydroxybutyrate in Patients with Narcolepsy," *J. Clin. Psychiatry*, 46(6): 222-225, 1985.
- Scharf et al., "Pharmacokinetics of Gammahydroxybutyrate (GHB) in Narcoleptic Patients," *Sleep*, 21(5):507-514, 1998.
- Schep et al., "The Clinical Toxicology of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Gamma-Butyrolactone and 1,4-Butanediol," *Clinical Toxicology*, 50: 458-470, 2012.
- Scrima et al., "Efficacy of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate versus Placebo in Treating Narcolepsy—Cataplexy: Double-Blind Subjective Measured," *Biol. Psychiatry*, 26: 331-343, 1989.
- Scrima et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate Effects on Cataplexy and Sleep Attacks in Narcoleptics," *Sleep Res.*, 16: 134, 1987, Abstract.
- Scrima et al., "The Effects of γ -Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," *Sleep*, 13(6): 479-490, 1990.
- Sériès et al., "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 1378-1383, 1992.
- SEROQUEL (quetiapine) labeling.
- Shinka et al., "Effect of Valproic Acid on the Urinary Metabolic Profile of a Patient with Succinic Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase Deficiency," *J. Chromatography*, 792:99-106, 2003.
- Smolders et al., "Tonic GABAergic Modulation of Striatal Dopamine Release Studied by In Vivo Microdialysis in the Freely Moving Rat," *Eur. J. Pharmacol.*, 284 (1-2): 83-91, 1995.
- Snead et al., "Effect of Acute and Chronic Anticonvulsant Administration of Endogenous γ -Hydroxybutyrate in a Rat Brain," *Neuropharmacology*, (1980), pp. 47-52, vol. 19.
- Snead et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid," *New England J. Med.*, 352: 2721-2732, 2005.
- Strong, " γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid and Intracranial Pressure," *The Lancet*, vol. 1: No. 8389, 1984.
- Thorpy et al., "Treatment of Narcolepsy with Cataplexy an Overview of the Disease and a Report on Sodium Oxybate Dosage and Prescribing Information," *European Neurological Review*, 3(1):84-88, 2008.
- United States Patent and Trademark Office, Report on the filing or determination of an action regarding a patent; documents filed Sep. 18, 2014, Oct. 2, 2014, and Oct. 7, 2014, in U.S. Pat. No. 8,772,306, 5 pages.

US 11,253,494 B2

Page 6

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Valproate Monograph in the Complete Drug Reference, 33rd Edition, 366-370, 2002.
- Van Den Bogert et al., "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man," *Anesthesiology and Intensive Care Medicine*, 110: 55-64, 1978.
- Van Der Laan et al., "Di-n-Propylacetate and GABA Degradation. Preferential Inhibition of Succinic Semialdehyde Dehydrogenase and Indirect Inhibition of GABA-Transaminase," *J. Neurochem.* 32: 1769-1780, 1979.
- Vayer et al., "3'-5' Cyclic-Guanosine Monophosphate Increase in Rat Brain Hippocampus after Gamma-hydroxybutyrate Administration. Prevention by Valproate and Naloxone," *Life Sci.*, 41(5):605-610, 1987.
- Vayer et al., "Is the Anticonvulsant Mechanism of Valproate Linked to Its Interaction with the Cerebral γ -hydroxybutyrate System?" *TIPS*, 9(4):127-129, 1988.
- Vickers, M.D., "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," *Int. Anesth. Clinic*, 7: 75-89, 1969.
- Waszkielewicz et al., " γ -Hydrobutyric Acid (GHB) and its Chemical Modifications: A Review of the GHergic System," *Pol J Pharmacol.*, 56 (1): 43-49, 2004.
- Wedin et al., The Clinical Development of γ -Hydroxybutyrate (GHB), *Current Drug Safety*, 1(1):99-106, 2006.
- Weiss et al., "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate (GHB) and Topiramate—Clinically Relevant Drug Interaction Suggested by 4 Case of Coma and Increased Plasma GHB Concentration," *Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol.*, (2012), pp. 1193-1194, vol. 69.
- WELLBUTRIN (bupropion HCl) labeling.
- Wellendorph et al., "Phenylacetic Acids and the Structurally Related Non-Steroidal Anti-Inflammatory Drug Diclofenac Bind to Specific γ -Hydroxybutyric Acid Sites in Rat Brain," *Fundamental & Clinical Pharmacology*, 23:207-213, 2009.
- Wesnes et al., "Moxonidine and Cognitive Function: Interactions with Moclobemide and Lorazepam," *Eur. J. Clinic. Pharmacol.*, 52: 351-358, 1997.
- Wesnes et al., "The Memory Enhancing Effects of a Ginkgo biloba/Panax ginseng Combination in Healthy Middle-Aged Volunteers," *Psychopharmacology*, 152: 353-361, 2000.
- WHO Expert Committee on Drug Dependence, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB), Critical Review Report," Thirty-fifth Meeting, Jun. 4-8, 2012 (57 pages).
- Williams et al., "Absence of Effect of Sertraline on Time-Based Sensitization of Cognitive Impairment with Haloperidol," *J. Clinic. Psych.*, 57, 7-11, 1996.
- Wu et al., " γ -Hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and γ -aminobutyric acid_B receptor (GABA_BR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence," *Neuropharmacology*, 47 (8): 1146-56, 2004.
- Xyrem Labeling Text, Nov. 18, 2015.
- Xyrem Monograph in the Physician's Desk Reference 65th Edition, 1698-1703, 2011.
- Xyrem Package Insert entry in the Physician's Desk Reference Edition, 1688-1692, 2007.
- Xyrem Prescribing Information, 2005.
- Xyrem Prescribing Information, approved labeling 2002.
- Xyrem Success ProgramSM 2005 (now Xyrem REMS Program).
- Xyrem Titration Schedule, 2008.
- Yamada et al., "Effect of Butyrolactone and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," *Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol.*, 22: 558-562, 1967.
- Yilmaz et al., "Diagnostic Pitfalls in Children with Sleep Disorders: Two Cases with Hypersomnia," *Acta Paediatrica*, 97:1749-1757, 2008.
- Notification Letter dated Apr. 23, 2019, from Wockhardt Bio AG to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. Re: Notification Pursuant to § 505(j)(2)(B)(ii) of the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act for U.S. Pat. No. 10,213,400, 9 pages.
- Notification Letter dated Apr. 26, 2019, from Par Pharmaceutical, Inc. to Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc. and Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Ltd. re: "Sodium Oxybate 500 mg/ml Oral Solution (XYREM®)" U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 7,895,059; 8,457,988; 8,589,182; 8,731,963; 8,772,306; 9,050,302; 9,486,426; and 10,213,400 Notice of Paragraph IV Certification," 6 pages.
- Patentee's Reply to the Notices of Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Mar. 13, 2019 (31 pages).
- Mathivet et al., "Binding characteristic of γ -hydroxybutyric acid as a weak but selective GABA_B receptor agonist," *European Journal of Pharmacology*, 321:67-75, 1997.
- Assessment report for modafinil containing medical products, Jan. 27, 2011.
- Excerpt from KEGG database (Kyoto Encyclopedia of Genes and Genomes), ated Jul. 12, 2018; https://www.genome.jp/dbget-bin/www_bget?ec:1.1.1.19.
- Chiu et al., "Therapeutic Potential of Mood Stabilizers Lithium and Valproic Acid: Beyond Bipolar Disorder," *Pharmacol. Rev.*, 65(1): 105-142, 2013.
- Alleged evidence of the published date of "Annex I List of the Names, Pharmaceutical Forms, Strengths of the Medicinal Products, Route of Administration, Marketing Authorization Holders in the Member States" and "Annex II Scientific Conclusions and Grounds for Amendment of the Summaries of Product Characteristics and Package Leaflets Presented by the European Medicine Agency," Valproic acid/Valproate, 1 page.
- Patentee's Response to the Communication pursuant to Article 94(3) EPC filed in EP 2,961,399 B1 dated Nov. 18, 2016, 10 pages.
- Third Party Observation filed in EP 2,961,399 B1 dated Sep. 25, 2019, submitted by Hoffmann Eitle Patent, 54 pages.
- Summon to attend oral proceedings pursuant to Rule 115(1) EPC with preliminary opinion in Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, dated Jun. 17, 2019, 22 pages.
- Opponent's response (filed by Ter Meer Steinmeister & Partner Patentanwälte mbB) to the preliminary opinion and Patentee's response to the Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Nov. 14, 2019, 15 pages.
- Opponent's response (filed by Hoffmann Eitle Patent—und Rechtsanwälte PartmbB) to the preliminary opinion and Patentee's response to the Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Nov. 15, 2019, 26 pages.
- Opponent's response (filed by Hexal AG) to the preliminary opinion and Patentee's response to the Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Nov. 14, 2019, 28 pages.
- Filing Receipt of U.S. Appl. No. 61/771,557.
- Filing Receipt of U.S. Appl. No. 61/777,873.
- "Guideline on the investigation of drug interactions" European Medicine Agency, (2012), 59 pages.
- Jazz Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Xyrem® (Sodium Oxybate) Oral Solution: FDA Approved Labeling Text," Sep. 2016.
- Patentee's Rule 116 EPC Submission for oral hearings of Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Nov. 25, 2019, 22 pages.
- Roiko et al., "Brain extracellular γ -hydroxy butyrate concentrations are decreased by L-lactate in rats: Role in the treatment of overdoses," *Pharm. Res.*, 30(5):1338-1348, 2013.
- Alleged evidence of the online publication of Roiko et al., "Brain extracellular γ -hydroxy butyrate concentrations are decreased by L-lactate in rats: Role in the treatment of overdoses," *Pharm. Res.*, 30(5):1338-1348, 2013, 1 page.
- Sanofi Aventis, "Prescribing Information for EPILIM," (Sep. 12, 2011), 23 pages.
- European Patent Office's Decision revoking EP 2,961,399 B1, dated Jan. 10, 2020, 2 pages.
- George et al., "A safety trial of sodium oxybate in patients with obstructive sleep apnea: Acute effects on sleep-disordered breathing," *Sleep Medicine*, 11:38-42, 2010.
- Goswami et al., *Narcolepsy: a clinical guide*, 2nd edition, 2016, p. 89.
- Opposition against EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Hoffmann Eitle Patent—und Rechtsanwälte PartmbB), filed Mar. 16, 2020, 27 pages.
- Patentee Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited's Reply to the Notices of Oppositions against EP 2,961,399 B1, filed Mar. 13, 2019, 44 pages.

US 11,253,494 B2

Page 7

(56)

References Cited

OTHER PUBLICATIONS

- Patentee Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited's Submission in EP 2,961,399 B1 withdrawing approval of the text, filed Dec. 20, 2019, 2 pages.
- Sarkkanen et al., "Psychosis in patients with narcolepsy as an adverse effect of sodium oxybate," *Frontier in Neurology*, 5(136):1-5, 2014.
- Third Party Observation under Article 115 EPC filed Aug. 5, 2019 in EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Hoffmann Eitle Patent—und Rechtsanwälte PartmbB), 55 pages.
- Further Third Party Observation under Article 115 EPC filed Sep. 25, 2019 in EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Hoffmann Eitle Patent—und Rechtsanwälte PartmbB), 22 pages.
- Opposition against EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Zentiva k.s.), filed Sep. 2, 2020, 28 pages.
- Opposition against EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Ter Meer Steinmeister & Partner Patentanwälte mbB), filed Sep. 11, 2020, 27 pages.
- Opposition against EP 3,335,708 B1 (filed by Hexal AG), filed Sep. 10, 2020, 27 pages.
- Noven Therapeutics, LLC., "Stavzor (valproic acid) Delayed Release Capsules Prescribing Information," Jul. 2008, 18 pages.
- AbbVie Pharmaceuticals, Inc., "Depakene (valproic acid) capsules and oral solution Prescribing Information," Feb. 2013, 43 pages.
- "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate: Molecular Functional and Clinical Aspects," Tunnicliff et al. (eds.), 2002, Taylor & Francis, London, pp. 5 and 13.
- "XYREM® is FDA approved for excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS) and cataplexy in patients with narcolepsy," internet reference obtained from wayback machine <https://web.archive.org/20111128230754/http://www.xyrem.com/healthcare-professionals>; archived on Nov. 28, 2011, 7 pages.
- "XYREM® is FDA approved for excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS) and cataplexy in patients with narcolepsy," internet reference obtained from wayback machine <https://web.archive.org/20121215004227/http://www.xyrem.com/healthcare-professionals>; archived on Dec. 15, 2012, 13 pages.
- Billiard, 2008, "Current treatment options and future approaches," *Neuropsychiatric Disease and Treatment*, 4(3):557-566.
- Highlights of prescribing information—Xyrem, revision of Dec. 2012.
- Highlights of prescribing information—Stavzor, revision of Jul. 2008.
- Lithium Carbonate Tablets USP package insert—revision of Oct. 2011.
- Xyrem Annex I Summary of Product Characteristics.
- Xyrem prescribing information, revised 9, 2016 (post-published).
- Scrima et al., "Effects of gamma-hydroxybutyrate on a patient with obstructive sleep apnea," *Sleep Research*, 16, 1987.
- Highlights of prescribing information—Codeine sulfate tablets for oral use, 1950.
- Rumigny et al., "Evidence that a specific succinic semialdehyde reductase is responsible for gamma-hydroxybutyrate synthesis in brain tissue slices," *FEBS Letters*, 134(1), 1981.
- Approval package NDA 21-196/S-019, Apr. 2014.
- Patentee Jazz Pharmaceuticals Ireland Limited's Reply to the Notices of Opposition against EP 3,335,708 B1, filed Apr. 6, 2021, 37 pages.
- Naito et al., Suppression of sleep by prostaglandin synthesis inhibitors in unrestrained rats, *Brain Res.*, 1988, vol. 453, pp. 329-336.

U.S. Patent

Feb. 22, 2022

Sheet 1 of 10

US 11,253,494 B2

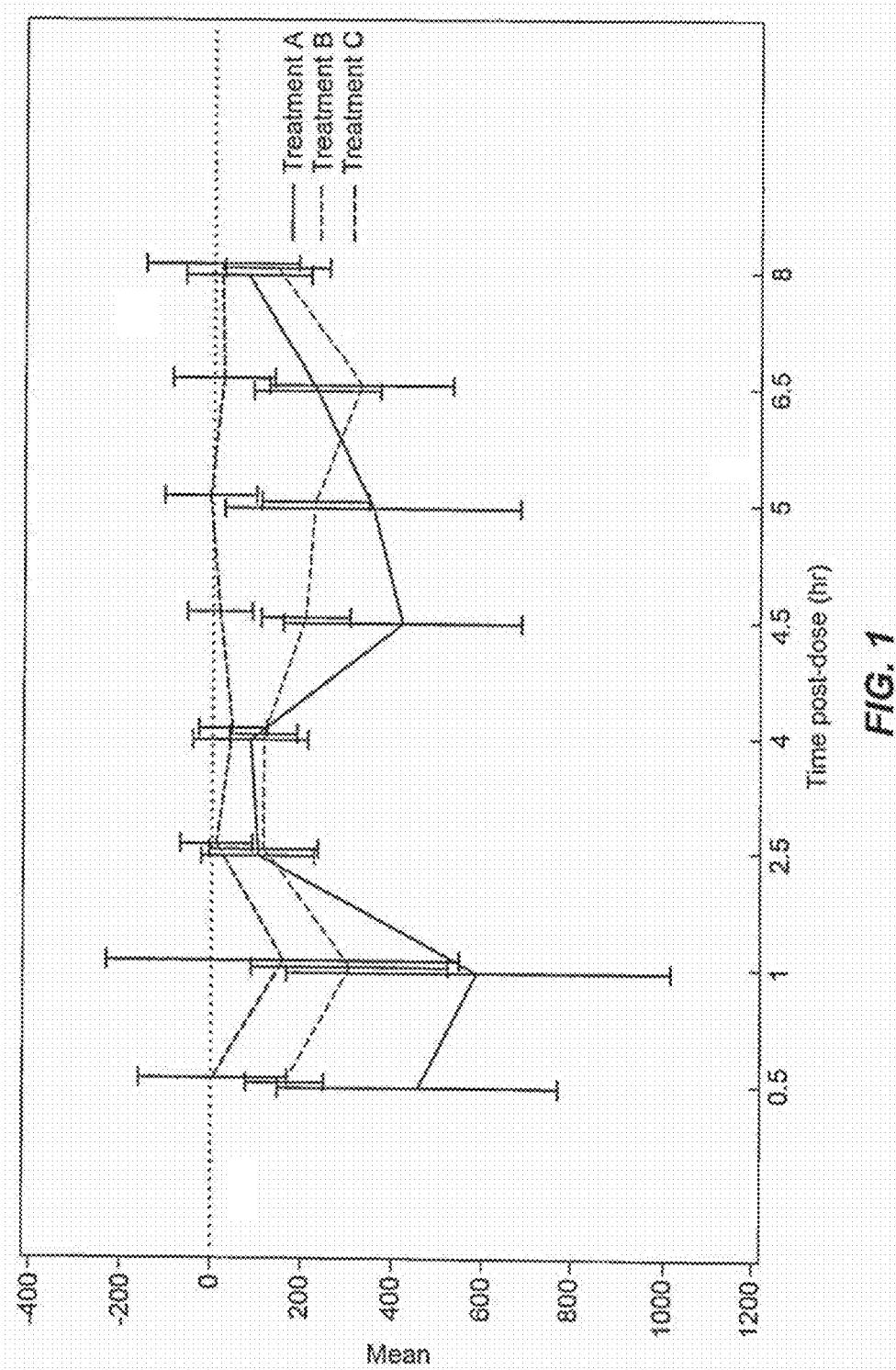


FIG. 1

U.S. Patent

Feb. 22, 2022

Sheet 2 of 10

US 11,253,494 B2

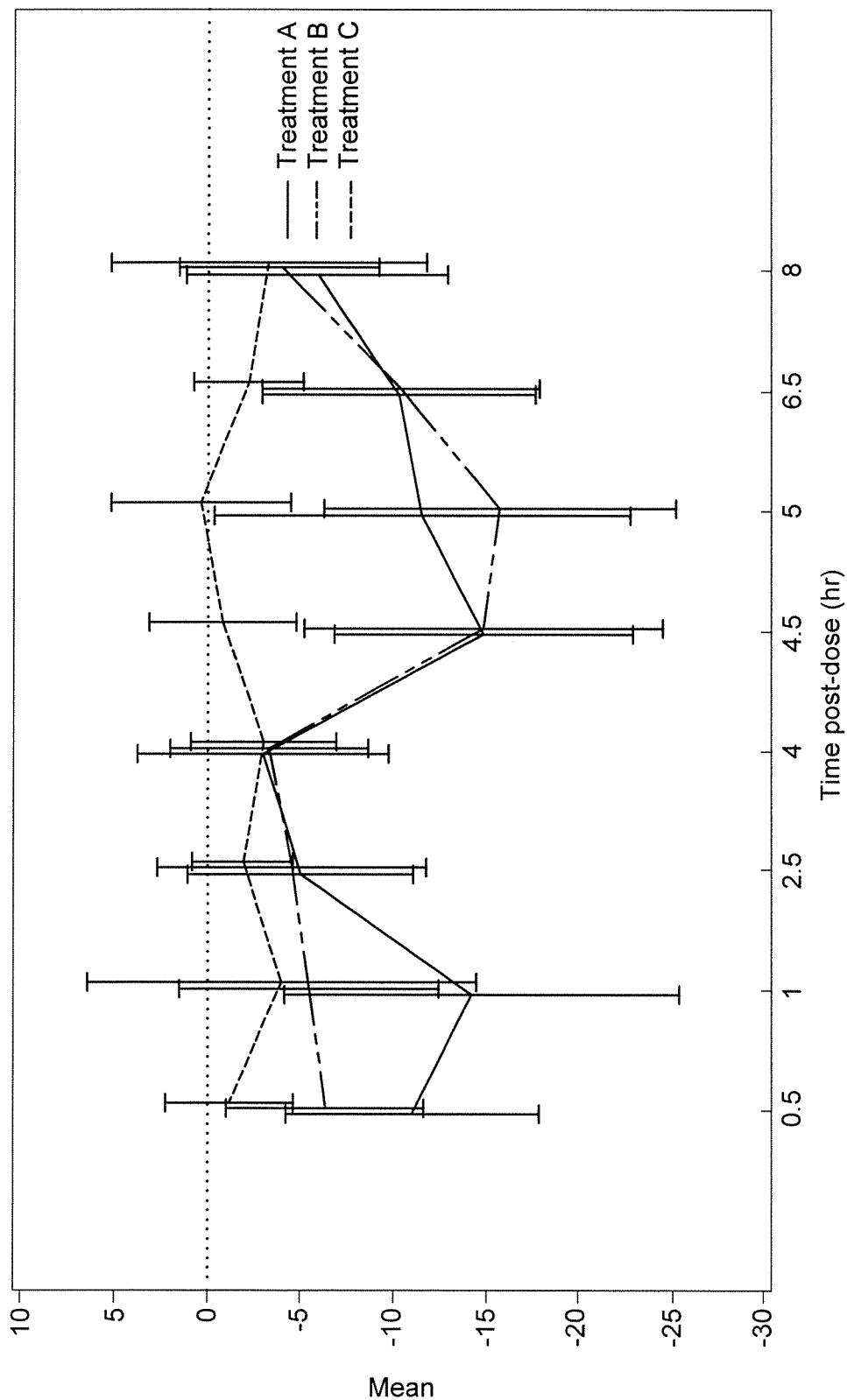


FIG. 2

U.S. Patent

Feb. 22, 2022

Sheet 3 of 10

US 11,253,494 B2

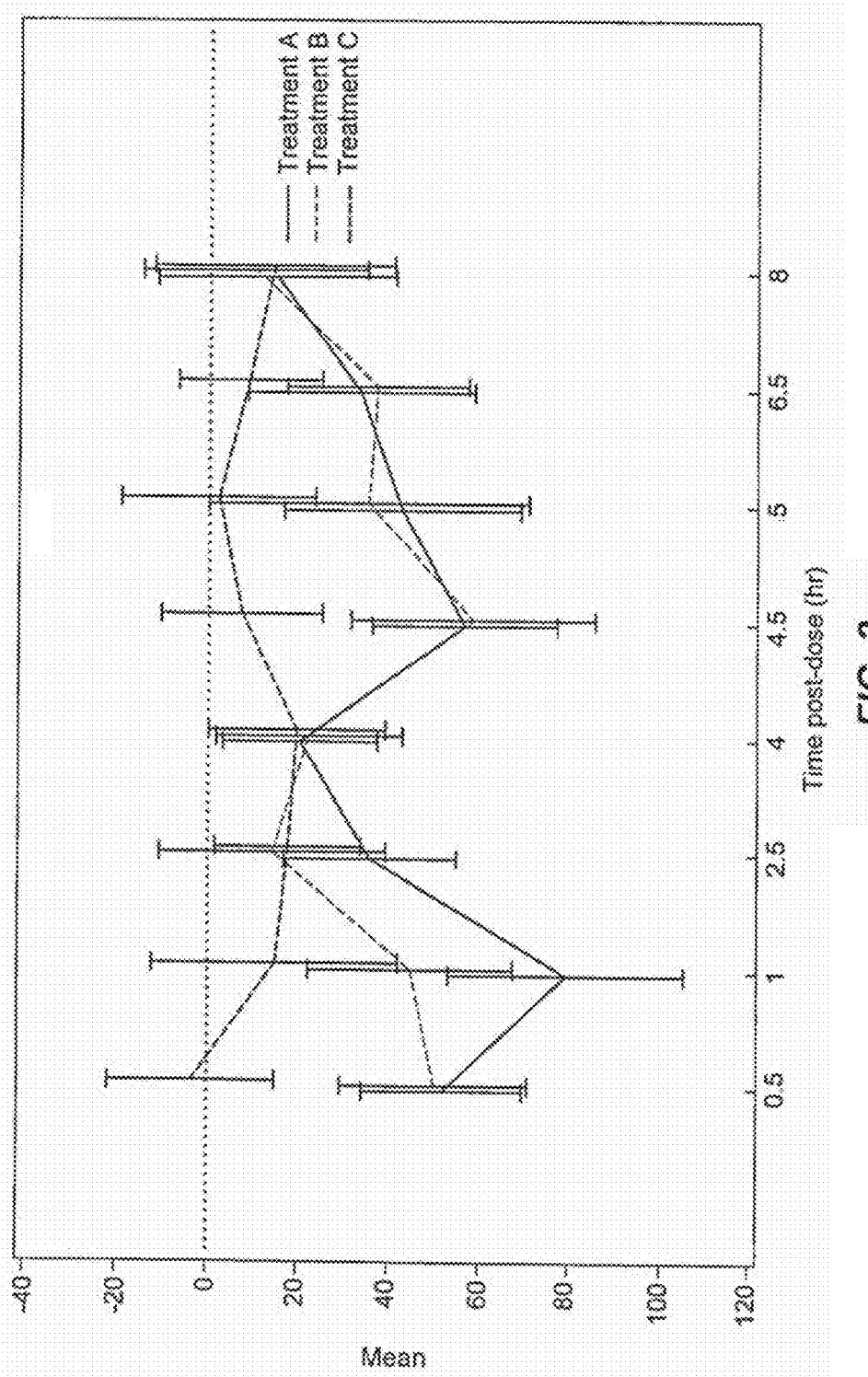


FIG. 3

U.S. Patent

Feb. 22, 2022

Sheet 4 of 10

US 11,253,494 B2

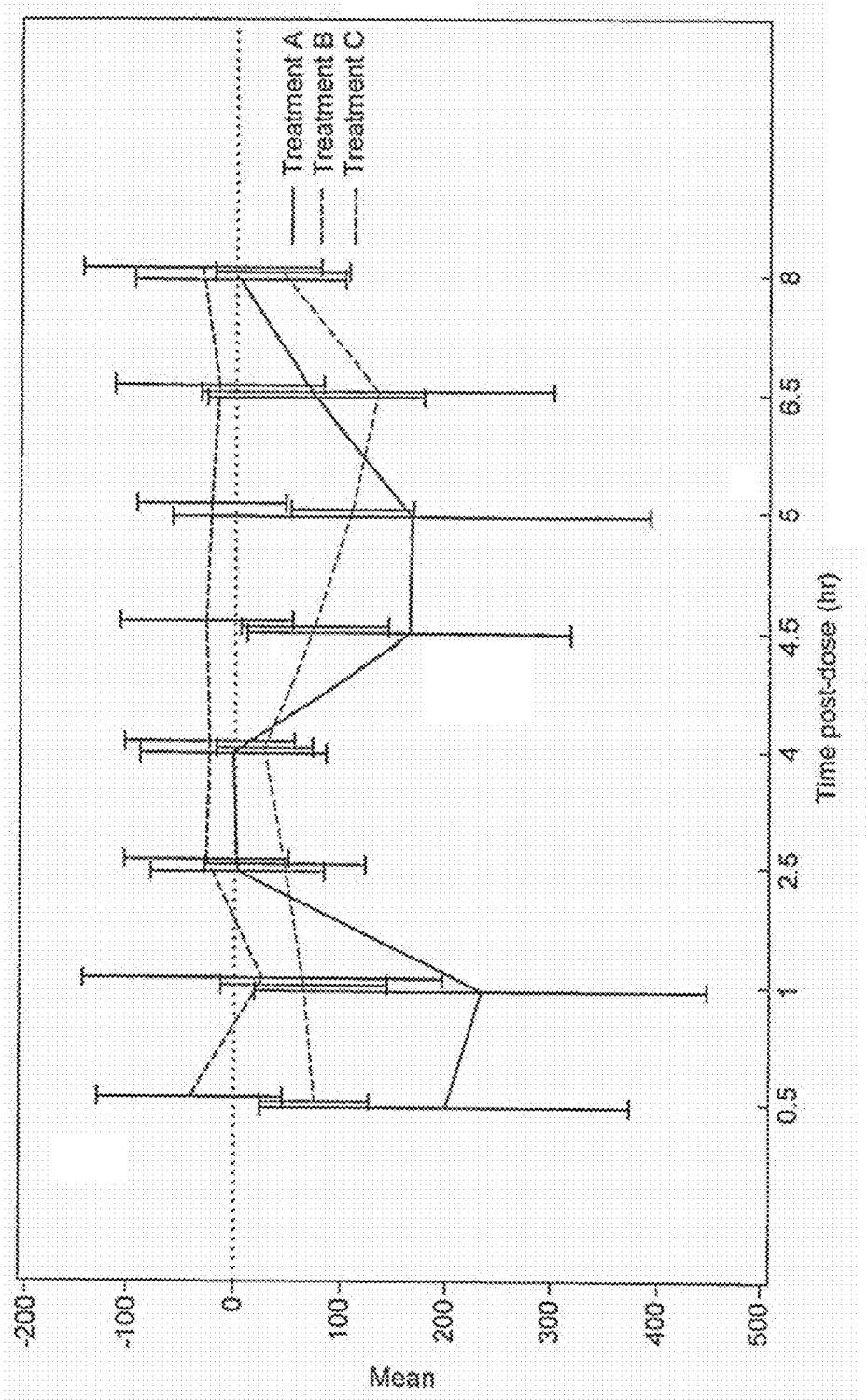


FIG. 4

U.S. Patent

Feb. 22, 2022

Sheet 5 of 10

US 11,253,494 B2

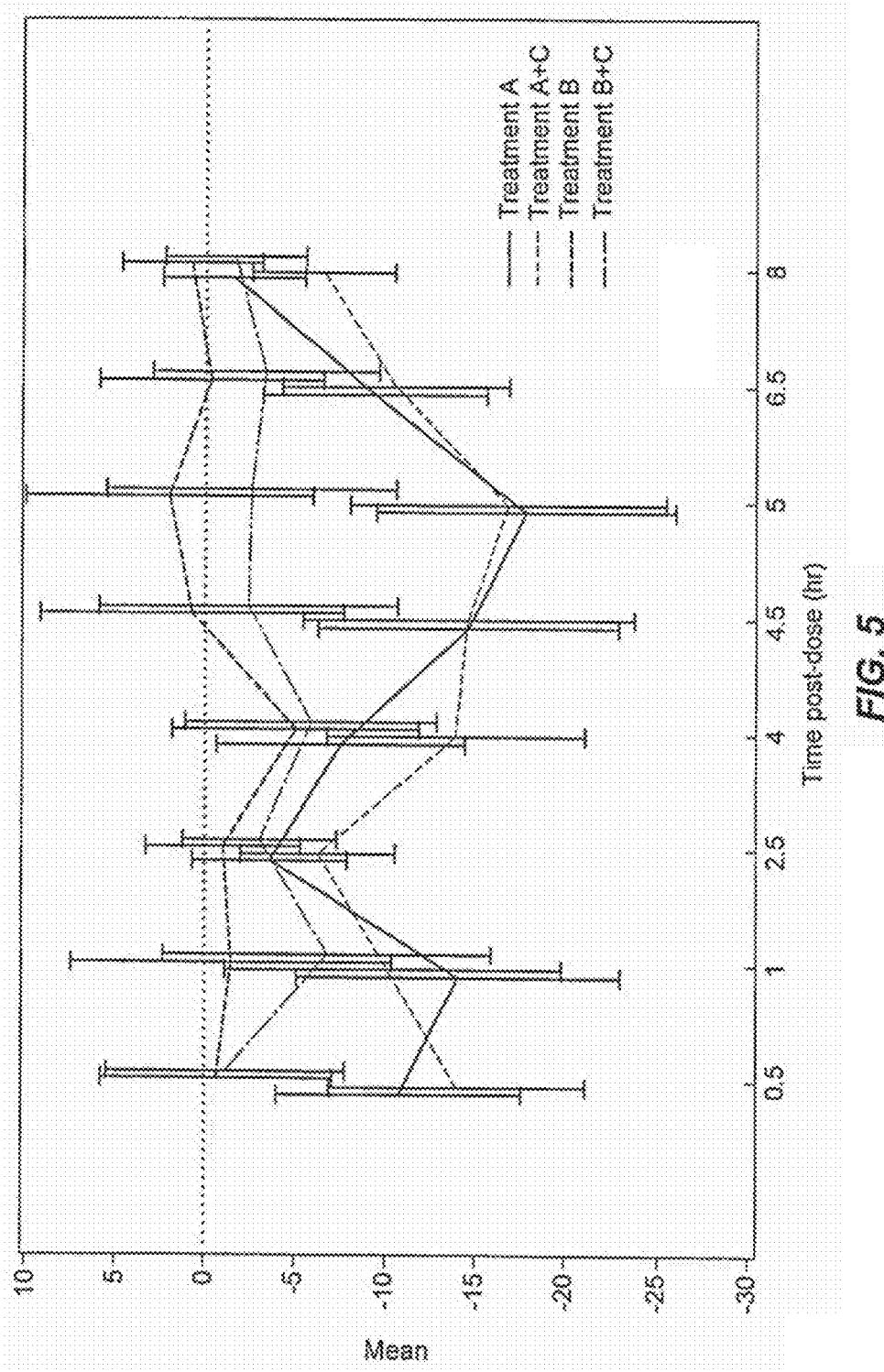


FIG. 5

U.S. Patent

Feb. 22, 2022

Sheet 6 of 10

US 11,253,494 B2

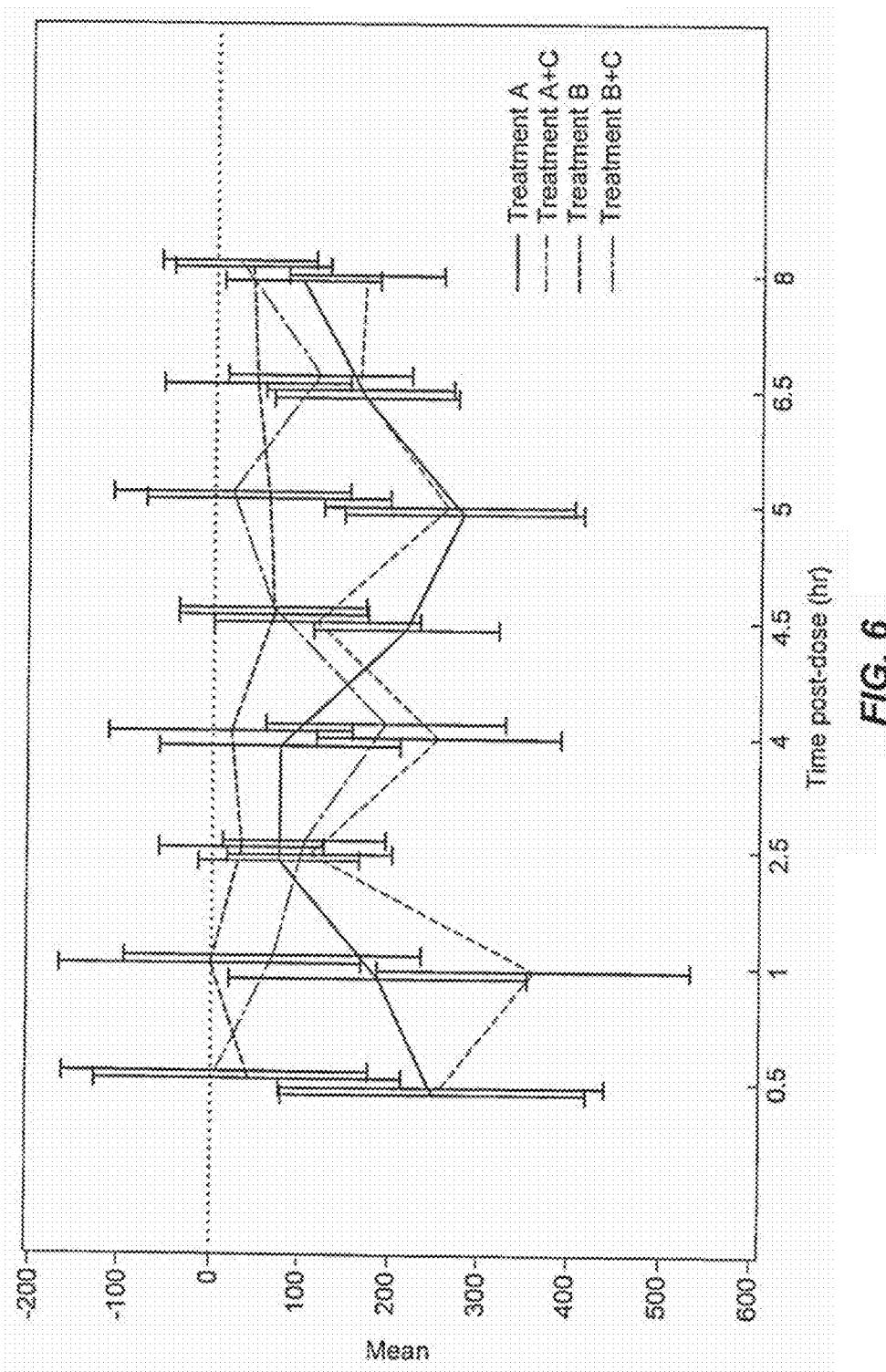


FIG. 6

U.S. Patent

Feb. 22, 2022

Sheet 7 of 10

US 11,253,494 B2

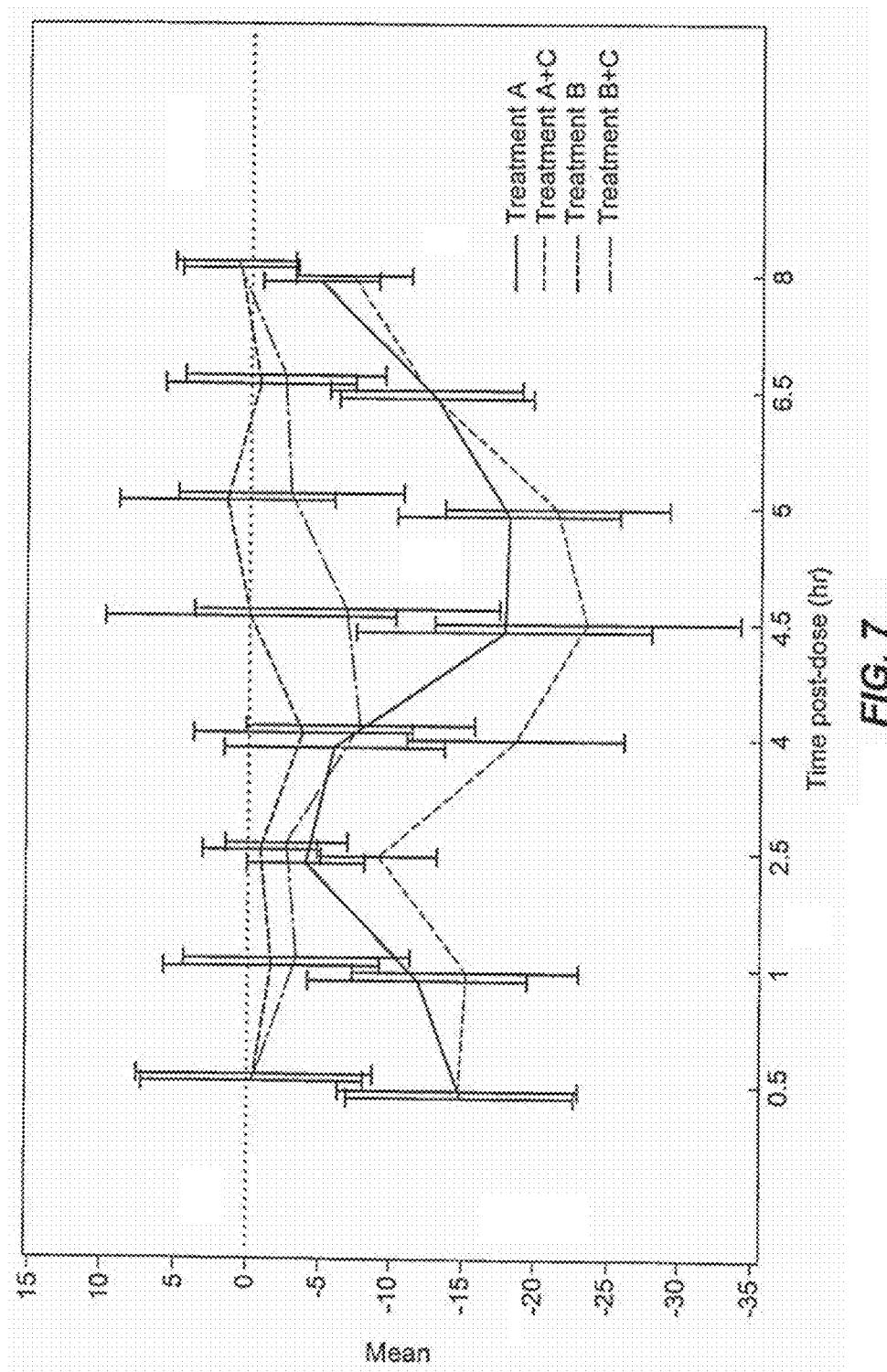


FIG. 7

U.S. Patent

Feb. 22, 2022

Sheet 8 of 10

US 11,253,494 B2

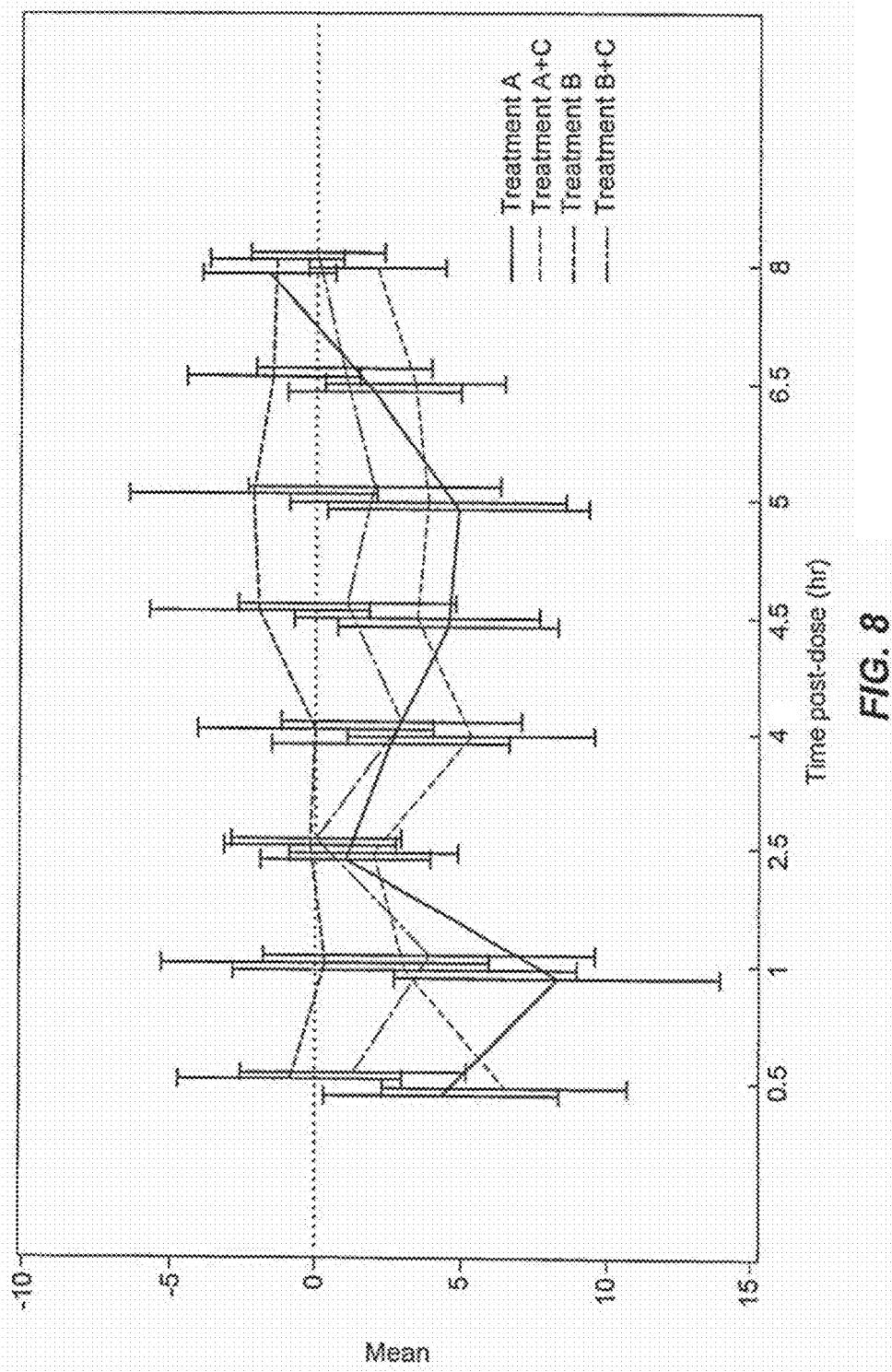


FIG. 8

U.S. Patent

Feb. 22, 2022

Sheet 9 of 10

US 11,253,494 B2

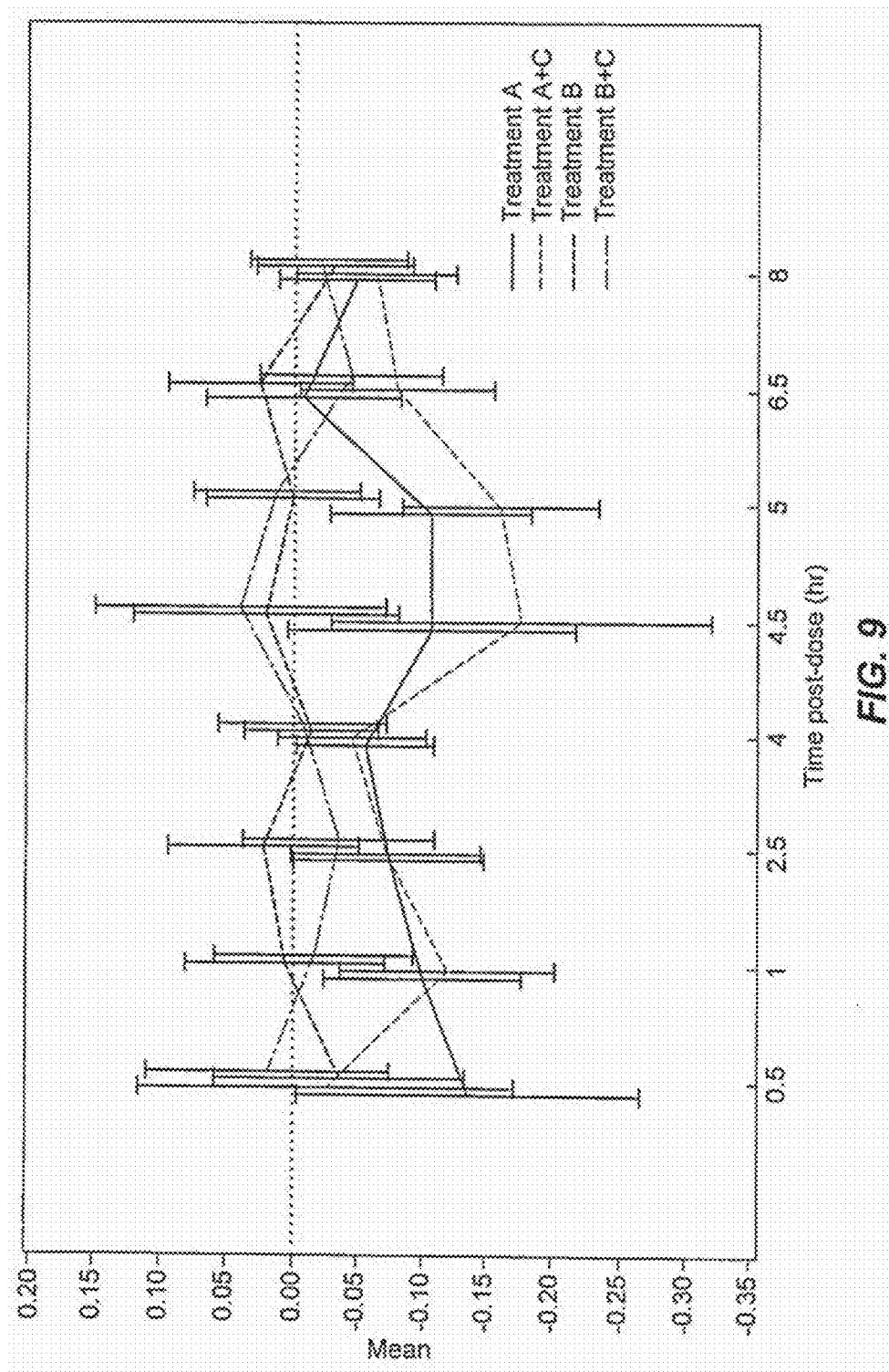


FIG. 9

U.S. Patent

Feb. 22, 2022

Sheet 10 of 10

US 11,253,494 B2

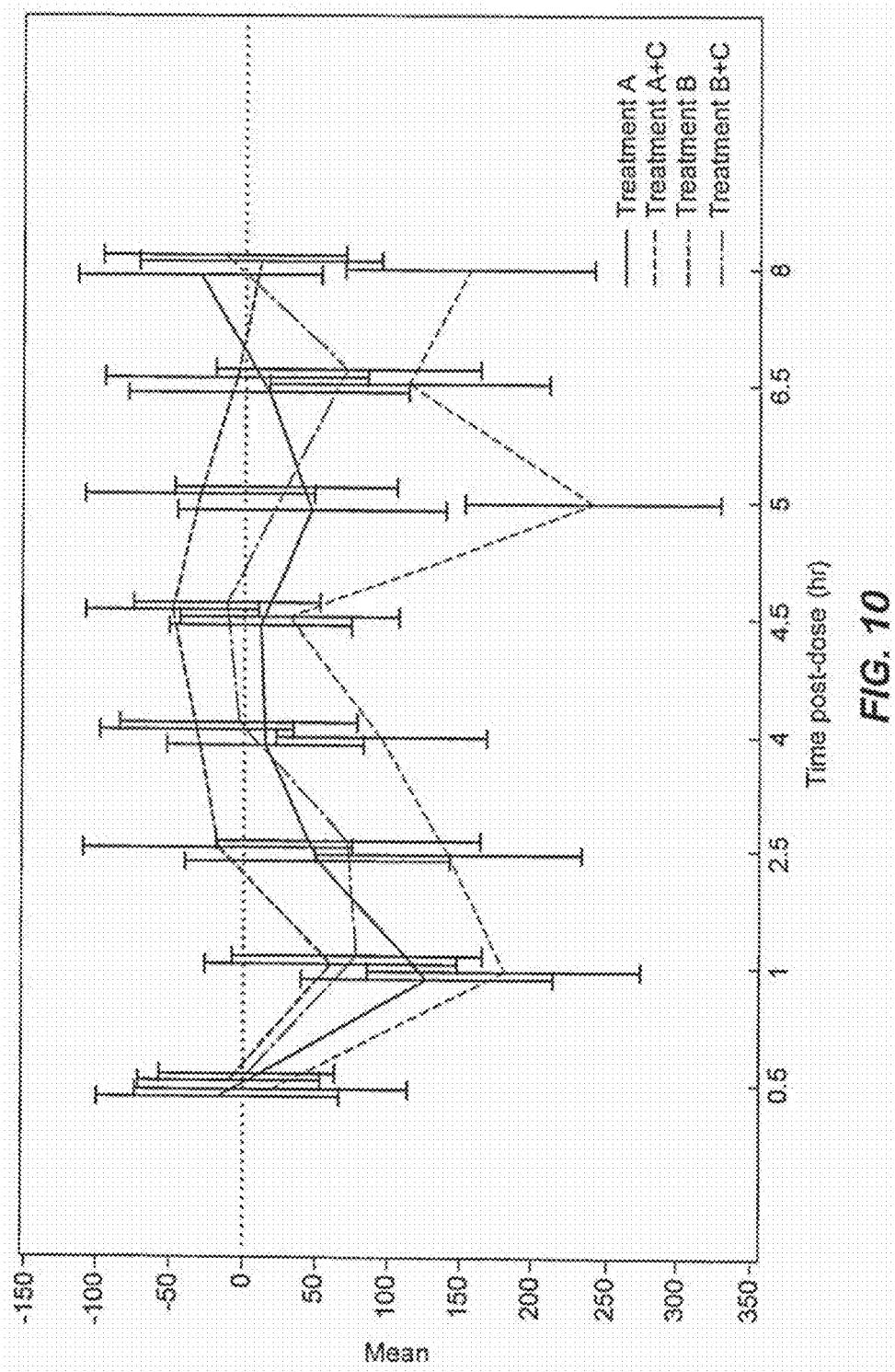


FIG. 10

US 11,253,494 B2

1

**METHOD OF ADMINISTRATION OF
GAMMA HYDROXYBUTYRATE WITH
MONOCARBOXYLATE TRANSPORTERS**

This application is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 17/094,778, filed Nov. 10, 2020, which is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 16/245,067, filed Jan. 10, 2019, now U.S. Pat. No. 10,864,181, which is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 15/869,792, filed Jan. 12, 2018, now U.S. Pat. No. 10,213,400, which is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 15/343,806, filed Nov. 4, 2016, now abandoned, which is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 14/707,914, filed on May 8, 2015, now U.S. Pat. No. 9,486,426, which is a continuation application of U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/837,714, filed Mar. 15, 2013, now U.S. Pat. No. 9,050,302, which claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/771,557, filed Mar. 1, 2013, and U.S. Provisional Application No. 61/777,873, filed Mar. 12, 2013, all of which applications are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

BACKGROUND

This application relates to methods for safely administering gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB) together with one or more other monocarboxylate transporter (MCT) inhibitors for therapeutic purposes. Example transporter inhibitors are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof, comprising: orally administering to the patient in need of treatment, an adjusted dosage amount of the salt of GHB when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of valproate. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced at least about 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the amount of GHB is reduced at least about 10% and about 30% of the normal administration and the daily administration of the GHB salt is between 1 gram and 10 grams. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the ranges of about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 45%, or about 45% or 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is reduced between the range of about 1% to 50%, about 1% to 45%, about 1% to 40%, about 1% to 35%, about 1% to 30%, about 1% to 25%, about 1% to 20%, about 1% to 15%, about 1% to 10%, about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 50%, about 5% to 45%, about 5% to 40%, about 5% to 35%, about 5% to 30%, about 5% to 25%, about 5% to 20%, about 5% to 15%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 50%, about 10% to 45%, about 10% to 40%, about 10% to 35%, about 10% to 30%, about 10% to 25%, about 10% to 20%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to 45%, about 15% to 40%, about 15% to 35%, about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 20% to 20%, about 20% to 15%, about 20% to 10%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%, about 25% to 30%, about 25% to 25%, about 25% to 20%, about 25% to 15%, about 25% to 10%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 50%, about 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. See the product insert for normal dose ranges of GHB as sold by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. GHB is commercially known as Xyrem®.

2

about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 35% to 50%, about 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient.

Another embodiment of the invention is a method of safely administering GHB a salt thereof for excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising: determining if the patient is has taken, or will take a concomitant dose of valproate; orally administering a reduced amount of the GHB or GHB salt to the patient compared to the normal dose so as to diminish the additive effects of the GHB or GHB salt when administered with valproate. The amount of GHB is reduced at least 10% to 30%, or at least +15% of the normal administration.

One embodiment of the present invention is a method for

25 treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with GHB or a salt thereof, comprising: orally administering to the patient 30 in need of treatment, an adjusted dosage amount of the salt of GHB when the patient is receiving a concomitant administration of diclofenac. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is at least about 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% higher than the normal dose 35 of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the increased amount of GHB is at least about 15% more than the normal administration and the daily administration of the GHB salt is between 1 gram and 10 grams. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is 40 increased between the range of about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 20%, about 20% to 25%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 45%, or about 45% or 50%, relative 45 to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. In certain embodiments, the adjusted amount is increased between the range of about 1% to 50%, about 1% to 45%, about 1% to 40%, about 1% to 35%, about 1% to 30%, about 1% to 25%, about 1% to 20%, about 1% to 15%, about 1% to 10%, about 1% to 5%, about 5% to 50%, about 5% to 45%, about 5% to 40%, about 5% to 35%, about 5% to 30%, about 5% to 25%, about 5% to 20%, about 5% to 15%, about 5% to 10%, about 10% to 50%, about 10% to 45%, about 10% to 40%, about 10% to 35%, about 10% to 30%, about 10% to 25%, about 10% to 20%, about 10% to 15%, about 15% to 50%, about 15% to 45%, about 15% to 40%, about 15% to 35%, about 15% to 30%, about 15% to 25%, about 15% to 20%, about 15% to 15%, about 15% to 10%, about 20% to 50%, about 20% to 45%, about 20% to 40%, about 20% to 35%, about 20% to 30%, about 20% to 25%, about 20% to 20%, about 20% to 15%, about 20% to 10%, about 25% to 50%, about 25% to 45%, about 25% to 40%, about 25% to 35%, about 25% to 30%, about 30% to 50%, about 30% to 45%, about 30% to 40%, about 30% to 35%, about 35% to 50%, about 35% to 45%, about 35% to 40%, about 40% to 50%, relative to the normal dose of the salt of GHB normally given to the patient. See the product insert for normal dose ranges of GHB as sold by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. GHB is commercially known as Xyrem®.

30 35 40 45 50 55 60 65 70 75 80 85 90 95 100 105 110 115 120 125 130 135 140 145 150 155 160 165 170 175 180 185 190 195 200 205 210 215 220 225 230 235 240 245 250 255 260 265 270 275 280 285 290 295 300 305 310 315 320 325 330 335 340 345 350 355 360 365 370 375 380 385 390 395 400 405 410 415 420 425 430 435 440 445 450 455 460 465 470 475 480 485 490 495 500 505 510 515 520 525 530 535 540 545 550 555 560 565 570 575 580 585 590 595 600 605 610 615 620 625 630 635 640 645 650 655 660 665 670 675 680 685 690 695 700 705 710 715 720 725 730 735 740 745 750 755 760 765 770 775 780 785 790 795 800 805 810 815 820 825 830 835 840 845 850 855 860 865 870 875 880 885 890 895 900 905 910 915 920 925 930 935 940 945 950 955 960 965 970 975 980 985 990 995 1000 1005 1010 1015 1020 1025 1030 1035 1040 1045 1050 1055 1060 1065 1070 1075 1080 1085 1090 1095 1100 1105 1110 1115 1120 1125 1130 1135 1140 1145 1150 1155 1160 1165 1170 1175 1180 1185 1190 1195 1200 1205 1210 1215 1220 1225 1230 1235 1240 1245 1250 1255 1260 1265 1270 1275 1280 1285 1290 1295 1300 1305 1310 1315 1320 1325 1330 1335 1340 1345 1350 1355 1360 1365 1370 1375 1380 1385 1390 1395 1400 1405 1410 1415 1420 1425 1430 1435 1440 1445 1450 1455 1460 1465 1470 1475 1480 1485 1490 1495 1500 1505 1510 1515 1520 1525 1530 1535 1540 1545 1550 1555 1560 1565 1570 1575 1580 1585 1590 1595 1600 1605 1610 1615 1620 1625 1630 1635 1640 1645 1650 1655 1660 1665 1670 1675 1680 1685 1690 1695 1700 1705 1710 1715 1720 1725 1730 1735 1740 1745 1750 1755 1760 1765 1770 1775 1780 1785 1790 1795 1800 1805 1810 1815 1820 1825 1830 1835 1840 1845 1850 1855 1860 1865 1870 1875 1880 1885 1890 1895 1900 1905 1910 1915 1920 1925 1930 1935 1940 1945 1950 1955 1960 1965 1970 1975 1980 1985 1990 1995 2000 2005 2010 2015 2020 2025 2030 2035 2040 2045 2050 2055 2060 2065 2070 2075 2080 2085 2090 2095 2100 2105 2110 2115 2120 2125 2130 2135 2140 2145 2150 2155 2160 2165 2170 2175 2180 2185 2190 2195 2200 2205 2210 2215 2220 2225 2230 2235 2240 2245 2250 2255 2260 2265 2270 2275 2280 2285 2290 2295 2300 2305 2310 2315 2320 2325 2330 2335 2340 2345 2350 2355 2360 2365 2370 2375 2380 2385 2390 2395 2400 2405 2410 2415 2420 2425 2430 2435 2440 2445 2450 2455 2460 2465 2470 2475 2480 2485 2490 2495 2500 2505 2510 2515 2520 2525 2530 2535 2540 2545 2550 2555 2560 2565 2570 2575 2580 2585 2590 2595 2600 2605 2610 2615 2620 2625 2630 2635 2640 2645 2650 2655 2660 2665 2670 2675 2680 2685 2690 2695 2700 2705 2710 2715 2720 2725 2730 2735 2740 2745 2750 2755 2760 2765 2770 2775 2780 2785 2790 2795 2800 2805 2810 2815 2820 2825 2830 2835 2840 2845 2850 2855 2860 2865 2870 2875 2880 2885 2890 2895 2900 2905 2910 2915 2920 2925 2930 2935 2940 2945 2950 2955 2960 2965 2970 2975 2980 2985 2990 2995 3000 3005 3010 3015 3020 3025 3030 3035 3040 3045 3050 3055 3060 3065 3070 3075 3080 3085 3090 3095 3100 3105 3110 3115 3120 3125 3130 3135 3140 3145 3150 3155 3160 3165 3170 3175 3180 3185 3190 3195 3200 3205 3210 3215 3220 3225 3230 3235 3240 3245 3250 3255 3260 3265 3270 3275 3280 3285 3290 3295 3300 3305 3310 3315 3320 3325 3330 3335 3340 3345 3350 3355 3360 3365 3370 3375 3380 3385 3390 3395 3400 3405 3410 3415 3420 3425 3430 3435 3440 3445 3450 3455 3460 3465 3470 3475 3480 3485 3490 3495 3500 3505 3510 3515 3520 3525 3530 3535 3540 3545 3550 3555 3560 3565 3570 3575 3580 3585 3590 3595 3600 3605 3610 3615 3620 3625 3630 3635 3640 3645 3650 3655 3660 3665 3670 3675 3680 3685 3690 3695 3700 3705 3710 3715 3720 3725 3730 3735 3740 3745 3750 3755 3760 3765 3770 3775 3780 3785 3790 3795 3800 3805 3810 3815 3820 3825 3830 3835 3840 3845 3850 3855 3860 3865 3870 3875 3880 3885 3890 3895 3900 3905 3910 3915 3920 3925 3930 3935 3940 3945 3950 3955 3960 3965 3970 3975 3980 3985 3990 3995 4000 4005 4010 4015 4020 4025 4030 4035 4040 4045 4050 4055 4060 4065 4070 4075 4080 4085 4090 4095 4100 4105 4110 4115 4120 4125 4130 4135 4140 4145 4150 4155 4160 4165 4170 4175 4180 4185 4190 4195 4200 4205 4210 4215 4220 4225 4230 4235 4240 4245 4250 4255 4260 4265 4270 4275 4280 4285 4290 4295 4300 4305 4310 4315 4320 4325 4330 4335 4340 4345 4350 4355 4360 4365 4370 4375 4380 4385 4390 4395 4400 4405 4410 4415 4420 4425 4430 4435 4440 4445 4450 4455 4460 4465 4470 4475 4480 4485 4490 4495 4500 4505 4510 4515 4520 4525 4530 4535 4540 4545 4550 4555 4560 4565 4570 4575 4580 4585 4590 4595 4600 4605 4610 4615 4620 4625 4630 4635 4640 4645 4650 4655 4660 4665 4670 4675 4680 4685 4690 4695 4700 4705 4710 4715 4720 4725 4730 4735 4740 4745 4750 4755 4760 4765 4770 4775 4780 4785 4790 4795 4800 4805 4810 4815 4820 4825 4830 4835 4840 4845 4850 4855 4860 4865 4870 4875 4880 4885 4890 4895 4900 4905 4910 4915 4920 4925 4930 4935 4940 4945 4950 4955 4960 4965 4970 4975 4980 4985 4990 4995 5000 5005 5010 5015 5020 5025 5030 5035 5040 5045 5050 5055 5060 5065 5070 5075 5080 5085 5090 5095 5100 5105 5110 5115 5120 5125 5130 5135 5140 5145 5150 5155 5160 5165 5170 5175 5180 5185 5190 5195 5200 5205 5210 5215 5220 5225 5230 5235 5240 5245 5250 5255 5260 5265 5270 5275 5280 5285 5290 5295 5300 5305 5310 5315 5320 5325 5330 5335 5340 5345 5350 5355 5360 5365 5370 5375 5380 5385 5390 5395 5400 5405 5410 5415 5420 5425 5430 5435 5440 5445 5450 5455 5460 5465 5470 5475 5480 5485 5490 5495 5500 5505 5510 5515 5520 5525 5530 5535 5540 5545 5550 5555 5560 5565 5570 5575 5580 5585 5590 5595 5600 5605 5610 5615 5620 5625 5630 5635 5640 5645 5650 5655 5660 5665 5670 5675 5680 5685 5690 5695 5700 5705 5710 5715 5720 5725 5730 5735 5740 5745 5750 5755 5760 5765 5770 5775 5780 5785 5790 5795 5800 5805 5810 5815 5820 5825 5830 5835 5840 5845 5850 5855 5860 5865 5870 5875 5880 5885 5890 5895 5900 5905 5910 5915 5920 5925 5930 5935 5940 5945 5950 5955 5960 5965 5970 5975 5980 5985 5990 5995 6000 6005 6010 6015 6020 6025 6030 6035 6040 6045 6050 6055 6060 6065 6070 6075 6080 6085 6090 6095 6100 6105 6110 6115 6120 6125 6130 6135 6140 6145 6150 6155 6160 6165 6170 6175 6180 6185 6190 6195 6200 6205 6210 6215 6220 6225 6230 6235 6240 6245 6250 6255 6260 6265 6270 6275 6280 6285 6290 6295 6300 6305 6310 6315 6320 6325 6330 6335 6340 6345 6350 6355 6360 6365 6370 6375 6380 6385 6390 6395 6400 6405 6410 6415 6420 6425 6430 6435 6440 6445 6450 6455 6460 6465 6470 6475 6480 6485 6490 6495 6500 6505 6510 6515 6520 6525 6530 6535 6540 6545 6550 6555 6560 6565 6570 6575 6580 6585 6590 6595 6600 6605 6610 6615 6620 6625 6630 6635 6640 6645 6650 6655 6660 6665 6670 6675 6680 6685 6690 6695 6700 6705 6710 6715 6720 6725 6730 6735 6740 6745 6750 6755 6760 6765 6770 6775 6780 6785 6790 6795 6800 6805 6810 6815 6820 6825 6830 6835 6840 6845 6850 6855 6860 6865 6870 6875 6880 6885 6890 6895 6900 6905 6910 6915 6920 6925 6930 6935 6940 6945 6950 6955 6960 6965 6970 6975 6980 6985 6990 6995 7000 7005 7010 7015 7020 7025 7030 7035 7040 7045 7050 7055 7060 7065 7070 7075 7080 7085 7090 7095 7100 7105 7110 7115 7120 7125 7130 7135 7140 7145 7150 7155 7160 7165 7170 7175 7180 7185 7190 7195 7200 7205 7210 7215 7220 7225 7230 7235 7240 7245 7250 7255 7260 7265 7270 7275 7280 7285 7290 7295 7300 7305 7310 7315 7320 7325 7330 7335 7340 7345 7350 7355 7360 7365 7370 7375 7380 7385 7390 7395 7400 7405 7410 7415 7420 7425 7430 7435 7440 7445 7450 7455 7460 7465 7470 7475 7480 7485 7490 7495 7500 7505 7510 7515 7520 7525 7530 7535 7540 7545 7550 7555 7560 7565 7570 7575 7580 7585 7590 7595 7600 7605 7610 7615 7620 7625 7630 7635 7640 7645 7650 7655 7660 7665 7670 7675 7680 7685 7690 7695 7700 7705 7710 7715 7720 7725 7730 7735 7740 7745 7750 7755 7760 7765 7770 7775 7780 7785 7790 7795 7800 7805 7810 7815 7820 7825 7830 7835 7840 7845 7850 7855 7860 7865 7870 7875 7880 7885 7890 7895 7900 7905 7910 7915 7920 7925 7930 7935 7940 7945 7950 7955 7960 7965 7970 7975 7980 7985 7990 7995 8000 8005 8010 8015 8020 8025 8030 8035 8040 8045 8050 8055 8060 8065 8070 8075 8080 8085 8090 8095 8100 8105 8110 8115 8120 8125 8130 8135 8140 8145

US 11,253,494 B2

3

In another embodiment, the invention is a method of safely administering a GHB salt for excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus in a human patient, comprising: determining if the patient has taken, or will take a concomitant dose of diclofenac; orally administering an increased amount of a GHB salt to the patient so as to compensate for the effects of diclofenac on the GHB salt when concomitantly administered.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy wherein said patient is currently taking or has been prescribed GHB or a salt thereof, comprising determining if the patient is taking or has also been prescribed valproate or diclofenac; and adjusting the dose of the GHB or GHB salt to compensate for the effect caused by valproate or diclofenac. In certain embodiments, the method additionally comprises administering the adjusted dose to the patient.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma GHB, wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate additive effects.

The embodiments of the present invention can administer the GHB at a level of between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day. The concentration of the formulation can be between 350-750 mg/ml or 450-550 mg/ml and a pH between 6-10 or 6.5-8.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a salt of GHB or a salt thereof to a patient or determining whether the patient is currently on a GHB drug regimen; determining if the patient is also being administered ibuprofen; and advising a patient to cease or ceasing the administration of ibuprofen. In some embodiments, patients benefitting from this directive when the patient has will have a renal impairment.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered valproate; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of valproate and GHB; and reducing the dose of the GHB or GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by valproate. Another embodiment of the present invention is a method for treating a patient who is suffering from narcolepsy, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of a formulation containing GHB or a salt thereof to a patient at a concentration of between 450 and 550 mg/ml and a pH between 6 and 8, said formulation being administered before bed and 1-2 hours thereafter; determining if the patient is also being administered diclofenac; warning of a potential drug/drug interaction due to the combination of diclofenac and the GHB salt; and increasing the dose of the GHB salt at least 15% to compensate for the effect caused by diclofenac.

4

In each of the embodiments of the invention the method includes administering GHB at between 1 and 4.5 grams/day or between 6 and 10 grams/day and at a concentration of between 350-750 or 450-550 mg/ml, and a pH between 6-10 or between 6.5-8. In further embodiments the valproate or diclofenac is administered within three days, one or two weeks (before or after) of GHB administration. In another embodiment, the present invention is a method wherein aspirin is also administered to the patient, especially with valproate.

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB as a single salt or a mixture of salts of GHB selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂).

In a further embodiment the method can include administering GHB to a patient suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, comprising: administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to the patient; determining if the patient has concomitant administration of an MCT inhibitor; and adjusting the GHB dose or ceasing administering of the MCT inhibitor to maintain the effect of the GHB.

In any of the versions of the invention, the methods optionally further include administering aspirin to the patient.

In a further embodiment the method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof comprises administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while avoiding concomitant of a diclofenac or valproate.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a method of administering GHB or a salt thereof (GHB) to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of diclofenac, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB or a GHB salt per day while avoiding diclofenac concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that diclofenac should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with diclofenac can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being treated with diclofenac is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in an decrease in exposure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

Another embodiment of the invention comprises a administering GHB to a patient with narcolepsy, wherein said patient is also in need of valproate, comprising administering to the patient a daily dosage of between 6 g and 10 g GHB per day while avoiding valproate concomitant administration, and any one or more of the following: (a) advising the patient that valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB with valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (d) advising the patient that use of GHB in patients being treated with valproate is contraindicated, (e) advising the patient that concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in expo-

US 11,253,494 B2

5

sure to GHB, or (f) advising the patient that MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

In another embodiment, the present invention is a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management system to dispense information concerning the risks associated with ingesting a MCT inhibitor concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; providing said pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and authorizing distribution of said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The method may also comprise including an electronic or written alert, which can explain the risks, to employees to dispense said information with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Also, the information can be dispensed when a subject refills said prescription. The warnings would be as recited above.

The methods of the present invention may include a warning for patients not to operate hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely and not to engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Any information dispensed with said drug advises patients of the potential for enhanced potency of said drug if said patients also take valproate or advises patients of the potential for decreased potency of said drug if said patients also take diclofenac.

Another embodiment of the present invention is a method of administering GHB to a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to the patient a therapeutically effective amount of GHB while avoiding concomitant administration of diclofenac or valproate.

The invention may also comprise a method for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that the toxic effects of GHB are reduced. It may also comprise a method for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population). Treatment A=diclofenac placebo+Xyrem®. Treatment B=diclofenac+Xyrem®. Treatment C=diclofenac+Xyrem® placebo.

FIG. 2 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 3 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 4 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

FIG. 5 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population). Treatment A=Xyrem®. Treatment B=Xyrem® placebo. Treatment C=valproate.

6

FIG. 6 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

FIG. 7 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

FIG. 8 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

FIG. 9 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

FIG. 10 shows change from baseline figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The following patents and applications are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties for all purposes: U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,472,431, 6,780,889, 7,262,219, 7,851,506, 8,263,650, 8,324,275; 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 61/317,212, Ser. Nos. 13/071,369, 13/739,886, 12/264,709, PCT/US2010/033572, PCT/US2009/061312, 2009/0137565; and 2012/0076865. The following patents are also incorporated by reference: U.S. Pat. Nos. 5,380,937; 4,393,236 German Patent DD 237,309 A1; and British Pat. No. 922,029.

Objects, features and advantages of the methods and compositions described herein will become apparent from the following detailed description. It should be understood, however, that the detailed description and the specific examples, while indicating specific embodiments, are given by way of illustration only, since various changes and modifications within the spirit and scope of the invention will become apparent to those skilled in the art from this detailed description.

The following references, to the extent that they provide exemplary procedural or other details supplementary to those set forth herein, are specifically incorporated herein by reference.

Arena and Fung, "Absorption of sodium .gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and its prodrug .gamma.-butyrolactone: relationship between in vitro transport and in vivo absorption," J. Pharmaceutical Sciences, 69(3):356-358, 1980.

Bedard, Montplaisir, Godbout, Lapierre, "Nocturnal .gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate—Effect on Periodic Leg Movements and Sleep Organization of Narcoleptic Patients," 12(1):29-36, 1989.

Broughton and Mamelak, "The treatment of narcolepsy-cataplexy with nocturnal gamma-hydroxybutyrate," Le Journal Canadien Des Sciences Neurologiques. 6(1):1-6, 1979.

Ferrara, Zotti, Tedeschi, Frison, Castagna, Gessa and Gallimberti, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in the treatment of alcohol dependent," Clin. Neuropharm., 15(1, PtA): 303A-304A, 1992.

Gessa, Diana, Fadda, Colombo, "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) for treatment of ethanol dependence," Clin. Neuropharm.—Supplement, 1992. Gessa et al., Clin. Neuropharm., 15(supp.):303A-304A, 1992

Gessa et al., Internat. Clin. Psychopharm., 1994. Hasenbos and Gieien, "Anaesthesia for bullectomy," Anaesthesia, 40:977-980, 1985.

Laborit, "Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate, Succinic Semi aldehyde and Sleep," Laboratoire d'Eutonologie, Hopital Boucicaut, Paris 15, France, 1973.

US 11,253,494 B2

7

Ladinsky, Consolo, Zatta, Vezzani. "Mode of Action of Gamma-Butyrolactone on the Central Cholinergic System, Naunyn-Schmiedeberg's Arch. Pharmacal., 322:42-48, 1983.

Lammers et al., "Gammahydroxybutyrate and narcolepsy: a double-blind placebo-controlled study," Sleep, 16(3); 216-220, 1993.

Lapierre, Montplaisir, Lamarre, Bedard, "The Effect of Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Nocturnal and Diurnal Sleep of Normal Subjects: Further Considerations on REM Sleep-Triggering Mechanisms," Sleep, 13(1):24-30, 1990.

Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1988. Lapierre et al., "Increases in delta sleep," 1990. Lee, C. R. "Evidence for the .beta.-Oxidation of Orally Administered 4-Hydroxybutyrate in Humans" Biochem. Medicine 17, 284-291, 1977.

Lettieri and Fung, "Improved pharmacological activity via pro-drug modification: comparative pharmacokinetics of sodium gamma.-hydroxybutyrate and gamma.-butyrolactone," Research Communications In Chemical Pathology and Pharmacology. 22(1):107-118. 1978.

Mamelak, 1977; "Effects Of Gamma Hydroxybutyrate On Sleep," Biol. Psychiatry 12, 273-288. Mamelak, "Gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB): An endogenous regulator of energy metabolism," Neuroscience and Biobehav. Reviews, 13: 189-198, 1989.

Mamelak, "Gammahydroxybutyrate: An Endogenous Regulator of Energy Metabolism," Neuro. & Biobehav. Rev., 13 187-198, 1989.

Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak, Escriu, Stokan "The effects of gamma-hydroxybutyrate on sleep," Biol. Psychiatry, 12(2): 273-288. 1977.

Mamelak, Escriu, Stokan, "Sleep-Inducing Effects of Gammahydroxybutyrate," The Lance, p. 328-329. 1973.

Nema, et al., "Excipients and their use in injectable products," PDA J. Pharm. Sci. Technol., 51(4):166-171, 1997.

Palatini, Tedeschi, Frison, Padrini, Zordan, Orlando, Galimberti, Gessa, Ferrara, "Dose dependent absorption and elimination of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid in healthy volunteers," Eur. J. Clin. Pharmacol., 45:353-356, 1993.

Roth and Giarman, ".gamma.-Butyrolactone and .gamma.-Hydroxybutyric Acid-I, Distribution and Metabolism," Biochemical Pharmacology, 15:1333-1348, 1966.

Scharf, Brown, Woods, Brown, Hirschowitz, "The effects and effectiveness of gammahydroxybutyrate In patients with narcolepsy," J. Clin. Psychiatry, 46(6)222-225, 1985.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "Efficacy of gamma-hydroxybutyrate versus placebo in treating narcolepsy-cataplexy: Double-blind subjective measured," Biol. Psychiatry, 26:331-343, 1989.

Scrima, Hartman, Johnson, Thomas, Hiller, "The Effects of gamma.-Hydroxybutyrate on the Sleep of Narcolepsy Patients: A Double-Blind Study," Sleep, 13(6):479-490, 1990.

Scrima, et al, "Sleep Res. 16, 134, 1987, Abstract. Series, Series, Cormier, "Effects of Enhancing Slow-Wave Sleep by Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on Obstructive Sleep Apnea," Am. Rev. Respir. Dis., 1378-1383, 1992.

Strong, ".gamma.-Hydroxybutyric acid and Intracranial Pressure," The Lancet, Vol. 1: No. 8389, 1984. van den Bogert, Vree, van der Kleijn, Damsma, "Placentatransfer of 4-Hydroxybutyric Acid in Man."

Vickers, "Gammahydroxybutyric Acid," Int. Anesth. Clinic, 7:75.89, 1969.

Lee, Biochem. Med. 17:234-291, 1977. Yamada, Yamamoto, Fujiki, Hishikawa, Kaneko, "Effect of Butyrolactone

8

and Gamma-Hydroxybutyrate on the EEG and Sleep Cycle in Man," Electroenceph. Clin. Neurophysiol., 22:558-562, 1967.

Yamada et al., 1967. Wu, Ying; Ali, Saima; Ahmadian, Gholamreza; Liu, Chun Che; Wang, Yu Tian; Gibson, K. Michael; Calver, Andrew R.; Francis, Joseph et al. (2004). "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-aminobutyric acidB receptor (GABABR) binding sites are distinctive from one another: molecular evidence". Neuropharmacology 47 (8): 1146-56.

Cash, C; Gobaille, S; Kemmel, V; Andriamampandry, C; Maitre, M (1999). "7-hydroxybutyrate receptor function studied by the modulation of nitric oxide synthase activity in rat frontal cortex punches". Biochemical Pharmacology 58 (11): 1815-9.

Maitre M, Humbert J P, Kemmel V, Aunis D, Andriamampandry C (2005). "A mechanism for gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) as a drug and a substance of abuse" (in French). Med Sci (Paris) 21 (3): 284-9. Waszkielewicz A, Bojarski J (2004). "Gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and its chemical modifications: a review of the GHergic system" (PDF). Pol J Pharmacol 56 (1): 43-9.

Kuriyama K, Sze P Y (1971). "Blood-brain barrier to H3-gamma-aminobutyric acid in normal and amino oxy-acetic acid-treated animals". Neuropharmacology 10 (1): 103-8.

Dimitrijevic N, Dzitoyeva S, Satta R, Imbesi M, Yildiz S, Manev H (2005). "Drosophila GABA(B) receptors are involved in behavioral effects of gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB)". Eur. J. Pharmacol. 519 (3): 246-52.

Banerjee P K, Snead O C (1995). "Presynaptic gamma-hydroxybutyric acid (GHB) and gamma-aminobutyric acidB (GABAB) receptor-mediated release of GABA and glutamate (GLU) in rat thalamic ventrobasal nucleus (VB): a possible mechanism for the generation of absence-like seizures induced by GHB". J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther. 273 (3): 1534-43.

Hechler V, Gobaille S, Bourguignon J J, Maitre M (1991). "Extracellular events induced by gamma-hydroxybutyrate in striatum: a microdialysis study". J. Neurochem. 56 (3): 938-44. Maitre, M; Hechler, V; Vayer, P; Gobaille, S; Cash, CD; Schmitt, M; Bourguignon, J J (1990). "A specific gamma-hydroxybutyrate receptor ligand possesses both antagonistic and anticonvulsant properties". J. Pharmacol. Exp. Ther. 255 (2): 657-63.

Smolders I, De Klippe N, Sarre S, Ebinger G, Michotte Y (1995). "Tonic GABAergic modulation of striatal dopamine release studied by in vivo microdialysis in the freely moving rat". Eur. J. Pharmacol. 284 (1-2): 83-91.

In the specification and claims that follow, references will be made to a number of terms which shall be defined to have the following meaning.

The terms "a" and "an" do not denote a limitation of quantity, but rather denote the presence of at least one of the referenced item. The term "or" means "and/or". The terms "comprising", "having", "including", and "containing" are to be construed as open-ended terms (i.e., meaning "including, but not limited to").

"Concomitant" and "concomitantly" as used herein refer to the administration of at least two drugs to a patient either subsequently, simultaneously, or consequently within a time period during which the effects of the first administered drug are still operative in the patient. Thus, if the first drug is, e.g., Xyrem®, or GHB, and the second drug is valproate, the concomitant administration of the second drug occurs within two weeks, preferably within one week or even three days, before or after the administration of the first drug.

US 11,253,494 B2

9

“Dosage amount” means an amount of a drug suitable to be taken during a fixed period, usually during one day (i.e., daily).

“Dosage amount adapted for oral administration” means a dosage amount that is of an amount deemed safe and effective for the particular patient under the conditions specified. As used herein and in the claims, this dosage amount is determined by following the recommendations of the drug manufacturer’s Prescribing Information as approved by the US Food and Drug Administration.

“Dosing regimen” means the dose of a drug taken at a first time by a patient and the interval (time or symptomatic) and dosage amounts at which any subsequent doses of the drug are taken by the patient. Each dose may be of the same or a different dosage amount.

A “dose” means the measured quantity of a drug to be taken at one time by a patient.

A “patient” means a human in need of medical treatment. In one embodiment medical treatment can include treatment of an existing condition, such as a disease or disorder, prophylactic or preventative treatment, or diagnostic treatment. In another embodiment, medical treatment also includes administration to treat excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus.

“Providing” means giving, administering, selling, distributing, transferring (for profit or not), manufacturing, compounding, or dispensing.

The terms “therapeutically effective amount,” as used herein, refer to an amount of a compound sufficient to treat, ameliorate, or prevent the identified disease or condition, or to exhibit a detectable therapeutic, prophylactic, or inhibitory effect. The effect can be detected by, for example, an improvement in clinical condition, or reduction in symptoms. The precise effective amount for a subject will depend upon the subject’s body weight, size, and health; the nature and extent of the condition; and the therapeutic or combination of therapeutics selected for administration. Where a drug has been approved by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA), a “therapeutically effective amount” refers to the dosage approved by the FDA or its counterpart foreign agency for treatment of the identified disease or condition.

“Side effect” means a secondary effect resulting from taking a drug. The secondary effect can be a negative (unfavorable) effect (i.e., an adverse side effect) or a positive (favorable) effect.

Pharmacokinetic parameters referred to herein describe the *in vivo* characteristics of drug (or a metabolite or a surrogate marker for the drug) over time. These include plasma concentration (C), as well as C_{max} , C_n , C_{24} , T_{max} , and AUC. The term “ T_{max} ” refers to the time from drug administration until C_{max} is reached. “AUC” is the area under the curve of a graph of the measured plasma concentration of an active agent vs. time, measured from one time point to another time point. For example AUC_{0-t} is the area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time t , where time 0 is the time of initial administration of the drug. Time t can be the last time point with measurable plasma concentration for an individual formulation. The $AUC_{0-\text{infin}}$ or AUC_{0-INF} is the calculated area under the curve of plasma concentration versus time from time 0 to time infinity. In steady-state studies, $AUC_{0-\tau}$ is the area under the curve of plasma concentration over the dosing interval (i.e., from time 0 to time τ). (τ) is the length of the dosing interval.

10

It may be advantageous to incorporate a pharmacy management system into the method of the present invention. Pharmacy management systems are computer-based systems that are used by commercial pharmacies to manage prescriptions and to provide pharmacy and medical personnel with warnings and guidance regarding drugs being administered to patients. Such systems typically provide alerts warning either or both of health care providers and patients when a drug that may be harmful to the particular patient is prescribed. For example, such systems can provide alerts warning that a patient has an allergy to a prescribed drug, or is receiving concomitant administration of a drug that can have a dangerous interaction with a prescribed drug. U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,059; 7,797,171; 7,668,730; 7,765,106; 7,765,107; 5,758,095, 5,833,599, 5,845,255, 6,014,631, 6,067,524, 6,112,182, 6,317,719, 6,356,873, and 7,072,840, each of which is incorporated herein by reference, disclose various pharmacy management systems and aspects thereof. Example pharmacy management systems are now commercially available, e.g., CENTRICITY Pharmacy from BDM Information Systems Ltd., General Electric Healthcare, Waukesha, Wis., Rx30 Pharmacy Systems from Transaction Data Systems, Inc., Ocoee, Fla., SPEED SCRIPT from Digital Simplistics, Inc., Lenexa, Kans., and various pharmacy management systems from OPUS-ISM, Hauppauge, N.Y.

In some embodiments, a pharmacy management system may be required or preferred as part of a drug distribution program. For example, the present invention includes a method for distributing a drug containing GHB or a salt thereof to an approved pharmacy, the method comprising: (1) Identifying an approved pharmacy that has an established management system to dispense information concerning the risks associated with ingesting a MCT inhibitor concomitantly to said drug to patients that are prescribed said drug; (2) Providing said pharmacy with said information related to the risks; and (3) Authorizing distribution of said drug to said pharmacy, wherein said pharmacy dispenses the drug with said information when filling a prescription for said drug. The established management system may include an electronic alert to employees to dispense said information with said drug when prescriptions are filled. Such information may be dispensed in written form, for example in a brochure explaining the risks of concomitant ingestion of GHB and an MCT inhibitor such as diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen or combinations thereof. For example, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for enhanced potency of GHB if the patient also takes valproate. Alternatively, or in addition thereto, the information dispensed with GHB may advise a patient of the potential for decreased potency of GHB if the patient also takes diclofenac. Such information may also be dispensed in verbal form. Distributors may maintain a directory of approved pharmacies, for example in a computer readable storage medium, to further ensure that GHB is dispensed only to patients who are advised of the additive effects.

In addition, the system can prevent the dispensing of GHB or salt thereof until proper testing or confirmation is obtained that the patient is not taking or going to take valproate or diclofenac concomitantly with GHB. Alternatively, the patient can be warned of the adverse effect and instructed to modify the dose of GHB to accommodate the increased or reduced effects of GHB due to valproate or diclofenac.

A pharmacy management system of the present invention can be a REMS system as shown in U.S. Pat. Nos. 7,895,

US 11,253,494 B2

11

059; 7,797,171; and 7,668,730 and also include monitoring for concomitant use of diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen, or combinations thereof. Warnings may be administered through the existing pharmacy management system as described in the patents above.

One embodiment of the present invention, without being limited by theory, is the discovery of drug interactions that change either, or both, the efficacy or safety profile of GHB. The three compounds are valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprophen or combinations thereof. To achieve the above benefits, GHB of the present invention can be administered in a reduced amount when a second compound, such as valproate, is concomitantly administered with GHB. It can also be administered in an increased amount to overcome any effects of diclofenac. The compounds can also be avoided or discontinued to prevent unsafe concomitant administration.

In one embodiment of the present invention, concomitant administration of GHB with other agents is monitored and potential changes to the doses of GHB are made, or changes in the administration of other compounds are made. In one embodiment of the present invention, when GHB was concomitantly administered with ibuprofen, there were pharmacokinetic (PK) changes consistent with monocarboxylic transporter (MCT) inhibition and renal excretion of GHB doubled (statistically significant). Plasma levels were about ~5% lower, which was statistically significant. In another embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and Diclofenac are concomitantly administered, PD effects were significantly reduced. In another embodiment of the present invention, when GHB and divalproate were concomitantly administered, PK showed both MCT and GHB dehydrogenase inhibition, with the latter predominating. MCT inhibition caused renal clearance to be increased 30% (statistically significant). GHB dehydrogenase inhibition caused systemic exposure (plasma AUC) to be increased 26%. Both measures are statistically significant and outside FDA "equivalence window". PD shows more pronounced effects with concomitant administration.

One embodiment is a method of administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB to a patient in need of treatment, such as with narcolepsy, the invention provides an improvement that comprises avoiding or discontinuing administration of a compound that affects GHB potency and administering a therapeutically effective amount of GHB. The compound can be diclofenac or valproate and they can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB.

Gamma Hydroxybutyrate (GHB)

GHB (also called oxybate or oxybate) is approved in the United States (US) for the treatment of excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS) and for the treatment of cataplexy, both in patients with narcolepsy. GHB is commercially sold as Xyrem® sodium oxybate by Jazz Pharmaceuticals. Sodium oxybate is the sodium salt of the endogenous neurotransmitter gamma hydroxybutyrate (GHB), which is found in many tissues of the body. "GHB", oxybate, a GHB salt or Xyrem® will be used to refer to these active forms. It can be used as a sodium, calcium, potassium, or magnesium salt. See U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886.

GHB is present, for example, in the mammalian brain and other tissues. In the brain, the highest GHB concentration is found in the hypothalamus and basal ganglia and GHB is postulated to function as a neurotransmitter. The neuropharmacologic effects of GHB include increases in brain acetylcholine, increases in brain dopamine, inhibition of GABA-ketoglutarate transaminase and depression of glucose utilization but not oxygen consumption in the brain.

12

GHB is converted to succinate and then metabolized via the Krebs cycle. Clinical trials have shown that GHB increases delta sleep and improves the continuity of sleep (Laborit, 1973; Lapierre et al., 1988; Lapierre et al., 1990; Yamada et al., 1967; Scharf, 1985).

GHB treatment substantially reduces the signs and symptoms of narcolepsy, i.e. excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus. In addition, GHB increases total sleep time and REM sleep, and it decreases REM latency (Mamelak et al., 1973; Yamada et al., 1967; Bedard et al., 1989), reduces sleep apnea (Scrima et al., 1987), and improves general anesthesia (Hasenbos and Gielen, 1985).

GHB has several clinical applications other than narcolepsy and sleep disorders. GHB has been reported to reduce alcohol craving, the number of daily drinks consumed, and the symptoms of alcohol withdrawal in patients (Gallimberti et al., 1989; Gallimberti et al., 1992; Gessa et al., 1992). GHB has been used to decrease the symptoms of opiate withdrawal, including both heroin and methadone withdrawal (Gallimberti et al., 1994; Gallimberti et al., 1993). It has analgesic effects that make it suitable as a pain reliever (U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236). Intravenous administration of GHB has been reported to reduce intracranial pressure in patients (Strong, A. 1984). Also, administration of GHB was reported to increase growth hormone levels in patients (Gessa et al., 1994).

A good safety profile for GHB consumption, when used long term for treatment of narcolepsy has been reported. Patients have been safely treated for many years with GHB without development of tolerance (Scharf, 1985). Clinical laboratory tests carried out periodically on many patients have not indicated organ or other toxicities (Lammers, 1993; Scrima, 1990; Scharf, 1985; Mamelack, 1977; Mamelak, 1979; Gessa, 1992). The side effects of GHB treatment have been minimal in incidence and degree of severity, though they include sleepwalking, enuresis, headache, nausea and dizziness (Broughton and Mamelak, 1979; Mamelak et al., 1981; Mamelak et al., 1977; Scrima et al., 1989; Scrima et al., 1990; Scharf et al., 1985). Therefore, it is critical to identify adverse drug-drug interactions to maintain the positive safety profile for GHB.

GHB Pharmacology

GHB has at least two distinct binding sites (See Wu, et al., 2004) in the central nervous system. GHB is an agonist at the GHB receptor, which is excitatory, (Cash et al., 2009) and it is a weak agonist at the GABAB receptor, which is inhibitory. GHB acts in a similar fashion to some neurotransmitters in the mammalian brain and is probably synthesized from GABA in GABAergic neurons, and released when the neurons fire. If taken orally, GABA itself does not effectively cross the blood-brain-barrier. (See Kuriyama et al., 2005).

GHB induces the accumulation of either a derivative of tryptophan or tryptophan itself in the extracellular space, possibly by increasing tryptophan transport across the blood-brain barrier. The blood content of certain neutral amino-acids, including tryptophan, is also increased by peripheral GHB administration. GHB-induced stimulation of tissue serotonin turnover may be due to an increase in tryptophan transport to the brain and in its uptake by serotonergic cells. As the serotonergic system may be involved in the regulation of sleep, mood, and anxiety, the stimulation of this system by high doses of GHB may be involved in certain neuropharmacological events induced by GHB administration.

US 11,253,494 B2

13

However, at therapeutic doses, GHB reaches much higher concentrations in the brain and activates GABAB receptors, which are primarily responsible for its sedative effects. (See Dimitrijevic et al., 2005). GHB's sedative effects are blocked by GABAB antagonists.

The role of the GHB receptor in the behavioral effects induced by GHB is more complex. GHB receptors are densely expressed in many areas of the brain, including the cortex and hippocampus, and these are the receptors that GHB displays the highest affinity for. There has been somewhat limited research into the GHB receptor; however, there is evidence that activation of the GHB receptor in some brain areas results in the release of glutamate, the principal excitatory neurotransmitter. Drugs that selectively activate the GHB receptor cause absence seizures in high doses, as do GHB and GABA(B) agonists. (See Banerjee et al., 1995.)

Activation of both the GHB receptor and GABA(B) is responsible for the addictive profile of GHB. GHB's effect on dopamine release is biphasic. (See Hechler et al., 1991). Low concentrations stimulate dopamine release via the GHB receptor. (See Maitre et al., 1990). Higher concentrations inhibit dopamine release via GABA(B) receptors as do other GABA(B) agonists such as baclofen and phenibut. (See Smolders et al., 1995). After an initial phase of inhibition, dopamine release is then increased via the GHB receptor. Both the inhibition and increase of dopamine release by GHB are inhibited by opioid antagonists such as naloxone and naltrexone. Dynorphin may play a role in the inhibition of dopamine release via kappa opioid receptors. (See Mamelak 1989).

This may explain the paradoxical mix of sedative and stimulatory properties of GHB, as well as the so-called "rebound" effect, experienced by individuals using GHB as a sleeping agent, wherein they awake suddenly after several hours of GHB-induced deep sleep. That is to say that, over time, the concentration of GHB in the system decreases below the threshold for significant GABAB receptor activation and activates predominantly the GHB receptor, leading to wakefulness. However, one embodiment of the present invention is the unexpected discovery that drugs change the PD profile of GHB to alter its effects and its safety profile. Example drugs are include valproate and diclofenac. It is important for efficacy safety purposes that the effect of GHB be maintained consistently and not subject to variation due to the effects of other drugs.

Both of the metabolic breakdown pathways shown for GHB can run in either direction, depending on the concentrations of the substances involved, so the body can make its own GHB either from GABA or from succinic semialdehyde. Under normal physiological conditions, the concentration of GHB in the body is rather low, and the pathways would run in the reverse direction to what is shown here to produce endogenous GHB. However, when GHB is consumed for recreational or health promotion purposes, its concentration in the body is much higher than normal, which changes the enzyme kinetics so that these pathways operate to metabolize GHB rather than produce it.

The pharmacokinetics of GHB have been investigated in alcohol dependent patients (Ferrara et al., 1992) and in normal healthy males (Palatini et al., 1993) after oral administration. GHB possesses a rapid onset and short pharmacological effect (Ferrara et al., 1992; Palatine et al., 1993; Lettieri and Fung, 1978; Arena and Fung, 1980; Roth and Giarman, 1966; Vickers, 1969; Lee, 1977). In alcohol dependent patients, GHB absorption into and elimination from the systemic circulation were fast processes. Virtually no unchanged drug could be recovered in the urine. There

14

were preliminary indications that the pharmacokinetics of GHB might be non-linear or dose-dependent (Ferrara et al., 1992). In the healthy volunteers study, the pharmacokinetics of three rising GHB doses (12.5, 25, and 50 mg/kg) were investigated. These findings indicate that both the oral absorption and elimination processes of GHB were capacity-limited though the degree of dose dependency was moderate (Palatini et al., 1993).

Methods of making GHB salts are described, for example, 10 in U.S. Pat. No. 4,393,236, and U.S. patent application Ser. No. 13/739,886 which are incorporated herein by reference.

It has been discovered that there are unexpected drug-drug interactions (DDI) between GHB and common drugs frequently prescribed for other ailments. It is one goal of the 15 present invention to warn when those interactions may affect the safety profile of GHB. In one embodiment of the present invention, drugs that may affect GHB administration include valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen and combinations thereof.

20 GHB is a central nervous system (CNS) depressant. Alcohol and sedative hypnotics are contraindicated in patients who are using GHB. The concurrent use of GHB with other CNS depressants, including but not limited to opioid analgesics, benzodiazepines, sedating antidepressants or antipsychotics, general anesthetics, muscle relaxants, and/or illicit CNS depressants, may increase the risk of respiratory depression, hypotension, profound sedation, syncope, and death. If use of these CNS depressants in combination with GHB is required, dose reduction or discontinuation of one or more CNS depressants (including GHB) 25 should be considered. In addition, if short-term use of an opioid (e.g. post- or perioperative) is required, interruption of treatment with GHB should be considered. See the package insert for Xyrem®.

30 GHB may impair respiratory drive, especially with overdoses associated with interactions with other drugs and alcohol. Since valproate may potentiate the effect of GHB, a warning should accompany any use of valproate and GHB as stated herein. The warning should address the use of additional drugs that may further enhance the effect of GHB, 35 such as alcohol or aspirin, for example.

Healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not 40 affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB. Patients 45 should be queried about potential adverse events, such as excessive daytime sleepiness, CNS depression related events, etc. upon initiation of GHB therapy and periodically thereafter. These queries should include info regarding additional medication such as diclofenac and valproate for example. See the Xyrem® package insert.

In one embodiment described herein, patients are warned that combination of GHB with valproate can increase plasma levels and potentiate the activity of GHB and exacerbate all the effects and adverse event associated with GHB. 50 These effects include the intended effects of drowsiness, sedation, and sleep and typically unintended events such as depressed respiration, CNS depression, excessive drowsiness, hepatic impairment, and depression, among other things.

In another embodiment, diclofenac mitigates and protects against the pharmodynamic effects the effects of GHB.

US 11,253,494 B2

15

However, the mixture of GHB and diclofenac does not affect sleepiness and does not make a patient more attentive. Without wishing to be bound by theory, the effects may be due to the interaction between diclofenac and the GHB receptor in lieu of the MCT inhibitor activity.

Typical concentrations of GHB formulations are shown in U.S. Pat. Nos. 8,263,650 and 8,324,275, for example. They include minimum concentrations starting from 150 mg/ml to 450 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) and increasing to 600 mg/ml to 750 mg/ml (at 10 mg/ml increments) as a maximum. So, a broad range would include 150-750 mg/ml and any range within the broad range using 10 mg/ml increments. One embodiment of the invention is a range of 350-750 mg/ml and another is 450-550 mg/ml GHB. One embodiment of the present invention uses a GHB formulation with a pH range of 6-10, another uses a pH range of between 6.5-8. For example, a minimum concentration includes 350, 360, 370, 380 mg/ml, and so on up to at least 730, 740, and 750 mg/ml and all concentrations (measured in 10 mg/ml increments in between).

pH adjusting agents can include acids, bases and many of the compounds found in U.S. Pat. No. 8,263,650. In some embodiments the pH adjusting agent is an acid selected from the group of: acetic, acetylsalicylic, barbital, barbituric, benzoic, benzyl penicillin, boric, caffeine, carbonic, citric, dichloroacetic, ethylenediaminetetra-acetic acid (EDTA), formic, glycerophosphoric, glycine, lactic, malic, mandelic, monochloroacetic, oxalic, phenobarbital, phenol, picric, propionic, saccharin, salicylic, sodium dihydrogen phosphate, succinic, sulfadiazine, sulfamerazine, sulfapyridine, sulfathiazole, tartaric, trichloroacetic, and the like, or inorganic acids such as hydrochloric, nitric, phosphoric or sulfuric, and the like.

GHB is commercially available as a sodium salt, however, it can also be formulated as a mixture of salts as shown in U.S. Ser. No. 13/739,886, which is incorporated by reference as stated above. For example, the mixture comprises one, two, or three or more salts selected from the group consisting of a sodium salt of hydroxybutyrate (Na.GHB), a potassium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (K.GHB), a magnesium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Mg.(GHB)₂), and a calcium salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (Ca.(GHB)₂). The different salts may be present in different percentages. For example, in certain embodiments, the pharmaceutical composition comprises Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 5% to about 40%, the K.GHB salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 10% to about 40%, and the Ca.(GHB)₂ salt is present in a wt/wt % of about 20% to about 80%. In certain embodiments, the Na.GHB, K.GHB, and Ca.(GHB)₂ salts are present in a wt/wt % ratio of about 11%:39%:50%, respectively.

Valproic Acid

Valproic acid (VPA, also called valproate or divalproex), an acidic chemical compound, has found clinical use as an anticonvulsant and mood-stabilizing drug, primarily in the treatment of epilepsy, bipolar disorder, and, less commonly, major depression. See G. Rosenberg, *Cell. Mol. Life Sci.* 64 (2007) 2090-2103. It is also used to treat migraine headaches and schizophrenia. A typical dose of valproate varies by indication. Dosages for seizures are between 10 to 15 mg/kg/day, with potential increases of 5 to 10 mg/kg/day. VPA is a liquid at room temperature, but it can be reacted with a base such as sodium hydroxide to form the salt sodium valproate, which is a solid. The acid, salt, or a mixture of the two (valproate semisodium, divalproate) are marketed under the various brand names Depakote, Depa-

16

kote ER, Depakene, Depakene Crono (extended release in Spain), Depacon, Depakine, Valparin and Stavzor.

Valproate is believed to affect the function of the neurotransmitter GABA in the human brain, making it an alternative to lithium salts in treatment of bipolar disorder. Its mechanism of action includes enhanced neurotransmission of GABA (by inhibiting GABA transaminase, which breaks down GABA). However, several other mechanisms of action in neuropsychiatric disorders have been proposed for valproic acid in recent years. See Rosenberg G (2007). "The mechanisms of action of valproate in neuropsychiatric disorders: can we see the forest for the trees?". *Cellular and Molecular Life Sciences* 64 (16): 2090-103.

Valproic acid also blocks the voltage-gated sodium channels and T-type calcium channels. These mechanisms make valproic acid a broad-spectrum anticonvulsant drug. Valproic acid is an inhibitor of the enzyme histone deacetylase 1 (HDAC1), hence it is a histone deacetylase inhibitor. Valproic acid may interact with carbamazepine, as valproates inhibit microsomal epoxide hydrolase (mEH), the enzyme responsible for the breakdown of carbamazepine-10,11 epoxide (the main active metabolite of carbamazepine) into inactive metabolites. (See Gonzalez, Frank J.; Robert H. Tukey (2006). "Drug Metabolism". In Laurence Brunton, John Lazo, Keith Parker (eds.). *Goodman & Gilman's The Pharmacological Basis of Therapeutics* (11th ed.). New York: McGraw-Hill. pp. 79.) By inhibiting mEH, valproic acid causes a buildup of the active metabolite, prolonging the effects of carbamazepine and delaying its excretion. Valproic acid also decreases the clearance of amitriptyline and nortriptyline.

Aspirin may decrease the clearance of valproic acid, leading to higher-than-intended serum levels of the anticonvulsant. Also, combining valproic acid with the benzodiazepine clonazepam can lead to profound sedation and increases the risk of absence seizures in patients susceptible to them.

Valproic acid and sodium valproate reduce the apparent clearance of lamotrigine (lamictal). In most patients, the lamotrigine dosage for coadministration with valproate must be reduced to half the monotherapy dosage.

Valproic acid is contraindicated in pregnancy, as it decreases the intestinal reabsorption of folate (folic acid), which leads to neural tube defects. Because of a decrease in folate, megaloblastic anemia may also result. Phenytoin also decreases folate absorption, which may lead to the same adverse effects as valproic acid.

Valproic acid, 2-propylvaleric acid, is synthesized by the alkylation of cyanoacetic ester with two moles of propylbromide, to give dipropylecyanoacetic ester. Hydrolysis and decarboxylation of the carboethoxy group gives dipropylacetonitrile, which is hydrolyzed into valproic acid. See U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,325,361 and 4,155,929 and GB Pat. Nos. 980279 and 1522450. See also, T. R. Henry, "The History of Valproate in Clinical Neuroscience." *Psychopharmacology bulletin* (2003) 37 (Suppl 2):5-16.

Diclofenac

Diclofenac is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) taken to reduce inflammation and as an analgesic reducing pain in certain conditions. Diclofenac is used to treat pain, inflammatory disorders, and dysmenorrhea and is a commonly used NSAID. See Auler et al., *Brazilian Jour. Med. Bio. Res.*, (1977) 30:369-374 and Hasan, et al., and *Pakistan Jour. Pharmaceutical Sciences*, vol. 18, No. 1, January 2005, pp 18-24 both are hereby incorporated by reference in their entireties.

US 11,253,494 B2

17

The name is derived from its chemical name: 2-(2,6-dichloranilino) phenylacetic acid, it may be supplied as either the sodium or potassium salt. Diclofenac is available as a generic drug in a number of formulations; including Dichlofenac diethylammonium applied topically to joints. Over-the-counter (OTC) use is approved in some countries for minor aches and pains and fever associated with common infections.

Diclofenac is typically absorbed readily, but absorption is delayed upon administration with food. Its half-life varies from 1 to 3 hours with mean peak plasma levels of about 0.5 ug/ml to 1.0 ug/ml after 2 hours of a single dose of 25 mg. Diclofenac binds to human serum proteins, specifically albumin. See Hasan et al 2005.

Ibuprofen

Ibuprofen (from iso-butyl-propanoic-phenolic acid) is a nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) widely prescribed for pain relief, fever reduction, and swelling. Ibuprofen was derived from propanoic acid. Originally marketed as Brufen, ibuprofen is available under a variety of popular trademarks, including Motrin, Nurofen, Advil, and Nuprin. Ibuprofen is used primarily for fever, pain, dysmenorrhea and inflammatory diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis. It is also used for pericarditis and patent ductus arteriosus. It is a commonly used drug commercially available over the counter.

Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs such as ibuprofen work by inhibiting the enzyme cyclooxygenase (COX), which converts arachidonic acid to prostaglandin H2 (PGH2). PGH2, in turn, is converted by other enzymes to several other prostaglandins (which are mediators of pain, inflammation, and fever) and to thromboxane A2 (which stimulates platelet aggregation, leading to the formation of blood clots).

Like aspirin and indomethacin, ibuprofen is a nonselective COX inhibitor, in that it inhibits two isoforms of cyclooxygenase, COX-1 and COX-2. The analgesic, antipyretic, and anti-inflammatory activity of NSAIDs appears to operate mainly through inhibition of COX-2, whereas inhibition of COX-1 would be responsible for unwanted effects on the gastrointestinal tract. However, the role of the individual COX isoforms in the analgesic, anti-inflammatory, and gastric damage effects of NSAIDs is uncertain and different compounds cause different degrees of analgesia and gastric damage.

The synthesis of this compound consisted of six steps, started with the Friedel-Crafts acetylation of isobutylbenzene. Reaction with ethyl chloroacetate (Darzens reaction) gave the α,β -epoxy ester, which was hydrolyzed and decarboxylated to the aldehyde. Reaction with hydroxylamine gave the oxime, which was converted to the nitrile, then hydrolyzed to the desired acid. See U.S. Pat. No. 3,385,886.

An improved synthesis by BHC required only three steps. After a similar acetylation, hydrogenation with Raney nickel gave the alcohol, which underwent palladium-catalyzed carbonylation.

Valproate, diclofenac, and ibruprofen are monocarboxylate transporter inhibitors. One embodiment of the present application is a method to improve safety by monitoring the combination of these compounds with GHB.

Monocarboxylate Transporters

Monocarboxylate transporters, or MCTs, constitute a family of proton-linked plasma membrane transporters that carry molecules having one carboxylate group (monocarboxylates), such as lactate and pyruvate, across biological membranes. See Halestrap A P, Meredith D (2004). "The SLC16 gene family—from monocarboxylate transporters

18

(MCTs) to aromatic amino acid transporters and beyond". Pflugers Arch. 447 (5): 619-28.

MCTs are a series of transporters which move chemicals in body tissues, such as kidneys, blood/brain barrier, intestines, etc. They can transport chemical compounds back from urine to create a higher concentration in the blood than the urine. They can be used to treat an overdose or to prevent excretion of a compound. They can also be used to prevent absorption or transport into the brain or gut, or excretion via the urine. Exemplary MCT inhibitors include valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

Concomitant Administration of GHB and Drug-Drug Interactions

In one embodiment of the present invention the concomitant administration of MCT inhibitors, such as either valproate, diclofenac, or ibuprofen with GHB can effect GHB levels or activity and alter the GHB safety and efficacy profile to create an unsafe condition. For example, valproate can increase or prolong GHB effects and diclofenac can reduce or shorten GHB effects. For example, if the effects are increased, then there could be an increase of adverse events associated with too much GHB. Also, the effect of GHB may be prolonged to cause side effects, such as excessive daytime sleepiness (EDS), to last into the daytime. Prolongation of the effect would counter the purpose for providing the GHB and could create an unsafe situation for patients who wish to be alert and who may be engaged in otherwise dangerous activity. This concomitant administration can transform an otherwise safe dose of GHB into one with safety concerns. It is a health risk to patients and a medical challenge to health care workers.

The drug-drug interaction could also reduce the effects of GHB by altering its blood levels or otherwise. Reduction in the GHB level may also provide an unsafe condition due to excessive daytime sleepiness. In each situation, where GHB is increased, decreased or excessively cleared, those drug-drug interactions need to be identified to a health care worker to adjust the dose of GHB or discontinue the use of the other compound.

As recited on the product insert for Xyrem®, healthcare providers should caution patients about operating hazardous machinery, including automobiles or airplanes, until they are reasonably certain that GHB does not affect them adversely (e.g., impair judgment, thinking, or motor skills). Patients should not engage in hazardous occupations or activities requiring complete mental alertness or motor coordination, such as operating machinery or a motor vehicle or flying an airplane, for at least 6, 7, 8 or 9 hours after taking the second nightly dose of GHB.

In some embodiments in which diclofenac or valproate is discontinued to avoid an adverse drug interaction, they are discontinued within at least 3 days prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In various embodiments, diclofenac or valproate is discontinued within at least 4 days, or at least 5 days, or at least 6 days, or at least 7 days (or one week), or at least 8 days, or at least 9 days, or at least 10 days, or at least 11 days, or at least 12 days, or at least 13 days, or at least 14 days (or two weeks), or at least 15 days, or at least 16 days, or at least 17 days, or at least 18 days, or at least 19 days, or at least 20 days, or at least 21 days (or three weeks) prior to or after starting GHB therapy. In some embodiments, the diclofenac or valproate is discontinued no later than 2 weeks or 1 week before starting GHB therapy.

In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy when valproate is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient downward relative to a previously administered dosage in the patient, so the

US 11,253,494 B2

19

dose does not result in an increased exposure to GHB. In some embodiments, a method of optimizing GHB therapy when diclofenac is provided comprises titrating the dosage of GHB administered to a patient upward relative to a previously administered dosage in the patient, so the dose results in an effective exposure to GHB.

Thus, the present invention includes a method for treating a patient who is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness, cataplexy, sleep paralysis, apnea, narcolepsy, sleep time disturbances, hypnagogic hallucinations, sleep arousal, insomnia, and nocturnal myoclonus with a salt of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB), wherein said patient is also being treated with valproate or diclofenac, comprising: administering to the patient a daily dose of a GHB salt wherein said daily dose is administered at an amount sufficient to reduce or eliminate such additive effects.

In one embodiment of the present invention, a reduced amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with valproate. In another embodiment of the present invention, an increased amount of GHB is administered to a patient when concomitantly administered with diclofenac.

When valproate is concomitantly administered with GHB, the amount of GHB can be reduced at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 9 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to reduce the normal dose by 15% is 7.65 g/day. The GHB dose reduction may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. A typical adult range of doses for GHB are between 4.5 or 6 g as a minimum and 8 or 10 g/day as a maximum divided into two doses. The dose recommended on the package insert and approved by the FDA is between 4.5 and 9.0 g/day. Typical exemplary paediatric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 6 g/day for pediatric patients aged 0-6 years. Typical exemplary paediatric daily doses of GHB are between 1 g and 9 g/day for pediatric patients aged 7-17 years. However, these ranges are not absolute and can be increased or decreased by 1-2 grams in either direction. One dose is typically administered prior to bed (night time sleep) and another dose administered 1-2 hours later. See the Xyrem® package insert (Xyrem® is a registered trademark of Jazz Pharmaceuticals plc or its subsidiaries.). Either or both of the multiple doses may be reduced to present a safer administration profile. For example, the first dose may be reduced by the numbers referred to above or the second may be reduced by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day may be reduced at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary decrease in an adult dose would be to reduce the maximum dose to less than 8.5, 8, 7.5, 7, 6.5, 6, 5.5, 5, 4.5, 4, 3.5, 3 g/day and so on. The minimum dose will be reduced accordingly to 4, 3.5, 3, 2.5, 2, and so on.

In one embodiment of the present invention, diclofenac may dampen or delay the effect of GHB upon a patient during concomitant administration. In one embodiment, it may be useful to increase the amount of GHB that is administered to the patient. For example, GHB may be increased at least 1%, 5%, 10%, 15%, 20%, 25%, 30%, 35%, 40%, 45%, or 50% of the normal dose of GHB. For example, if the normal dose is 10 g/day, then a dose that is adjusted to increase the normal dose by 15% is 11.5 g/day. The GHB dose increase may be taken for one or multiple GHB dosings. For example, GHB may be administered in two doses per night for narcolepsy. Either, or both, of the multiple doses may be increased to present a safer admin-

20

istration profile. For example, the first dose may be increased by the numbers referred to above or the second may be increased by the same percentages, or both. Furthermore, the absolute amount of GHB per dose or per day may be increased at least 0.5 g, 1 g, 1.5 g, 2.0 g, 2.5 g, 3.0 g, 3.5 g, or 4 g. An exemplary decrease in an adult dose would be to increase the minimum dose to 5, 5.5, 6, 6.5, 7, 7.5, 8, 8.5 g/day and so on. An increase in the maximum dose would be at least 9.5, 10, 10.5, 11, 11.5, 12, 12.5, 13, 13.5, 14 g/day and so on.

In another aspect, a package or kit is provided comprising GHB, optionally in a container, and a package insert, package label, instructions or other labelling including any one, two, three or more of the following information or recommendations: (a) use of diclofenac or valproate should be avoided or discontinued, (b) concomitant administration of GHB with drugs that are MCT inhibitors, such as diclofenac or valproate can alter the therapeutic effect or adverse reaction profile of GHB, (c) concomitant administration of GHB and valproate resulted in an increase in exposure to GHB, (d) concomitant administration of GHB and diclofenac resulted in a decrease in exposure to GHB, and/or (e) MCT inhibitors should be used with caution in patients receiving GHB due to the potential for increased GHB clearance.

Alternatively, diclofenac can be administered to counteract the effects of GHB toxicity using a reverse of the numerical relationships above. Similarly, valproate can be used to increase the effects of GHB in patients that cannot take higher amounts of GHB. In this regard, the present invention includes methods for reducing the effects of GHB toxicity in a patient in need thereof, comprising administering to said patient an effective amount of diclofenac such that potential toxic effects of GHB are reduced. The present invention also includes methods for potentiating the beneficial effects of GHB in a patient in need thereof comprising concomitantly administering to said patient an effective amount of valproate such that the beneficial effects of GHB are increased.

The examples below, which show drug interaction studies in healthy adults, demonstrated those instances, test conditions or metrics which showed a distinction between GHB and either of the test compounds, diclofenac, valproate, or ibuprofen. Additionally, drug interaction studies in healthy adults demonstrated pharmacokinetic or clinically significant pharmacodynamic interactions between GHB and diclofenac or valproate.

Example 1

This study was designed to compare Pharmacokinetic (PK) and Pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® sodium oxybate (GHB) with and without concomitant administration of diclofenac. A crossover design was employed to allow within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with diclofenac. The PK and PD effects of Xyrem® upon those of diclofenac were also studied.

The PD parameters included a selection of automated tests of attention, information processing, working memory and skilled coordination from the CDR System. (Rapeport et al, 1996ab; Williams et al, 1996). (Wesnes et al, 1997). (Wesnes et al, 2000) (Modi et al, 2007).

Methods

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, three-period, crossover study in healthy subjects. 24 subjects were recruited to ensure that 18 completed the

US 11,253,494 B2

21

study. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eligible subjects were entered into the study and received one of the following treatments per period, in randomized order:

Diclofenac placebo administered as one capsule qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, one diclofenac placebo capsule administered at -1 h and 3 h, and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Diclofenac administered as 50 mg immediate-release (IR) tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and 3 g of Xyrem® administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Diclofenac administered as 50 mg IR tablet (overencapsulated) qid (doses separated by 4 hours during the day, eg, approximately 8 am, 12 pm, 4 pm, and 8 pm) for 2 days before concomitant administration day. On concomitant administration day, 50 mg diclofenac administered at -1 h and 3 h and Xyrem® placebo (volume equivalent to 3 g of Xyrem® oral solution) administered at 0 h and 4 h.

Subjects were randomized to one of the above treatments on Day 1, crossed over to another treatment on Day 6, and crossed over again to the remaining treatment on Day 11 (Table 1). Subjects were dosed in groups of up to 12. A 2-day washout period followed each of the treatment periods. The treatments were as follows: A=Diclofenac placebo (qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® two 3 g doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. B=Diclofenac (50 mg qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® two 3 g doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. C=Diclofenac (50 mg qid 4 h apart on the 1st and 2nd day and 2 doses on the 3rd day of the period)+Xyrem® placebo two doses 4 h apart on the 3rd day of the period. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time (SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

Results

Power of attention-On this measure of focused attention and information processing Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 0.5 h; while the smaller impairments with the combination narrowly missed significance at 1 and 4.5 h. Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac also resulted in impairments at two timepoints compared to diclofenac alone which at 6.5 h was significant and a trend at 8 h. See FIG. 1 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Power of Attention (ms) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy-On this measure of focused attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 2 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Completer Population).

Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time—On this measure of focused attention Xyrem® when co-dosed with diclofenac produced significantly less impairment than Xyrem® alone at 1 and 2.5 h. See FIG. 3 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Completer Population).

22

Choice Reaction Time Mean-Impairments to this measure of attention and information processing were significantly smaller than with Xyrem® alone when co-dosed with diclofenac during the hour following the first dose of Xyrem®. See FIG. 4 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Choice Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Completer Population).

While diclofenac alone had no effect on sleepiness or cognitive function, when co-dosed with Xyrem® it significantly reduced the effects of the compound on Power of Attention and two of the contributing scores, simple and choice reaction time; these effects being seen during the hour after the first dose of Xyrem®. On the other hand, there was no evidence on any measure of greater cognitive impairment or sleepiness when the two compounds were co-dosed.

The extent of the reductions in the impairments to the ability to focus attention and efficiently process information were quite notable, and likely to be of clinical relevance. It is interesting that protective effect of diclofenac was not seen on the subjects ratings of alertness, such a dissociation having been seen previously with haloperidol in healthy elderly volunteers (Beuzan et al, 1991).

In conclusion, evidence of an interaction was seen in this study over the hour following the first dose of Xyrem® on the study days, the impairments being notably smaller when diclofenac was co-dosed with Xyrem®. There was no interaction however on the feelings of sleepiness in the subjects.

Example 2

This study is designed to compare the pharmacokinetic (PK) and pharmacodynamic (PD) endpoints of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. The crossover design allows within-subject comparisons of the PK and PD of Xyrem® dosed alone and in combination with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets. PD parameters include the following: Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) System tasks: Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), Simple Reaction Time (SRT), Digit Vigilance (DV), Choice Reaction Time (CRT), Tracking and Numeric Working Memory (NWM).

The objectives of this study were to evaluate the PK and PD of Xyrem® co-administered with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets and to evaluate and compare the safety and tolerability of Xyrem® with and without co-administration of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets.

This was a Phase 1, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, five-period, crossover study in healthy male subjects. The study was conducted in approximately 24 healthy subjects to ensure completion of 16 subjects. Following Screening and Baseline procedures, eligible subjects were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 1 and 2; were dosed with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets for 10 consecutive days in Period 3; and while continuing to take divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, were randomized to receive Xyrem® and Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion in Periods 4 and 5 (Table 1).

Periods 1 and 2:

Subjects were randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo 4 hours apart in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 AM (first dose) and 1 PM (second dose) on Days 1 and 3. PK and PD parameters were evaluated during the 24 hours postdose.

Blood samples (4 mL) for sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at predose and at specified time-points up to

US 11,253,494 B2

23

12 hours after the first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo on Days 1 and 3. A PD Battery including the Karolinska Sleepiness Scale, Simple Reaction Time task, Digit Vigilance task, Choice Reaction Time task, Tracking task, and Numeric Working Memory task was administered at planned timepoints up to X hours after first dose (X hours after second dose), and safety were monitored at specified timepoints on Days 1 and 3 as well as throughout the periods.

Period 3:

All subjects received divalproex sodium extended-release tablets 1250 mg at approximately 8 AM on Days 5 through 14. Blood samples (4 mL) for valproic acid concentrations were collected before the divalproex sodium dose (to determine trough concentration for assessment of steady state) on Days 13 and 14. Safety was monitored at specified timepoints as well as throughout the period.

Periods 4 and 5:

Subjects continued taking 1250 mg divalproex sodium extended-release tablets at approximately 8 AM on Days 15 through 18. Subjects were also randomized to receive two 3 g doses of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo in a crossover fashion at approximately 9 am (first dose) and 1 pm (second dose) on Days 15 and 18. The first dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken approximately 1 hour after dosing with divalproex sodium extended-release tablets, and the second dose of Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo was taken 4 hours after the first Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose.

Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma sodium oxybate concentrations were collected at pre Xyrem®/Xyrem® placebo dose and at specified timepoints after the first Xyrem® or Xyrem® placebo dose on Days 15 and 18. Blood samples (4 mL) to measure plasma valproic acid concentrations were collected pre divalproex sodium dose and at specified timepoints after the dose of divalproex sodium extended-release tablets on Day 15 and 18.

The PD battery was administered on Day 15 and 18, and safety was monitored at specified times on Days 15 and 18 as well as throughout the periods.

The treatments were as follows: A=Xyrem®, two 3 g doses, 4 hours apart at approximately 9 AM (1st dose) and 1 PM (2nd dose); B=Xyrem® placebo, two doses, 4 hours apart; and C=Divalproex sodium 1250 mg, once a day at approximately 8 AM.

Results

The results below show the tests in which GHB administration was affected by concomitant administration of any of three MCT inhibitors, such as valproate, diclofenac, and ibuprofen.

Continuity of Attention

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 hours and 8 hours. See FIG. 5 which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Continuity of Attention (#) (PD Population).

Simple Reaction Time Mean

At 1 hour and 4 hours, Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together produced statistically reliably greater impairments than Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 6, which shows Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Simple Reaction Time Mean (ms) (PD Population).

Digit Vigilance Accuracy

At 2.5 and 4 hours Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together were statistically reliably different greater impairment to Xyrem® alone. See FIG. 7, which shows Change

24

from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Digit Vigilance Accuracy (%) (PD Population).

Tracking Distance from Target

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a statistically significant difference by a slightly delayed recovery for the combination at 4 and 8 hours. See FIG. 8 which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Tracking Distance from Target (mm) (PD Population).

Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed a difference at 4.5 through 8 hours. See FIG. 9, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Sensitivity Index (#) (PD Population).

Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time

Xyrem® and divalproex sodium together (A+C) when compared to Xyrem® alone (A) showed statistically significant differences at 2.5, 5 and 8 hours when the combination produced greater impairment. See FIG. 10, which shows the Change from Baseline Figure (LSmean with 95% CI) for Numeric Working Memory Mean Reaction Time (ms) (PD Population).

In addition, it was observed that renal excretion of GHB increase 30% upon co-administration of Valproate.

We also found pk changes which were consistent with the inhibition of GHB dehydrogenase. This effect will increase the exposure of GHB to the subject and increase Cmax and AUC about 15%.

The combination of Xyrem® dosed with divalproex sodium was compared to divalproex sodium alone, more consistent statistically significant impairments over time were seen with the combination, than when Xyrem® was compared to its placebo, indicating that the effects of co-administration, when they appeared, were in the direction of increased impairments.

As has been seen previously, Xyrem® induces sleepiness and produces impairments to attention, working memory and performance on a tracking task in healthy volunteers.

Divalproex sodium alone showed no consistent or notable effects on cognitive function or sleepiness. There were occasions when co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex sodium produced greater deficits than Xyrem® alone. Further the combination also produced more consistent impairments when compared with divalproex sodium alone, than did Xyrem® when compared to its placebo. Thus this study has found evidence that co-administration of Xyrem® and divalproex produces greater impairments to cognitive function and sleepiness than were seen with Xyrem® alone.

50

Example 3

The effects of Ibuprofen were evaluated when combined with Xyrem® in a manner similar to the above. No differences were seen using the metrics above for Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS), and the following CDR System tasks: Simple Reaction Time, Digit Vigilance, Choice Reaction Time, Tracking and Numeric Working Memory. However, it was observed that renal excretion of Xyrem® doubled upon concomitant administration of Ibuprofen and Xyrem®.

All publications and patent applications cited in this specification are herein incorporated by reference as if each individual publication or patent application were specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference. Although the foregoing has been described in some detail by way of illustration and example for purposes of clarity of

US 11,253,494 B2

25

understanding, it will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art in light of the teachings of the specification that certain changes and modifications may be made thereto without departing from the spirit or scope of the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method for treating a patient who is concomitantly administered divalproex sodium, the method comprising: administering to the patient a daily dosage amount of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof concomitant to a dose of divalproex sodium, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof is about 15% to about 35% lower than the recommended daily dosage amount in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium; wherein the recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is between 4.5 g and 9 g.

2. The method of claim 1, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 4.5 g.

3. The method of claim 2, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 3.6 g.

4. The method of claim 2, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is divided into two equal doses.

5. The method of claim 4, wherein the first or second dose of the two equal doses of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 2.25 g.

6. The method of claim 1, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is about 15% to about 30% lower than the recommended daily dosage amount in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium.

7. The method of claim 1, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is about 20% lower than the recommended daily dosage amount in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium.

8. The method of claim 1, wherein the recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 4.5 g.

9. The method of claim 1, wherein the recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is between 6 g and 9 g.

10. The method of claim 1, wherein the recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is between 7.5 g and 9 g.

11. The method of claim 1, wherein the recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is 9 g.

12. The method of claim 1, wherein the recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof is the manufacturer's recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof.

13. The method of claim 1, wherein the patient is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness.

14. A method for treating a patient who is concomitantly administered divalproex sodium, the method comprising: administering to the patient a daily dosage amount of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof concomitant to a dose of divalproex sodium, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof is about 15% to about 35% lower than the recommended daily dosage amount in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex

26

sodium; wherein the recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is between 1 g and 6 g.

15. The method of claim 14, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 3 g.

16. The method of claim 14, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is divided into two equal doses.

17. The method of claim 14, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is about 20% lower than the recommended daily dosage amount in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium.

18. The method of claim 14, wherein the recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof is the manufacturer's recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt.

20. The method of claim 14, wherein the patient is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness.

20. A method for reducing adverse effects caused by a combination of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof and divalproex sodium in a patient who is concomitantly administered divalproex sodium, the method comprising: administering a daily dosage amount of GHB or a salt thereof to the patient that is about 15% to about 35% lower as compared to a daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered in the absence of divalproex sodium; wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is between 4.5 g and 9 g.

21. The method of claim 20, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is about 15% and about 30% lower as compared to a daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered in the absence of divalproex sodium.

22. The method of claim 20, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is about 20% lower as compared to a daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered in the absence of divalproex sodium.

23. The method of claim 20, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is lower than 4.5 g.

24. The method of claim 20, wherein the patient is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness.

25. A method for treating a patient comprising: administering a reduced daily dosage amount of gamma-hydroxybutyrate (GHB) or a salt thereof to a patient who is concomitantly administered divalproex sodium; wherein the recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium is between 4.5 g to 9 g; and wherein the reduced daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof compensates for pharmacokinetic (PK) and/or pharmacodynamic (PD) changes caused by the divalproex sodium.

26. The method of claim 25, wherein the PD interactions are measured by Cognitive Drug Research (CDR) system tasks or Karolinska Sleepiness Scale (KSS).

27. The method of claim 25, wherein the PK changes are measured by one or more parameters selected from the group consisting of plasma concentration, C_{max} , C_n , C_{24} , T_{max} , and Area Under the Curve (AUC).

28. The method of claim 25, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced by about 15% to about 30%, compared to recom-

US 11,253,494 B2

27

mended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium.

29. The method of claim **25**, wherein the daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof administered to the patient is reduced by about 20%, compared to recommended daily dosage amount of GHB or salt thereof in the absence of concomitant administration of divalproex sodium. 5

30. The method of claim **25**, wherein the patient is suffering from excessive daytime sleepiness. 10

* * * * *